102102166

2025 MCNYS

MECHANICAL CODE OF NEW YORK STATE®

Kathy Hochul Governor
Walter T. Mosley Secretary of State

NEW YORK STATE | Department of State
Building Standards & Codes

ICC INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102166

2025

MCNYS

MECHANICAL CODE OF NEW YORK STATE®

Kathy Hochul Governor
Walter T. Mosley Secretary of State

NEW YORK STATE | Department of State
Building Standards & Codes

ICC INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102166

2025 Mechanical Code of New York State

Publication Date: July 2025

ISBN: 978-1-967590-86-5 (soft-cover edition)
ISBN: 978-1-967590-87-2 (PDF download)

COPYRIGHT © 2025
by
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL, INC.
and
NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF STATE

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. This 2025 *Mechanical Code of New York State* ("MCNYS") is a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council, Inc. ("ICC"). This work contains (1) portions of the International Code Council Codes (the "ICC Codes"), (2) material that is derivative of the ICC Codes, and (3) wholly original materials prepared by the New York State Department of State or by the New York State Fire Prevention and Building Code Council (the "Code Council"). The International Code Council has copyright ownership of the ICC Codes. The International Code Council and the New York State Department of State have joint copyright ownership of the material that is derivative of the ICC Codes. The New York State Department of State has copyright ownership of the wholly original materials prepared by the New York State Department of State or by the Code Council. As to the ICC Codes, all rights, including the right of reproduction in whole or in part in any form, are reserved to the International Code Council. As to the material that is derivative of the ICC Codes, all rights, including the right of reproduction in whole or in part in any form, are reserved to the International Code Council and the New York State Department of State, jointly. As to the wholly original materials prepared by the New York State Department of State or by the Code Council, all rights, including the right of reproduction in whole or in part in any form, are reserved to the New York State Department of State. Without separate written permission from the copyright owner, no part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying or recording by or in an information storage and/or retrieval system). For information on use rights and permissions, please contact: ICC Publications, 4051 Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, Illinois 60478; 1-888-ICC-SAFE (422-7233).

The display of the Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors—National Association (PHCC) logo in this publication indicates PHCC's support through committee participation of ICC's open governmental consensus process used to develop the International Codes. This support does not imply any ownership to the copyright to the International Mechanical Code, which is held solely by the International Code Council, Inc.

Plumbing-Heating-Cooling Contractors—National Association (PHCC): 180 S. Washington Street – Suite 100, Falls Church, VA 22046; Phone: (703) 237-8100, (800) 533-7694, www.phccweb.org.

Trademarks: "International Code Council," the "International Code Council" logo, "ICC," the "ICC" logo, "International Mechanical Code," "IMC" and other names and trademarks appearing in this publication are registered trademarks of the International Code Council, Inc., and/or its licensors (as applicable), and may not be used without permission.

PRINTED IN THE USA

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

With gratitude, the Department of State wishes to thank all those who contributed to the development of the Codes, with special acknowledgment to the contributions of the following individuals and consultants from the department:

STATE FIRE PREVENTION AND BUILDING CODE COUNCIL

Walter Mosley	Chair - Secretary of State, New York State Department of State Designee - Matthew Tebo, Esq.
James Cable	State Fire Administrator, Office of Fire Prevention and Control Designee - Benjamin Keller
RuthAnne Visnauskas	Commissioner, Division of Housing and Community Renewal Designee - Kristy Whitcher Designee - Joseph Palozzola
Roberta Reardon	Commissioner, New York State Department of Labor Designee - Vincent Rapacciuolo Designee - John Kunac
Eric Adams	Mayor, City of New York Designee - Keith Wen, NYC Department of Buildings
Michael Spano	Mayor, City of Yonkers Designee - James Gibbons
Joseph DeStefano	Mayor, City of Middletown
Joseph Toomey	Fire Service Official
Shawn Hamlin, R.A.	Registered Architect Representative
Timothy DeRuyscher, P.E.	Professional Engineer Representative
Robert Hughes	Code Enforcement Representative, Village of Pleasantville
William Tuyn	Builders Representative
Patrick Dolan	Trade Union Representative, Steamfitters Union, 638
Dominic Marinelli	Persons with Disabilities Representative

PAST CHAIRS AND MEMBERS OF THE CODE COUNCIL

Robert Rodriguez	Previous Secretary of State
Michael Weber	Designee for RuthAnne Visnauskas (Division of Housing and Community Renewal)
Claudia Braymer	County Board of Supervisors, Warren County
Michael Sabatino	Designee for Michael Spano (City, Population Over 100,000)

DIVISION OF BUILDING STANDARDS AND CODES

Matthew Tebo, Esq.	Deputy Secretary of State
John Addario, P.E.	Division Director
Brian Tollisen, P.E.	Deputy Director

CODE DEVELOPMENT	
Kevin Duerr-Clark, P.E.	Assistant Director for Code Development
Larissa DeLango	Code Compliance Specialist II
Jeanne Rice, P.E.	Professional Engineer I
Chad Sievers, P.E.	Professional Engineer I
Stephen Van Hoose, R.A.	Architect I
Bryan Toepfer, R.A.	Consultant
ENERGY CODE SERVICES	
Emma Gonzalez-Laders, R.A.	Assistant Director for Energy Code Services
Gregory Benton	Assistant Engineer
Daniel Carroll	Code Compliance Specialist II
Christopher Jensen, P.E.	Professional Engineer I
Nicholas Petramale	Code Compliance Specialist I
Gina Joven	Consultant
TECHNICAL SUPPORT	
China Clarke, R.A.	Assistant Director for Technical Support
Bryant Arms	Code Compliance Specialist II
PROGRAM ATTORNEYS	
David Gonzalez, Esq.	Deputy Counsel
Panagiota Hyde, Esq.	Associate Attorney
Benjamin Kosinski, Esq.	Former Associate Counsel
Anna Binau, Esq.	Former Senior Attorney
Amalia Talty, Esq.	Assistant Attorney III
Shanice Helena	Administrative Assistant I
Natacha Carbajal-Evangelista	Former General Counsel

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

PREFACE

ABOUT THE NEW YORK STATE CODES

In 1978, the State Legislature added Article 11 to the Energy Law to provide for a comprehensive energy conservation construction code applicable to all public and private buildings in New York State (including buildings located in the City of New York). Article 11, consisting of sections 11-101 through 11-110 of the Energy Law, sets forth the process by which the State Energy Conservation Construction Code ("*Energy Code*") is to be developed, maintained, administered, and enforced for the conservation of energy in buildings in New York State. Both State government and local governments are participants in this process. In 1981, the New York State Legislature enacted legislation directing the development and implementation of an integrated, State-wide building and fire code. Prior to the adoption of this legislation, the decision as to whether to adopt and enforce a building and/or fire prevention code was left to the discretion of local governments in New York State. Many municipalities, primarily in the more developed and densely populated areas of the State, had adopted building and/or fire prevention codes. However, there were also many communities, mostly rural in nature, where no building or fire prevention code was in effect. In light of the perils posed by fire and inadequate building construction, the State Legislature adopted a new Article 18 of the Executive Law to provide for an integrated and comprehensive building and fire prevention code. Article 18, consisting of sections 370 through 383 of the Executive Law, sets forth the process by which the code is to be developed, maintained, administered, and enforced for the protection of all New Yorkers. Both State government and local governments are participants in this process. The code, called the New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code ("*Uniform Code*"), took effect January 1, 1984 and prescribed minimum standards for both fire prevention and building construction. It is applicable in every municipality of the State except the City of New York, which was permitted to retain its own code. Although the *Uniform Code* took effect in 1984, its antecedents are much older. Beginning in the late 1940's, New York State began developing a code known as the State Building Construction Code, which provided standards for the construction of buildings and the installation of equipment therein. Developing and maintaining the State Building Construction Code eventually became the responsibility of the New York State Division of Housing and Community Renewal (DHCR). In the 1960's, DHCR began developing a second code, the State Building Conservation and Fire Prevention Code, to address fire safety practices in buildings. Both of these codes were applicable in a municipality only when affirmatively adopted by the governing body. The State Building Construction Code and the State Building Conservation and Fire Prevention Code were repealed effective January 1, 1984 when they were replaced by the *Uniform Code*.

Code Development Process

Responsibility for developing and maintaining the *Uniform Code* and the *Energy Code* is vested in the State Fire Prevention and Building Code Council (the "Code Council"), a seventeen-member body chaired by the Secretary of State and composed of the Secretary of State, the State Fire Administrator, and fifteen other members appointed by the Governor (seven with consent of the Senate). The Code Council is required to meet at least quarterly but additional meetings may be called by the chair or by petition of five members of the Code Council.

Periodically both the *Uniform Code* and the *Energy Code* require amendment. The *Uniform Code* and the *Energy Code* are implemented via regulations, and any amendment of either code must be adopted pursuant to the rule making process set forth in the State Administrative Procedure Act ("SAPA"). In most situations, that process includes publishing a notice of proposed rule making in the New York State Register, specifying a period during which the public may submit comments on the proposed amendment (which, unless a different time frame is specified in statute, shall be at least sixty days) holding at least one hearing at which the public may present input regarding the proposed amendment, reviewing and assessing the comments and testimony received, and publishing a notice of adoption in the New York State Register. Generally, any amendment of the *Uniform Code* will become effective 90 days after publication of the notice of adoption; however, the Code Council has the authority to designate an earlier effective date if necessary to protect health, safety and security. An amendment of the *Energy Code* can be effective as early as the date of publication of the notice of adoption. However, when both the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* are amended at the same time, the effective dates are typically coordinated with each other. In addition, either code can be amended by adoption of an emergency rule, which can be effective as early as the date of filing of the notice of emergency adoption. New York's emergency rule making process allows an agency to adopt a rule on a temporary basis for a maximum of 90 days, at which time the emergency may be re-adopted, but each such re-adoption will be effective for a maximum of 60 days and to file for re-adoption the agency must also take action to initiate the proposal process to formally adopt the rule on a permanent basis. All rule-making activity is published on the website of the Division of Building Standards and Codes.

Coordination of the NYS-Codes

The coordination of technical provisions allows the NYS-Codes to be used as a complete set of complementary documents. Some technical provisions that are relevant to more than one subject area are duplicated in multiple New York State codes.

INTRODUCTION TO THE MECHANICAL CODE OF NEW YORK STATE

The Mechanical Code of New York State (MCNYS) establishes minimum requirements for mechanical systems using prescriptive and performance-related provisions. It is founded on broad-based principles that make possible the use of new materials and new mechanical designs. This 2024 edition was developed as a derivative work of the 2024 edition of the International Mechanical Code® (IMC®) published by the International Code Council® (ICC®).

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

This code is founded on principles intended to establish provisions consistent with the scope of a mechanical code that adequately protects public health, safety and welfare; provisions that do not unnecessarily increase construction costs; provisions that do not restrict the use of new materials, products or methods of construction; and provisions that do not give preferential treatment to particular types or classes of materials, products or methods of construction.

LETTER DESIGNATIONS IN FRONT OF SECTION NUMBERS

The bracketed letter designations for the party responsible for portions of this code are as follows:

ICC Code Development Committee

[A] = Administrative Code Development Committee
[BE] = IBC—Egress Code Development Committee
[BF] = IBC—Fire Safety Code Development Committee
[BG] = IBC—General Code Development Committee
[BS] = IBC—Structural Code Development Committee
[E] = Developed under the ICC's Standard Development Process
[EB] = International Existing Building Code Development Committee
[F] = International Fire Code Development Committee
[FG] = International Fuel Gas Code Development Committee
[M] = International Mechanical Code Development Committee
[P] = International Plumbing Code Development Committee
[SP] = International Swimming Pool and Spa Code Development Committee

New York State Code Development

[NY] = New York State Department of State

ARRANGEMENT AND FORMAT OF THE 2024MCNYS

The format of the MCNYS allows each chapter to be devoted to a particular subject with the exception of Chapter 3, which contains general subject matters that are not extensive enough to warrant their own independent chapter.

The following table shows how the MCNYS is divided. The subsequent table shows MCNYS requirements that are correlated with other I-Codes. The chapter synopses detail the scope and intent of the provisions of the MCNYS.

CHAPTER TOPICS	
CHAPTERS	**SUBJECTS**
1	Scope and Administration
2	Definitions
3	General Regulations
4	Ventilation
5	Exhaust Systems
6	Duct Systems
7	Combustion Air
8	Chimneys and Vents
9	Specific Appliances, Fireplaces and Solid Fuel-burning Equipment
10	Boilers, Water Heaters and Pressure Vessels
11	Refrigeration
12	Hydronic Piping
13	Fuel Oil Piping and Storage
14	Solar Thermal Systems
15	Referenced Standards
Appendix A	Chimney Connector Pass-throughs
Appendix B	Reserved
Appendix C	Reserved

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER TOPICS	
CHAPTERS	**SUBJECTS**
Appendix D	Reserved
Appendix E	Reserved

***Building Code of New York State* Correlated Topics**

The MCNYS requirements for smoke control systems and smoke and fire dampers are directly correlated with the requirements of the BCNYS. The following table shows chapters/sections of the MCNYS that are correlated with the BCNYS:

MCNYS/BCNYS CORRELATED TOPICS		
MCNYS CHAPTER/SECTION	**BCNYS CHAPTER/SECTION**	**SUBJECT**
Section 607	Section 717	Smoke and fire dampers
Section 513	Section 909	Smoke control

Chapter 1 Scope and Administration.

Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.

Chapter 2 Definitions.

Chapter 2 is the repository of the definitions of terms used in the body of the code. The user of the code should be familiar with and consult this chapter because the definitions are essential to the correct interpretation of the code and because the user may not be aware that a term is defined.

Chapter 3 General Regulations.

Chapter 3 contains broadly applicable requirements related to appliance location and installation, appliance and systems access, protection of structural elements, condensate disposal and clearances to combustibles, among others.

Chapter 4 Ventilation.

Chapter 4 includes means for ventilating spaces within buildings to promote a healthy and comfortable environment for the occupants, to protect the building structure from the harmful effects of excessive humidity and heat to minimize the potential for toxic or otherwise harmful substances to reach dangerously high concentrations in air.

Chapter 5 Exhaust Systems.

Chapter 5 provides requirements for reasonable protection of life, property and health from the hazards associated with exhaust systems, air contaminants and smoke development in the event of a fire. In most cases, these hazards involve materials and gases that are flammable, explosive, toxic or otherwise hazardous, including commercial kitchen grease- and smoke-laden air; hazardous fumes and toxic gases; clothes dryer moisture and heat; and dust, stock and refuse materials.

Chapter 6 Duct Systems.

Chapter 6 of the code regulates the materials and methods used for constructing and installing ducts, plenums, system controls, exhaust systems, fire protection systems and related components that affect the overall performance of a building's air distribution system. This chapter also provides for the reasonable protection of life and property from the hazards associated with air-moving equipment and systems. The provisions for the protection of duct penetrations of wall, floor, ceiling and roof assemblies are extracted from the BCNYS.

Chapter 7 Combustion Air.

The specific combustion air requirements provided in previous editions of the code have been deleted in favor of a single section that directs the user to NFPA 31 for oil-fired appliance combustion air requirements and the manufacturer's installation instructions for solid fuel-burning appliances. Complete combustion of solid and liquid fuel is essential for the proper operation of appliances, for control of harmful emissions and for achieving maximum fuel efficiency.

Chapter 8 Chimneys and Vents.

Chapter 8 is intended to regulate the design, construction, installation, maintenance, repair and approval of chimneys, vents and their connections to solid and liquid fuel-burning appliances in order to achieve the complete removal of the products of combustion from fuel-burning appliances and equipment.

Chapter 9 Specific Appliances, Fireplaces and Solid Fuel-Burning Equipment

Chapter 9 sets minimum construction and performance criteria for fireplaces, appliances and equipment and provides for the safe installation of these items. Other regulations affecting the installation of solid fuel-burning fireplaces, appliances and accessory appliances are found in Chapters 3, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13 and 14.

Chapter 10 Boilers, Water Heaters and Pressure Vessels.

Chapter 10 presents regulations for the proper installation of boilers, water heaters and pressure vessels to protect life and property from the hazards associated with those appliances and vessels. Certain safety features are therefore provided in Chapter 10 to reduce the potential for explosion hazards.

Chapter 11 Refrigeration.

Chapter 11 contains regulations that establish minimum requirements to achieve the proper design, construction, installation and operation of refrigeration systems. This chapter establishes reasonable safeguards for the occupants by defining and mandating practices that are consistent with the practices and experience of the industry.

Chapter 12 Hydronic Piping.

Hydronic piping includes piping, fittings and valves used in building space conditioning systems. Applications include hot water, chilled water, steam, steam condensate, brines and water/antifreeze mixtures. Chapter 12 contains the provisions that govern the construction, installation, alteration and repair of all hydronic piping systems that affect reliability, serviceability, energy efficiency and safety.

Chapter 13 Fuel Oil Piping and Storage.

Chapter 13 regulates the design and installation of fuel oil storage and piping systems by providing reference to construction standards, material standards and extensive requirements for the proper assembly of system piping and components. The provisions in this chapter are intended to prevent fires, leaks and spills involving fuel oil storage and piping systems.

Chapter 14 Solar Thermal Systems.

Chapter 14 establishes provisions for the safe installation, operation and repair of solar energy systems used for space heating or cooling, domestic hot water heating or processing. Although such systems use components similar to those of conventional mechanical equipment, many of these provisions are unique to solar energy systems.

Chapter 15 Referenced Standards.

Chapter 15 lists all of the product and installation standards and codes that are referenced throughout Chapters 1 through 14 and includes identification of the promulgators and the section numbers in which the standards and codes are referenced. As stated in Section 102.8, these standards and codes become an enforceable part of the code (to the prescribed extent of the reference) as if printed in the body of the code.

Appendix A Chimney Connector Pass-Throughs.

Appendix A provides figures that illustrate various requirements in the body of the code. Figures A101.1(1) and A101.1(2) illustrate the chimney connector clearance requirements of Table 803.10.4.

Appendix B Reserved.

Appendix C Reserved.

Appendix D Reserved.

appendix E Reserved.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION 1
101 Scope and General Requirements 1
102 Applicability 2
103 Administration and Enforcement 3
104 Materials, Equipment, and Methods of Construction . . 4
105 Building Permits and Operating Permits 5
106 Construction Documents 6
107 Certificate of Occupancy 7
108 Reserved 7
109 Service Utilities 7
110 Temporary Structures 8
111 Inspections 8
112 Variances and Appeals 8
113 Reserved 8
114 Violations 8
115 Stop Work Order 9

CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS 11
201 General 11
202 General Definitions 11

CHAPTER 3 GENERAL REGULATIONS 23
301 General 23
302 Protection of Structure 24
303 Equipment and Appliance Location 24
304 Installation 25
305 Piping Support 26
306 Access and Service Space 27
307 Condensate Disposal 29
308 Clearance Reduction 30
309 Temperature Control 31
310 Explosion Control 31
311 Smoke and Heat Vents 32
312 Heating and Cooling Load Calculations 32

CHAPTER 4 VENTILATION 33
401 General 33
402 Natural Ventilation 34
403 Mechanical Ventilation 34
404 Enclosed Parking Garages 42
405 Systems Control 42
406 Ventilation of Uninhabited Spaces 42
407 Ambulatory Care Facilities and Group I-2 Occupancies 43

CHAPTER 5 EXHAUST SYSTEMS 45
501 General 45
502 Required Systems 46
503 Motors and Fans 52
504 Clothes Dryer Exhaust 53
505 Domestic Cooking Exhaust Equipment 55
506 Commercial Kitchen Hood Ventilation System Ducts and Exhaust Equipment 56
507 Commercial Kitchen Hoods 61
508 Commercial Kitchen Makeup Air 65
509 Hazardous Exhaust Systems 65
510 Dust, Stock and Refuse Conveying Systems 68
511 Subslab Soil Exhaust Systems 69
512 Smoke Control Systems 69
513 Energy Recovery Ventilation Systems 73

CHAPTER 6 DUCT SYSTEMS 75
601 General 75
602 Plenums 76
603 Duct Construction and Installation 78
604 Insulation 80
605 Air Filters 82
606 Smoke Detection Systems Control 82
607 Duct and Transfer Openings 83
608 Balancing 88

CHAPTER 7 COMBUSTION AIR 89
701 General 89

CHAPTER 8 CHIMNEYS AND VENTS 91
801 General 91
802 Vents 92
803 Connectors 93
804 Direct-Vent, Integral Vent and Mechanical Draft Systems 95
805 Factory-Built Chimneys 96
806 Metal Chimneys 97

CHAPTER 9 SPECIFIC APPLIANCES, FIREPLACES AND SOLID FUEL-BURNING EQUIPMENT 99
901 General 99
902 Masonry Fireplaces 99
903 Factory-Built Fireplaces 99
904 Pellet Fuel-Burning Appliances 99
905 Fireplace Stoves and Room Heaters 99
906 Factory-Built Barbecue Appliances 100
907 Incinerators and Crematories 100
908 Cooling Towers, Evaporative Condensers and Fluid Coolers 100
909 Vented Wall Furnaces 100
910 Floor Furnaces 100
911 Duct Furnaces 101
912 Infrared Radiant Heaters 101
913 Clothes Dryers 101
914 Sauna Heaters 101
915 Engine and Gas Turbine-Powered Equipment and Appliances 102
916 Pool and Spa Heaters 102
917 Cooking Appliances 102
918 Forced-Air Warm-Air Furnaces 102
919 Conversion Burners 102
920 Unit Heaters 102
921 Vented Room Heaters 102
922 Kerosene and Oil-Fired Stoves 103
923 Small Ceramic Kilns 103
924 Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems 103
925 Masonry Heaters 103
926 Gaseous Hydrogen Systems 103
927 Radiant Heating Systems 103
928 Evaporative Cooling Equipment 103
929 Unvented Alcohol Fuel-Burning Decorative Appliances 104
930 Large-Diameter Ceiling Fans 104
931 Steam Bath Equipment 104

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER 10 BOILERS, WATER HEATERS AND PRESSURE VESSELS 105
1001 General 105
1002 Water Heaters 105
1003 Pressure Vessels 105
1004 Boilers 106
1005 Boiler Connections 106
1006 Safety and Pressure Relief Valves and Controls 107
1007 Boiler Low-Water Cutoff 107
1008 Bottom Blowoff Valve 107
1009 Hot Water Boiler Expansion Tank 108
1010 Gauges 108
1011 Tests 109

CHAPTER 11 REFRIGERATION 111
1101 General 111
1102 System Requirements 112
1103 Refrigeration System Classification 112
1104 Refrigeration System Application Requirements . . 122
1105 Machinery Room, General Requirements 123
1106 Machinery Room, Special Requirements 124
1107 Piping Material 125
1108 Joints and Connections 126
1109 Refrigerant Pipe Installation 127
1110 Refrigeration Piping System Test 129
[F] 1111 Periodic Testing 130

CHAPTER 12 HYDRONIC PIPING 131
1201 General 131
1202 Material 131
1203 Joints and Connections 132
1204 Pipe Insulation 134
1205 Valves 134
1206 Piping Installation 134
1207 Transfer Fluid 135
1208 Tests 135
1209 Embedded Piping 135
1210 Plastic Pipe Ground-Source Heat Pump Loop Systems 136

CHAPTER 13 FUEL OIL PIPING AND STORAGE 141
1301 General 141
1302 Material 141
1303 Joints and Connections 142
1304 Piping Support 142
1305 Fuel Oil System Installation 142
1306 Oil Gauging 143
1307 Fuel Oil Valves 143
1308 Testing 143

CHAPTER 14 SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEMS 145
1401 General 145
1402 Design and Installation 145
1403 Heat Transfer Fluids 147
1404 Labeling 147

CHAPTER 15 REFERENCED STANDARDS 149

APPENDIX A CHIMNEY CONNECTOR PASS-THROUGHS . . 163
A101 Chimney Connector Systems 163

APPENDIX B RESERVED 165

APPENDIX C RESERVED 167

APPENDIX D RESERVED 169

APPENDIX E RESERVED 171

INDEX 173

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. A mechanical code, like any other code, is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement.*

SECTION 101—SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[NY] 101.1 Title. This publication shall be known as the 2025 edition of the Mechanical Code of New York State (MCNYS) and is hereinafter referred to as "this code." This code is part of the New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code (the "*Uniform Code*").

[NY] 101.1.1 Amendments of New York State code books. In Chapter 1, the term "New York State code books" shall include the *Residential Code of New York State*, the *Building Code of New York State*, the *Plumbing Code of New York State*, the Mechanical Code of New York State (i.e., this publication), the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*, the *Fire Code of New York State*, the *Property Maintenance Code of New York State*, the *Existing Building Code of New York State*, *Uniform Code* Provisions for Rail Stations, and the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*. Provisions in any one or more of the New York State code books may be amended from time to time by provisions in 19 NYCRR Parts 1220 to 1229 or 19 NYCRR Part 1240, as currently in effect and as hereafter amended from time to time. If this publication is now or hereafter so amended, references in this publication to "this code" shall be deemed to be references to this publication as so amended. If any other New York State code book is now or hereafter so amended, references in this code to such other New York State code book shall be deemed to be references to such New York State code book as so amended.

[NY] 101.2 Scope. This code shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, *alteration* and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and utilized to provide control of environmental conditions and related processes within *buildings*. This code shall also regulate those mechanical systems, system components, *equipment* and *appliances* specifically addressed herein. The installation of fuel gas distribution piping and *equipment*, fuel gas-fired *appliances* and fuel gas-fired *appliance* venting systems shall be regulated by the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*.

Exceptions:

1. Application of the provisions of the *Residential Code of New York State* to the construction, alteration, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, *equipment*, use and occupancy, location, removal and demolition of the following *buildings* and structures, provided that such *building* or structure is not more than three stories above grade plane in height, and their accessory structures not more than three stories above grade plane in height:
   1.1. Detached one-family *dwellings*;
   1.2. Detached two-family *dwellings* in which each *dwelling unit* has a separate means of egress;
   1.3. Townhouses;
   1.4. Bed and breakfast *dwellings*;
   1.5. Live/work units that are located in townhouses, and comply with the requirements of Section 508.5 of the *Building Code of New York State*; and
   1.6. Owner-occupied lodging houses that have five or fewer guestrooms and are provided with an automatic sprinkler system complying with Section P2904 of the *Residential Code of New York State*.
2. Agricultural buildings, including barns, sheds, poultry houses and other buildings and *equipment* on the premises that are used directly and solely for agricultural purposes, shall not be subject to the construction-related provisions of this code.
3. Construction trailers that are used as temporary offices for the purpose of monitoring construction at a construction site shall not be subject to this code.
4. Structures such as radio and television transmission, communication and wind generation towers, and ground-mounted photovoltaic arrays that are neither a *building* appurtenance nor are attached to a *building* shall not be subject to this code.
5. Standards for construction of sleeping quarters in a children's overnight camp as defined in Public Health Law Section 1392(1) shall be governed by Public Health Law Section 1394(1) and the regulations promulgated by the Public Health Council. See Executive Law Section 378(1). As of the date of this publication, the Public Health Council's regulations for children's overnight camps are found in 10 NYCRR Subpart 7-2 ("Children's Camps").
6. Mechanical systems in existing buildings that are undergoing repairs, alterations, changes of occupancy, or construction of additions shall be permitted to comply with the provisions of the *Existing Building Code of New York State*.

[NY] 101.2.1 Appendices. Provisions in the following appendix are included for informational purposes.

Appendix A *Chimney* Connector Pass-Throughs

[NY] 101.2.2 Facilities regulated by State departments and agencies. Where a *building* or premises under the custody, licensure, supervision or jurisdiction of a department or agency of the State of New York is regulated as a one- or two-family dwelling

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

or multiple single-family dwelling (townhouse), in accordance with established laws or regulations of that department or agency, said buildings or premises, such as a community residence or hospice residence, and their accessory structures shall comply with this code or the *Residential Code of New York State*, provided that such *building* or structure is not more than three stories above grade plane in height, and their accessory structures not more than three stories above grade plane in height.

[A] 101.3 Purpose. The purpose of this code is to establish minimum requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and general welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of mechanical *equipment* or systems.

[NY] 101.4 Reserved.

[NY] 101.5 Provisions included in the Uniform Code. The purpose of this chapter is to include in the *Uniform Code* provisions requiring persons and entities who construct, renovate, use and occupy *buildings* and structures to apply for and obtain *building* permits, to facilitate construction inspections, to obey stop work orders, to obtain certificates of occupancy, and to obtain operating permits. The provisions in this chapter are considered to be integral parts of the *Uniform Code*'s standards for construction, maintenance, and fire protection *equipment* and systems.

[NY] 101.5.1 Definition. For the purpose of this chapter, the term "other applicable law" shall include the *authority having jurisdiction's Code Enforcement Program*; any local law, ordinance, or regulation establishing the *authority having jurisdiction's Code Enforcement Program*; and any other applicable statute, regulation, rule, local law, or ordinance.

SECTION 102—APPLICABILITY

[NY] 102.1 General. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall be applicable. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern.

[A] 102.2 Existing installations. Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued utilization and maintenance of, a mechanical system lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

[A] 102.2.1 Existing buildings. Additions, *alterations*, renovations or repairs related to *building* or structural issues shall be regulated by the *Existing Building Code of New York State*.

[A] 102.3 Maintenance. Mechanical systems, both existing and new, and parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the edition of the code under which they were installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for maintenance of mechanical systems. To determine compliance with this provision, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected.

The inspection for maintenance of HVAC systems shall be performed in accordance with ASHRAE/ACCA/ANSI Standard 180.

[A] 102.4 Additions, alterations or repairs. *Additions*, *alterations*, renovations or repairs to a mechanical system shall conform to that required for a new mechanical system without requiring the existing mechanical system to comply with all of the requirements of this code. Additions, *alterations* or repairs shall not cause an existing mechanical system to become unsafe, hazardous or overloaded.

Minor additions, *alterations*, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous and is *approved*.

[NY] 102.5 Change in use or occupancy. No change shall be made in the use or occupancy of any *building* or structure unless the use or occupancy is made to comply with the applicable requirements of this code, the requirements of the *Existing Building Code of New York State*, other applicable provisions of the *Uniform Code* and the applicable provisions of the *Energy Code*.

[NY] 102.6 Reserved.

[A] 102.7 Moved buildings. Except as determined by Section 102.2, mechanical systems that are a part of *buildings* or structures moved into or within the jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of this code for new installations.

[NY] 102.8 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections 102.8.1 and 102.8.2.

Exception: Where enforcement of a code provision would violate the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance*, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

[A] 102.8.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and the referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

[A] 102.8.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

[A] 102.9 Requirements not covered by this code. Requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed mechanical system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare, not specifically covered by this code, shall be determined by the *code official*.

[NY] 102.10 Other laws and regulations. This code is part of the *Uniform Code* promulgated pursuant to Article 18 of the New York State Executive Law. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any federal, state or local law, ordinance, administrative code, rule or regulation relating to any matter as to which the *Uniform Code* does not provide.

However:

1. Pursuant to Section 383(1) of the Executive Law, and except as otherwise provided in paragraphs a, b, and c of Section 383(1) of the Executive Law, the provisions of the *Uniform Code* supersede any other provision of a general, special or local law, ordinance, administrative code, rule or regulation inconsistent or in conflict with the *Uniform Code*;
2. Pursuant to Section 379(3) of the Executive Law, no city, town, village, county or other municipality shall have the power to supersede, void, repeal, or make less restrictive any provision of the *Uniform Code*.
3. The ability of any city, town, or village, or the County of Nassau, to enact or adopt, and to enforce, a local law or ordinance imposing higher or more restrictive standards for construction within the jurisdiction of such city, town, village, or county that are applicable generally to such city, town, village, or county in the *Uniform Code* is subject to the provisions and requirements of Section 379 of the Executive Law.

Nothing in this Section shall be construed as:

1. Affecting the authority of the State Labor Department to enforce a safety or health standard issued under provisions of Sections 27 and 27-a of the Labor Law.
2. Relieving a person from complying with a stricter standard issued pursuant to the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, as amended.
3. Superseding, limiting, impairing or otherwise affecting any provision the *Uniform Code*, as now in effect and as hereafter amended from time to time.

[NY] 102.10.1 Other New York Codes, Rules and Regulations (NYCRR). Additional New York Codes, Rules and Regulations exist that may affect new and existing *buildings*, structures, systems and *equipment*. Such regulations include, but are not limited to:

1. 19 NYCRR Part 300 (Universal Symbol of Access).
2. 19 NYCRR Part 1261 (Recordkeeping—Smoke Detectors in Multiple Dwellings).
3. 19 NYCRR Part 1264 (Identification of Buildings Utilizing Truss Type Construction).
4. 19 NYCRR Part 1265 (Residential Structures with Truss Type Construction, Pre-Engineered Wood Construction and/or Timber Construction).

[A] 102.11 Application of references. Reference to chapter section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

[NY] 102.12 Partial invalidity. In the event that any part or provision of this code is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be illegal or void, this shall not have the effect of making void or illegal any of the other parts or provisions.

[NY] SECTION 103—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

[NY] 103.1 Administration and enforcement. The *Uniform Code* shall be administered and enforced by the *authority having jurisdiction*. The identity of the *authority having jurisdiction* in a given situation is determined in accordance with Article 18 of the Executive Law and the regulations promulgated by the Secretary of State pursuant to Executive Law Section 381(1). In general, the *authority having jurisdiction* is the local government (city, town or village) in which the *building* or structure is located. In certain situations, the *authority having jurisdiction* may be the county in which the *building* or structure is located. In certain other cases, the State, the Secretary of State (acting through the Department of State) or some other State agency may be the *authority having jurisdiction*. The *authority having jurisdiction* responsible for administration and enforcement of the *Uniform Code* is also responsible for administration and enforcement of the *Energy Code*.

Administration and enforcement of the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* shall be in accordance with the following, as applicable:

1. Where a city, town, village or county is the *authority having jurisdiction*:
   - 1.1. Such, city, town, village or county shall provide for administration and enforcement of the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* by local law, ordinance, other appropriate regulation, or combination thereof.
   - 1.2. The *Code Enforcement Program* established by such local law, ordinance or other appropriate regulation, or combination thereof, must include, at a minimum, the features described in *Part 1203* and must satisfy all other requirements of *Part 1203*.
   - 1.3. Such city, town, village or county shall administer and enforce the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* in accordance with the *Code Enforcement Program* established by such local law, ordinance or other appropriate regulation, or combination thereof.
2. Where the State is the *authority having jurisdiction* pursuant to 19 NYCRR Section 1201.2(d):
   - 2.1. The *Code Enforcement Program* shall be as established by *Part 1204*.
   - 2.2. The State, acting through one or more State agencies, shall administer and enforce the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* in accordance with *Part 1204*.
3. Where the Department of State is the *authority having jurisdiction*:
   - 3.1. The *Code Enforcement Program* shall be as established by *Part 1202*.
   - 3.2. The Department of State shall administer and enforce the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* in accordance with *Part 1202*.
4. Where any governmental unit or agency not included in paragraphs 1, 2, and 3 above is the *authority having jurisdiction*:

4.1. Such governmental unit or agency shall provide for administration and enforcement of the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* by regulation.

4.2. The *Code Enforcement Program* established by such regulation must include, at a minimum, the features described *Part 1203* and must satisfy all other requirements of *Part 1203*.

4.3. Such governmental unit or agency shall administer and enforce the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* in accordance with the *Code Enforcement Program* established by such regulation.

Every governmental unit or agency thereof charged with administration and enforcement of the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* shall exercise its powers in due and proper manner so as to extend to the public protection from the hazards of fire and inadequate *building* construction.

Any person or entity constructing or renovating a *building* or structure, changing the use or occupancy of a *building* or structure, or engaging in any other activity that is subject to the provisions of the *Code Enforcement Program* of the *authority having jurisdiction* responsible for administration and enforcement of the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* with respect to such *building* shall comply with all applicable provisions of such *Code Enforcement Program*.

In addition, persons and entities who construct, renovate, use and occupy *buildings* and structures shall comply with all applicable provisions of Chapter 1 of this code.

[NY] 103.2 Due process. Nothing in Chapter 1 or in any regulation promulgated pursuant to Executive Law Section 381(1), shall be construed as authorizing any *authority having jurisdiction* to administer and enforce the *Uniform Code* and *Energy Code* in a manner that deprives any person or entity of due process of law. For example, when posting, placarding and/or condemning *buildings* or structures that are unsafe, unfit for human occupancy or unlawful, notice and opportunity to be heard (and, if applicable, right of appeal) may be required under the applicable Constitutional provisions prior to posting, placarding, and/or condemning such *building* or structure and/or removing any owner or occupancy or causing any owner or occupant to be removed from any such *building* or structure.

[NY] 103.2.1 Post-action hearing in cases of imminent danger. In cases of imminent danger, posting, placarding, and condemning a *building* or structure and removing *owners* and occupants or causing *owners* and occupants to be removed without first providing an opportunity to be heard shall be permitted to the extent consistent with applicable Constitutional provisions, provided that the affected persons and entities are afforded the opportunity for a post-action hearing to the extent required by applicable Constitutional provisions.

[NY] 103.3 Reserved.

[NY] SECTION 104—MATERIALS, EQUIPMENT, AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION

[NY] 104.1 Reserved.

[NY] 104.2 Determination of compliance.

[NY] 104.2.1 Reserved.

[NY] 104.2.2 Reserved.

[NY] 104.2.3 Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any materials, *equipment*, or *appliances* not specifically prescribed by this code, or to prohibit any designs or methods of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative materials, *equipment*, *appliances*, designs, or methods of construction are not specifically prohibited by this code, by any other provision of the *Uniform Code*, or by the *Energy Code* and has been *approved*, in writing, by the *code official*. Alternative materials, *equipment*, *appliances*, designs, or methods of construction may be approved only when the *code official* shall have determined, in writing, that such alternative is:

1. Satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions and requirements of the *Uniform Code*.
2. Not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in the *Uniform Code* in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability, and safety.

Nothing in this section shall be construed as permitting any *code official* or any *authority having jurisdiction* to waive, vary, modify or otherwise alter any provision or requirement of this code or any other provision or requirement of the *Uniform Code*.

[NY] 104.2.4 Reserved.

[NY] 104.3 Applications and permits. The *authority having jurisdiction* shall receive applications, review *construction documents,* issue permits, inspect the premises for which such permits have been issued and enforce compliance with the provisions of this code.

[NY] 104.3.1 Determination of substantially improved or substantially damaged existing buildings and structures in flood hazard areas. For applications for a building permit for reconstruction, rehabilitation, addition, *alteration*, repair or other improvement of existing *buildings* or structures located in flood hazard areas, the *code official* shall examine or cause to be examined the *construction documents* and the construction estimate of the value of the proposed work provided by the applicant. For *buildings* or structures that have sustained damage of any origin, the value of the proposed work shall include the cost to repair the *building* or structure to its pre-damaged condition. If the *code official* determines that the proposed work constitutes substantial improvement or repair of substantial damage then the *code official* shall require the *building* to meet the requirements of Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* or Section R306 of the *Residential Code of New York State*, as applicable.

Where the *building* or structure has sustained substantial damage, repairs necessary to restore the *building* or structure to its pre-damaged condition shall be considered substantial improvements regardless of the actual repair work performed.

[NY] 104.4 Reserved.

[NY] 104.5 Reserved.

[NY] 104.6 Reserved.

[NY] 104.7 Reserved.

[NY] 104.8 Reserved.

[NY] 104.9 Approved materials and *equipment*. Materials, *equipment* and devices *approved* by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval. Materials, *equipment* and devices tested by an *approved* testing laboratory shall be permitted to be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

[NY] 104.9.1 Used materials and *equipment*. Used materials, *equipment* and devices shall not be reused unless they meet the requirements of this code for new materials, *equipment*, and devices.

[NY] 104.10 Workmanship. Repairs, maintenance work, *alterations* or installations which are caused directly or indirectly by the enforcement of the *Uniform Code* shall be executed and installed in a workmanlike manner and in accordance with the *Uniform Code* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

[NY] SECTION 105—BUILDING PERMITS AND OPERATING PERMITS

[NY] 105.1 Required permits. No person or entity shall commence, perform, or continue any work that must conform with the *Uniform Code* and/or *Energy Code* unless:

1. Such person or entity has applied to the *authority having jurisdiction* for a permit,
2. The *authority having jurisdiction* has issued a permit authorizing such work,
3. Such permit has not been revoked or suspended, and
4. Such permit has not expired.

[NY] 105.2 Work exempt from building permit requirement. A building permit shall not be required for work in any category that is excluded from the building permit requirement by the *authority having jurisdiction*'s *Code Enforcement Program*, provided that *Part 1203* allows an *authority having jurisdiction* to exclude such category of work from the building permit requirement. Exemptions from building permit requirements shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of any provision of the *Uniform Code*, any provision of the *Energy Code*, or any provision of any other applicable law.

[NY] 105.3 Applications for *building* permits. A person or entity applying for a building permit shall submit an application to the *authority having jurisdiction*. An application for a building permit shall include:

1. *Construction documents* that satisfy the requirements of Section 106.1.
2. Any and all other submittal documents required by Section 106.
3. Any and all other information and documentation that may be required by the stricter of *authority having jurisdiction*'s *Code Enforcement Program* or a *Part 1203—Compliant Code Enforcement Program*.
4. Such other information and documentation as the *authority having jurisdiction* may determine to be necessary to allow the *authority having jurisdiction* to determine whether the proposed work conforms with the *Uniform Code*, the *Energy Code*, and other applicable laws.

[NY] 105.4 Permit issuance.

[NY] 105.4.1 Approval of *construction documents*. When the *authority having jurisdiction* issues a building permit, the *authority having jurisdiction* shall *approve* the *construction documents* in writing. Work shall be installed in accordance with the *approved construction documents* and the terms and conditions, if any, of the building permit.

[NY] 105.4.2 Validity of building permit. The issuance or granting of a building permit shall not be construed to be a permit for, or an approval of, any violation of any provision of the *Uniform Code*, the *Energy Code* or of any other applicable law. A building permit purporting to give authority to violate or cancel any provision of the *Uniform Code*, the *Energy Code*, or any other applicable law shall not be valid.

The issuance of a building permit based on *construction documents* and other data shall not prevent the code official from thereafter requiring the correction of errors in said *construction documents* and other data.

[NY] 105.4.3 Reserved.

[NY] 105.4.4 Reserved.

[NY] 105.4.5 Suspension or revocation of building permit. The *authority having jurisdiction* is authorized to suspend or revoke a building permit wherever the permit is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect, inaccurate or incomplete information; or in violation of any provision of the *Uniform Code*, the *Energy Code*, or any other applicable law; or there has been a false statement or misrepresentation as to the material facts in the application or *construction documents* on which the permit or approval was based including, but not limited to, any one of the following:

1. The permit is used for a location or establishment other than that for which it was issued.
2. The permit is used for a condition or activity other than that listed in the permit.

3. Conditions and limitations set forth in the permit have been violated.
4. There have been any false statements or misrepresentations as to the material fact in the application for permit or plans submitted or a condition of the permit.
5. The permit is used by a different person or firm than the name for which it was issued.
6. The permittee failed, refused or neglected to comply with orders or notices duly served in accordance with the provisions of this code within the time provided therein.
7. The permit was issued in error or in violation of an ordinance, regulation or this code.

Any such suspension or revocation shall be in writing, signed by an authorized agent of the *authority having jurisdiction*.

[NY] 105.4.6 Reserved.

[NY] 105.4.7 Placement of building permit and approved construction documents. The building permit or a copy thereof, and at least one set of *approved construction documents* shall be kept on the site of the work until the completion of the project. The *approved construction documents* shall be open to inspection by any authorized representative of the *authority having jurisdiction*.

[NY] 105.5 Operating permits. Where the stricter of the *authority having jurisdiction*'s *Code Enforcement Program* or a *Part 1203—Compliant Code Enforcement Program* requires an operating permit to conduct an activity or to use a category of *building*, no person or entity shall conduct such activity or use such category of *building* without obtaining an operating permit from the *authority having jurisdiction*. The procedures for applying for, issuing, revoking, and suspending operating permits shall be as set forth in the stricter of the *authority having jurisdiction's Code Enforcement Program* or a *Part 1203—Compliant Code Enforcement Program*.

Exceptions:

1. Where specifically identified in the *code enforcement program*, an *authority having jurisdiction* may exempt the requirement for an operating permit for the processes or activities, or the *buildings*, structures, or facilities listed in Sections 105.5.1 through 105.5.61 of the *Fire Code of New York State*, provided that the use is expressly authorized by a certificate of occupancy or certificate of compliance, fire safety and property maintenance inspections are performed in accordance with Section 1203.3(h), and condition assessments are performed in compliance with Appendix C of the *Property Maintenance Code of New York State*, as applicable.
2. An operating permit shall not be required if periodic inspections are performed for compliance with the applicable provisions of the *Uniform Code* to conduct such activity or to use such category of *building* to the satisfaction of the *authority having jurisdiction*.

SECTION 106—CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

[NY] 106.1 General. Submittal documents consisting of *construction documents*, and other data shall be submitted shall be submitted with each application for a permit. The *authority having jurisdiction* may waive the requirement for *construction documents* where a *registered design professional* is not required by law and where either the work to be done involves minor *alterations* or repairs, or where plans and specifications are determined by the *authority having jurisdiction* to not be necessary to verify code compliance. *Construction documents* shall be in accordance with Sections 106.1.1 through 106.1.10.

[NY] 106.1.1 Information on construction documents. *Construction documents* shall:

1. Define the scope of the proposed work;
2. Be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the proposed work;
3. Show in detail that the proposed work will conform to the provisions of the *Uniform Code*, the *Energy Code*, and other applicable codes, laws, ordinances, and regulations;
4. Include all information required by any provision of this code (including but not limited to the information described in Sections 106.1.2 through 106.1.10), all information required by any other applicable provision of the *Uniform Code*, and all information required by any applicable provision of the *Energy Code*;
5. Include any and all additional information and documentation that may be required by the stricter of the *Code Enforcement Program* of the *authority having jurisdiction* or a *Part 1203—Compliant Code Enforcement Program; and*
6. Be dimensioned and drawn to an appropriate scale.

[NY] 106.1.2 Manufacturer's installation instructions. Manufacturer's installation instructions, as required by any applicable provision of the *Uniform Code* or by any applicable provision of the *Energy Code*, shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.

[NY] 106.1.3 Fire protection system shop drawings. Shop drawings for the fire protection system(s) shall be submitted to indicate conformance to Chapter 9, any other applicable provision of the *Uniform Code*, and the *construction documents*. Such shop drawings shall be approved prior to the start of system installation. Shop drawings shall contain all information as required by the referenced installation standards in Chapter 9 or in any other applicable provision of the *Uniform Code*.

[NY] 106.1.4 Means of egress. The *construction documents* shall show in sufficient detail the location, construction, size and character of all portions of the means of egress including the path of the exit discharge to the public way in compliance with the provisions of the *Uniform Code*. In other than occupancies in Groups R-2, R-3, and I-1, the *construction documents* shall designate the number of occupants to be accommodated on every floor, and in all rooms and spaces.

[NY] 106.1.5 Exterior wall envelope. *Construction documents* for all buildings shall describe the exterior wall envelope in sufficient detail to determine compliance with the *Uniform Code* and the *Energy Code*. The *construction documents* shall provide

details of the exterior wall envelope as required, including flashing, intersections with dissimilar materials, corners, end details, control joints, intersections at roof, eaves or parapets, means of drainage, water-resistive membrane and details around openings.

The *construction documents* shall include manufacturer's installation instructions that provide supporting documentation that the proposed penetration and opening details described in the *construction documents* maintain the weather resistance of the exterior wall envelope. The supporting documentation shall fully describe the exterior wall system that was tested, where applicable, as well as the test procedure used.

[NY] 106.1.6 Exterior balconies and elevated walking surfaces. Where balconies or other elevated walking surfaces are exposed to water from direct or blowing rain, snow, or irrigation, and the structural framing is protected by an impervious moisture barrier, the *construction documents* shall include details for all elements of the impervious moisture barrier system. The *construction documents* shall include manufacturer's installation instructions.

[NY] 106.1.7 Site plan. The *construction documents* submitted with the application for a building permit shall be accompanied by a site plan showing to scale the size and location of new construction and existing structures on the site, distances from lot lines, the established street grades and proposed finished grades and, as applicable, flood hazard areas, floodways, and design flood elevations. The site plan shall be drawn in accordance with an accurate boundary line survey. In the case of demolition, the site plan shall show construction to be demolished and the location and size of existing structures and construction that are to remain on the site or plot. The *code official* is authorized to waive or modify the requirement for a site plan where the application for a building permit is for an alteration or repair or where otherwise warranted.

[NY] 106.1.7.1 Design flood elevations. Where design flood elevations are not specified, they shall be established in accordance with Section 1612.3.1 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[NY] 106.1.7.2 Flood hazard documentation. If located in a flood hazard area, documentation of the elevation of the lowest floor as required in Section 1612.4 of the *Building Code of New York State* shall be submitted to the *code official* prior to the final inspection.

[NY] 106.1.8 Structural information. The *construction documents* shall provide the information specified in Section 1603 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[NY] 106.1.9 Relocatable buildings. *Construction documents* for relocatable buildings shall comply with Section 3113 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[NY] 106.1.10 Design professional. *Construction documents* shall be prepared by a *registered design professional* where required by Article 145 or Article 147 of the New York State Education Law, by the stricter of the *Code Enforcement Program* of the *authority having jurisdiction* or a *Part 1203—Compliant Code Enforcement Program*, or by any other applicable statute, regulation, or local law or ordinance.

[NY] 106.2 Reserved.

[NY] SECTION 107—CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY

[NY] 107.1 Certificate of occupancy. Where the stricter of the *authority having jurisdiction*'s *Code Enforcement Program* or a *Part 1203—Compliant Code Enforcement Program* requires a certificate of occupancy for permission to use or occupy a *building* or structure, or any portion thereof, no person or entity shall use or occupy such *building* or structure, or such portion thereof, and a change of *occupancy* of a *building* or structure or portion thereof shall not be made, unless:

1. The *authority having jurisdiction* has issued such certificate of occupancy,
2. Such certificate of occupancy has not been revoked or suspended, and
3. In the case of a temporary certificate of occupancy, such temporary certificate of occupancy has not expired.

[NY] 107.2 Reserved.

[NY] 107.3 Change in use or occupancy. Without regard to whether a certificate of occupancy shall have been issued, no person or entity shall convert the use or *occupancy* of a *building* or structure, or any portion thereof, from one use or *occupancy* to another without first obtaining a permit to perform the work, if any, required for such conversion; performing such work, if any; and obtaining a certificate of occupancy from the *authority having jurisdiction*.

[NY] 107.3.1 Authorized uses and occupancies. Where a certificate of occupancy has been issued for a *building* or structure, or any portion thereof, no person or entity shall use or occupy such *building* or structure, or such portion thereof, for any use or *occupancy* other than that authorized by such certificate of occupancy.

[NY] SECTION 108—RESERVED

SECTION 109—SERVICE UTILITIES

[NY] 109.1 Connection of service utilities. Connections from a utility, source of energy, fuel or power to any *building* or system that is regulated by the *Uniform Code* shall be made in accordance with the requirements of the *Uniform Code*; the regulations of the public utility providing such utility, source of energy, fuel or power; and the regulations of any governmental unit or agency having jurisdiction over such utility, source of energy, fuel or power.

[A] 109.2 Temporary connection. Where *approved* by the *code official,* temporary connections from a utility, source of energy, fuel, or power to a *building* or system may be made. Temporary connections shall be made in accordance with Section 109.1.

[A] 109.3 Notice of disconnection of service utilities. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall notify the *code official* of the disconnection of any utility service to the *building*, structure, or system regulated by the *Uniform Code*.

[NY] SECTION 110—TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

[NY] 110.1 General. Temporary structures shall conform to Section 3103 of the *Building Code of New York State* and Chapter 31 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[NY] 110.2 Reserved.

[NY] 110.3 Reserved.

[NY] 110.4 Reserved.

[NY] SECTION 111—INSPECTIONS

[NY] 111.1 Construction inspections. Any person or entity performing work for which a building permit has been issued shall keep work accessible and exposed until the work has been inspected and accepted by the *authority having jurisdiction*, or its authorized agent, at each element of the construction process that is applicable to the work and specified in the stricter of the *authority having jurisdiction*'s *Code Enforcement Program* or a *Part 1203—Compliant Code Enforcement Program*.

[NY] 111.2 Required inspections and testing.

[NY] 111.2.1 Reserved.

[A] 111.2.2 Inspection requests. It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the code *official* when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide *access* to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

[NY] 111.2.3 Reserved.

[NY] 111.2.4 Reserved.

[NY] 111.2.5 Reserved.

[NY] 111.3 Reserved.

[NY] SECTION 112—VARIANCES AND APPEALS

[NY] 112.1 Application for variance or appeal. An application for a variance or modification of any provision or requirement of *Uniform Code* shall be in accordance with the provisions of *Part 1205*. An appeal of any order or determination, or the failure within a reasonable time to make an order or determination, of an administrative official charged to enforce or purporting to enforce the *Uniform Code* may be made in accordance with the provisions of *Part 1205*.

[NY] 112.2 Limitations on authority. Nothing in this code shall be construed as permitting any *building official* or any *authority having jurisdiction* to waive, vary, modify, or otherwise alter any provision or requirement of this code or any other provision or requirement of the *Uniform Code*. Provisions or requirements of the *Uniform Code* may be varied or modified only in accordance with procedures established by *Part 1205* or by such other regulations as may hereafter be promulgated by the Secretary of State pursuant to Section 381(1)(f) of the Executive Law.

[NY] 112.3 Reserved.

[NY] 112.4 Reserved.

[NY] SECTION 113—RESERVED

SECTION 114—VIOLATIONS

[NY] 114.1 Violations. Any violation of any provision set forth in this chapter shall be a violation of the *Uniform Code*, and any person or entity violating any such provision shall be subject to the penalties prescribed in Executive Law Section 382(2). In addition, to the extent that any act or omission that violates any provision set forth in this chapter is also a violation of any other applicable law, any person or entity guilty of such act or omission shall also be subject to the penalties prescribed in or otherwise applicable to a violation of such other applicable law.

[NY] 114.2 Reserved.

[NY] 114.3 Reserved.

[NY] 114.4 Reserved.

[NY] 114.5 Reserved.

[NY] 114.6 Reserved.

SECTION 115—STOP WORK ORDER

[NY] 115.1 Stop work orders. The *authority having jurisdiction* is authorized to issue a stop work order to halt work that is being performed without a required permit; work that is being performed after a required permit has been revoked or suspended or has expired; work that is being conducted in a dangerous or unsafe manner; or work that is contrary to provisions of the *Uniform Code,* the *Energy Code*, the *approved construction documents*, or the terms and conditions (if any) of the permit. No person or entity shall commence, perform or continue any work if the *authority having jurisdiction* has issued a stop work order with respect to such work.

[NY] 115.2 Reserved.

[NY] 115.3 Reserved.

[NY] 115.4 Reserved.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

2 DEFINITIONS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purposes of the code.*

SECTION 201—GENERAL

[NY] 201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the words and terms provided in italics shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings indicated in this chapter or as defined within the chapter or appendix where the word or term is found, except as provided in Sections 201.3 and 201.4.

[NY] 201.2 Interchangeability. Words and terms used in the present tense include the future; words and terms in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

[NY] 201.3 Words and terms defined in other codes. Where italicized words and terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *Building Code of New York State*, *Fire Code of New York State*, *Fuel Gas Code of New York State* or *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*, such terms shall have meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

[NY] 201.4 Words and terms not defined. Where words and terms are not italicized or are italicized but not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such words and terms shall have the meanings defined in applicable referenced standards, statutes, or regulations or shall have the ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION 202—GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABRASIVE MATERIALS. Moderately abrasive particulate in high concentrations, and highly abrasive particulate in moderate and high concentrations, such as alumina, bauxite, iron silicate, sand and slag.

ABSORPTION SYSTEM. A refrigerating system in which refrigerant is pressurized by pumping a chemical solution of refrigerant in absorbent, and then separated by the addition of heat in a generator, condensed (to reject heat), expanded, evaporated (to provide refrigeration), and reabsorbed in an absorber to repeat the cycle; the system can be single or multiple effect, the latter using multiple stages or internally cascaded use of heat to improve efficiency.

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be reached by *ready access* or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel or similar obstruction [see also "*Ready access (to)*"].

AIR. Air supplied to mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* for *combustion*, ventilation, cooling and similar purposes. Standard air is air at standard temperature and pressure, namely, 70°F (21°C) and 29.92 inches of mercury (101.3 kPa).

AIR, EXHAUST. Air being removed from any space, *appliance* or piece of *equipment* and conveyed directly to the atmosphere by means of openings or ducts.

AIR, MAKEUP. Any combination of outdoor and transfer air intended to replace *exhaust air* and exfiltration.

AIR, OUTDOOR. Ambient air that enters a *building* through a ventilation system, through intentional openings for *natural ventilation*, or by infiltration.

AIR, TRANSFER. Air moved from one indoor space to another.

AIR CONDITIONING. The treatment of air so as to control simultaneously the temperature, humidity, cleanness and distribution of the air to meet the requirements of a conditioned space.

AIR DISPERSION SYSTEM. Any diffuser system designed to both convey air within a room, space or area and diffuse air into that space while operating under positive pressure. Systems are commonly constructed of, but not limited to, fabric or plastic film.

AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Any system of ducts, *plenums* and air-handling *equipment* that circulates air within a space or spaces and includes systems made up of one or more air-handling units.

AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM. A system that consists of heat exchangers, blowers, filters, supply, exhaust and return ducts, and shall include any apparatus installed in connection therewith.

AIR-HANDLING UNIT. A blower or fan used for the purpose of distributing supply air to a room, space or area.

[A] ALTERATION. A change in a mechanical system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

[BG] AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY. *Buildings* or portions thereof used to provide medical, surgical, psychiatric, nursing or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to persons who are rendered incapable of self-preservation by the services provided or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already incapable.

APPLIANCE. A device or apparatus that is manufactured and designed to utilize energy and for which this code provides specific requirements.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

APPLIANCE, EXISTING. Any *appliance* regulated by this code that was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

APPLIANCE, VENTED. An *appliance* designed and installed in such a manner that all of the products of *combustion* are conveyed directly from the *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere through an *approved chimney* or vent system.

APPLIANCE TYPE.

High-heat *appliance*. Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature greater than 2,000°F (1093°C).

Low-heat *appliance* (residential *appliance*). Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature of 1,000°F (538°C) or less.

Medium-heat *appliance*. Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature of more than 1,000°F (538°C), but not greater than 2,000°F (1093°C).

[A] APPROVED. Acceptable to the code official.

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized organization that is regularly engaged in conducting tests, furnishing inspection services or furnishing product evaluation or certification where such organization has been *approved* by the code official.

[NY] AUTHORITY HAVING JURISDICTION. The governmental unit or agency responsible for administration and enforcement of this code.

AUTOMATIC BOILER. Any class of boiler that is equipped with the controls and limit devices specified in Chapter 10.

BALANCED VENTILATION SYSTEM. A ventilation system that simultaneously supplies outdoor air to and exhausts air from a space, where the mechanical supply airflow rate and the mechanical exhaust airflow rate are each within 10 percent of the average of the two airflow rates.

BATHROOM. A room containing a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture.

BOILER. A closed heating *appliance* intended to supply hot water or steam for space heating, processing or power purposes. Low-pressure boilers operate at pressures less than or equal to 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103 kPa) for steam and 160 psi (1103 kPa) for water. High-pressure boilers operate at pressures exceeding those pressures.

BOILER ROOM. A room primarily utilized for the installation of a boiler.

BRAZED JOINT. A gastight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures or alloys that melt at a temperature above 1,000°F (538°C), but lower than the melting temperature of the parts to be joined.

BRAZING. A metal joining process wherein coalescence is produced by the use of a nonferrous filler metal having a melting point above 1,000°F (538°C), but lower than that of the base metal being joined. The filler material is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary attraction.

BREATHING ZONE. The region within an occupied space between planes 3 and 72 inches (76 and 1829 mm) above the floor and more than 2 feet (610 mm) from the walls of the space or from fixed air-conditioning *equipment*.

BTU. Abbreviation for British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound (454 g) of water 1°F (0.56°C) (1 Btu = 1055 J).

[A] BUILDING. Any structure utilized or intended for supporting or sheltering any *occupancy*.

[NY] BUILDING CODE OF NEW YORK STATE. The 2025 edition of the publication entitled "*Building Code of New York State*", published by the International Code Council, Inc. (publication date July 2025).

[NY] BUILDING OFFICIAL. See "*Code Official*."

[BF] CEILING RADIATION DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in a ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly to limit automatically the radiative heat transfer through an air inlet/outlet opening. *Ceiling radiation dampers* are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic *ceiling radiation damper* is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

CHIMNEY. A primarily vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of *combustion* and air from a fuel-burning *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere.

Factory-built chimney. A *listed* and *labeled chimney* composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry chimney. A field-constructed *chimney* composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

Metal chimney. A field-constructed *chimney* of metal.

CHIMNEY CONNECTOR. A pipe that connects a fuel-burning *appliance* to a *chimney*.

CLEARANCE. The minimum distance through air measured between the heat-producing surface of the mechanical *appliance*, device or *equipment* and the surface of the combustible material or assembly.

CLOSED COMBUSTION SOLID-FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE. A heat-producing *appliance* that employs a *combustion* chamber that does not have openings other than the flue collar, fuel charging door and adjustable openings provided to control the amount of *combustion air* that enters the *combustion* chamber.

CLOTHES DRYER. An *appliance* used to dry wet laundry by means of heat.

[A] CODE. These regulations, subsequent amendments thereto, or any emergency rule or regulation that the administrative authority having jurisdiction has lawfully adopted.

[**NY] CODE ENFORCEMENT PROGRAM.** The program under which an *authority having jurisdiction* administers and enforces this code, as such program is currently in effect and as such program may hereafter be amended from time to time.

[A] CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

[BF] COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon the detection of heat and resist the passage of flame and smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, be controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

COMBUSTIBLE ASSEMBLY. Wall, floor, ceiling or other assembly constructed of one or more component materials that are not defined as noncombustible.

[F] COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID. A liquid having a closed cup flash point at or above 100°F (38°C). Combustible liquids shall be subdivided as follows:

Class II. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 100°F (38°C) and below 140°F (60°C).

Class IIIA. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 140°F (60°C) and below 200°F (93°C).

Class IIIB. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 200°F (93°C).

The category of combustible liquids does not include compressed gases or cryogenic fluids.

COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL. Any material not defined as noncombustible.

COMBUSTION. In the context of this code, refers to the rapid oxidation of fuel accompanied by the production of heat or heat and light.

COMBUSTION AIR. Air necessary for complete *combustion* of a fuel, including *theoretical air* and excess air.

COMBUSTION CHAMBER. The portion of an *appliance* within which *combustion* occurs.

COMBUSTION PRODUCTS. Constituents resulting from the *combustion* of a fuel with the oxygen of the air, including the inert gases, but excluding excess air.

COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCES. *Appliances* used in a commercial food service establishment for heating or cooking food. For the purpose of this definition, a commercial food service establishment is where food is prepared for sale or is prepared on a scale that is by volume and frequency not representative of domestic household cooking.

COMMERCIAL COOKING RECIRCULATING SYSTEM. Self-contained system consisting of the exhaust hood, the cooking *equipment*, the filters and the fire suppression system. The system is designed to capture cooking vapors and residues generated from commercial cooking *equipment*. The system removes contaminants from the *exhaust air* and recirculates the air to the space from which it was withdrawn.

COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS.

Backshelf hood. A backshelf hood is also referred to as a low-proximity hood, or as a sidewall hood where wall mounted. Its front lower lip is low over the *appliance*(s) and is "set back" from the front of the *appliance*(*s*). It is always closed to the rear of the *appliances* by a panel where free-standing, or by a panel or wall where wall mounted, and its height above the cooking surface varies. (This style of hood can be constructed with partial end panels to increase its effectiveness in capturing the effluent generated by the cooking operation.)

Double island canopy hood. A double island canopy hood is placed over back-to-back *appliances* or *appliance* lines. It is open on all sides and overhangs both fronts and the sides of the *appliance*(s). It could have a wall panel between the backs of the *appliances*. (The fact that *exhaust air* is drawn from both sides of the double canopy to meet in the center causes each side of this hood to emulate a wall canopy hood, and thus it functions much the same with or without an actual wall panel between the backs of the *appliances*.)

Eyebrow hood. An eyebrow hood is mounted directly to the face of an *appliance*, such as an oven and dishwasher, above the opening(s) or door(s) from which effluent is emitted, extending past the sides and overhanging the front of the opening to capture the effluent.

Pass-over hood. A pass-over hood is a free-standing form of a backshelf hood constructed low enough to pass food over the top.

Single island canopy hood. A single island canopy hood is placed over a single *appliance* or *appliance* line. It is open on all sides and overhangs the front, rear and sides of the *appliance*(s). A single island canopy is more susceptible to cross drafts and requires a greater exhaust airflow than an equivalent sized wall-mounted canopy to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operation(s).

Wall canopy hood. A wall canopy exhaust hood is mounted against a wall above a single *appliance* or line of *appliance*(s), or it could be free-standing with a back panel from the rear of the *appliances* to the hood. It overhangs the front and sides of the *appliance*(s) on all open sides.

The wall acts as a back panel, forcing the *makeup air* to be drawn across the front of the cooking *equipment*, thus increasing the effectiveness of the hood to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operation(s).

COMPENSATING HOODS. *Compensating hoods* are those having integral (built-in) *makeup air* supply. The *makeup air* supply for such hoods is generally supplied from: short-circuit flow from inside the hood, air curtain flow from the bottom of the front face, and front face discharge from the outside front wall of the hood. The compensating makeup airflow can also be supplied from the rear or side of the hood, or the rear, front or sides of the cooking *equipment*. The makeup airflow can be one or a combination of methods.

COMPRESSOR. A specific machine, with or without accessories, for compressing a gas.

COMPRESSOR, POSITIVE DISPLACEMENT. A compressor in which increase in pressure is attained by changing the internal volume of the compression chamber.

COMPRESSOR UNIT. A compressor with its prime mover and accessories.

CONCEALED LOCATION. A location that cannot be accessed without damaging permanent parts of the building structure or finish surface. Spaces above, below or behind readily removable panels or doors shall not be considered as concealed.

CONDENSATE. The liquid that condenses from a gas (including flue gas) caused by a reduction in temperature.

CONDENSER. A heat exchanger designed to liquefy refrigerant vapor by removal of heat.

CONDENSING UNIT. A factory-made assembly of refrigeration components designed to compress and liquefy a specific refrigerant. The unit consists of one or more power-driven compressors, condensers, liquid receivers (where required) and factory-supplied accessories.

CONDITIONED SPACE. An area, room or space that is enclosed within the *building* thermal envelope and that is directly heated or cooled or that is indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. The written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of the project necessary for obtaining a building permit. The construction drawings shall be drawn to an appropriate scale.

CONTROL. A manual or automatic device designed to regulate the gas, air, water or electrical supply to, or operation of, a mechanical system.

CONVERSION BURNER. A burner designed to supply gaseous fuel to an *appliance* originally designed to utilize another fuel.

COOKING APPLIANCE. See "*Commercial cooking appliances*."

DAMPER. A manually or automatically controlled device to regulate draft or the rate of flow of air or *combustion* gases.

Volume damper. A device that, where installed, will restrict, retard or direct the flow of air in a duct, or the products of *combustion* in a heat-producing *appliance*, its vent connector, vent or *chimney* therefrom.

[BS] DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION. The elevation of the "design flood," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard area map. In areas designated as Zone AO, the *design flood elevation* shall be the elevation of the highest existing grade of the *building's* perimeter plus the depth number, in feet (mm), specified on the flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO where a depth number is not specified on the map, the depth number shall be taken as being equal to 2 feet (610 mm).

DESIGN WORKING PRESSURE. The maximum allowable working pressure for which a specific part of a system is designed.

DIRECT EVAPORATIVE COOLING. The evaporative cooling process where water evaporates directly into the air stream, reducing the air's dry-bulb temperature and raising its humidity level.

DIRECT REFRIGERATION SYSTEM. A system in which the evaporator or condenser of the refrigerating system is in direct contact with the air or other substances to be cooled or heated.

DIRECT SOLAR SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop is not separated from the load.

[FG] DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCES. *Appliances* that are constructed and installed so that all air for *combustion* is derived from the outdoor atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoor atmosphere.

DISCRETE PRODUCT. Products that are noncontinuous, individual, distinct pieces such as, but not limited to, electrical, plumbing and mechanical products and duct straps, duct fittings, duct registers and pipe hangers.

DRAFT. The pressure difference existing between the *appliance* or any component part and the atmosphere, that causes a continuous flow of air and products of *combustion* through the gas passages of the *appliance* to the atmosphere.

Induced draft. The pressure difference created by the action of a fan, blower or ejector, that is located between the *appliance* and the *chimney* or vent termination.

Natural draft. The pressure difference created by a vent or *chimney* because of its height, and the temperature difference between the flue gases and the atmosphere.

DRAFTSTOP. A material, device or construction installed to restrict the movement of air within open spaces of concealed areas of *building* components such as crawl spaces, floor/ceiling assemblies, roof/ceiling assemblies and attics.

DRAIN-BACK SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the fluid in the solar collector loop is gravity drained from the collector into a holding tank under prescribed circumstances.

DRIP. The container placed at a low point in a system of piping to collect condensate and from which the condensate is removable.

DRY CLEANING SYSTEMS. Dry cleaning plants or systems are classified as follows:

Type I. Those systems using Class I flammable liquid solvents having a flash point below 100°F (38°C).

Type II. Those systems using Class II combustible liquid solvents having a flash point at or above 100°F (38°C) and below 140°F (60°C).

Type III. Those systems using Class III combustible liquid solvents having a flash point at or above 140°F (60°C).

Types IV and V. Those systems using Class IV nonflammable liquid solvents.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT FURNACE. A warm-air furnace normally installed in an air distribution duct to supply warm air for heating. This definition shall apply only to a warm-air heating *appliance* that, for air circulation, depends on a blower not furnished as part of the furnace.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, *plenums*, fans and accessory air-handling *equipment* and *appliances*.

DUCTLESS MINI-SPLIT SYSTEM. A heating and cooling system that is comprised of one or multiple indoor evaporator/air-handling units and an outdoor condensing unit that is connected by refrigerant piping and electrical wiring. A ductless mini-split system is capable of cooling or heating one or more rooms without the use of a traditional ductwork system.

[BG] DWELLING. A *building* or portion thereof that contains not more than two *dwelling* units.

[A] DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

ELECTRIC HEATING APPLIANCE. An *appliance* that produces heat energy to create a warm environment by the application of electric power to resistance elements, refrigerant compressors or dissimilar material junctions.

[NY] ENERGY CODE. The New York State Energy Conservation Construction Code adopted pursuant to Article 11 of the New York State Energy Law.

[NY] ENERGY CONSERVATION CONSTRUCTION CODE OF NEW YORK STATE. The 2025 edition of the publication entitled "*Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*," published by the International Code Council, Inc. (publication date July 2025).

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM. Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from or reject energy to *exhaust air* for the purpose of preheating, precooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor *ventilation air* prior to supplying such air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

ENVIRONMENTAL AIR. Air that is conveyed to or from occupied areas through ducts that are not part of the heating or air-conditioning system, such as ventilation for human usage, domestic kitchen range exhaust, bathroom exhaust, domestic clothes dryer exhaust and parking garage exhaust.

EQUIPMENT. Piping, ducts, vents, control devices and other components of systems other than *appliances* that are permanently installed and integrated to provide control of environmental conditions for *buildings*. This definition shall also include other systems specifically regulated in this code.

EQUIPMENT, EXISTING. Any *equipment* regulated by this code which was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

EVAPORATIVE COOLER. A device used for reducing the sensible heat of air for cooling by the process of evaporation of water into an airstream.

EVAPORATIVE COOLING SYSTEM. The *equipment* and *appliances* intended or installed for the purpose of environmental cooling by an evaporative cooler from which the conditioned air is distributed through ducts or *plenums* to the conditioned area.

EVAPORATOR. That part of the system in which liquid refrigerant is vaporized to produce refrigeration.

EXCESS AIR. The amount of air provided in addition to *theoretical air* to achieve complete *combustion* of a fuel, thereby preventing the formation of dangerous products of *combustion*.

EXFILTRATION. Uncontrolled outward air leakage from conditioned spaces through unintentional openings in ceilings, floors and walls to unconditioned spaces or the outdoors caused by pressure differences across these openings resulting from wind, the stack effect created by temperature differences between indoors and outdoors, and imbalances between supply and exhaust airflow rates.

EXHAUST SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, *plenums*, fittings, registers, grilles and hoods through which air is conducted from the space or spaces and exhausted to the outdoor atmosphere.

[NY] EXISTING BUILDING CODE OF NEW YORK STATE. The 2025 edition of the publication entitled "*Existing Building Code of New York State*," published by the International Code Council, Inc. (publication date July 2025).

EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Extra-heavy-duty cooking *appliances* are those utilizing open flame *combustion* of solid fuel at any time.

[NY] FIRE CODE OF NEW YORK STATE. The 2025 edition of the publication entitled "*Fire Code of New York State*," published by the International Code Council, Inc. (publication date July 2025).

[BF] FIRE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon detection of heat and to restrict the passage of flame. Fire dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire, or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic fire damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

FIREPLACE. An assembly consisting of a hearth and fire chamber of noncombustible material and provided with a *chimney*, for use with solid fuels.

Factory-built fireplace. A *listed* and *labeled* fireplace and *chimney* system composed of factory-made components, and assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry fireplace. A field-constructed fireplace composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

FIREPLACE STOVE. A free-standing, *chimney*-connected, solid-fuel-burning heater, designed to be operated with the fire chamber doors in either the open or closed position.

[FG] FLAME SAFEGUARD. A device that will automatically shut off the fuel supply to a main burner or group of burners when the means of ignition of such burners becomes inoperative, and when flame failure occurs on the burner or group of burners.

[BF] FLAME SPREAD INDEX. The numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS. Any liquid that has a flash point below 100°F (38°C), and has a vapor pressure not exceeding 40 psia (276 kPa) at 100°F (38°C). Flammable liquids shall be known as Class I liquids and shall be divided into the following classifications:

Class IA. Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point below 100°F (38°C).

Class IB. Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point at or above 100°F (38°C).

Class IC. Liquids having a flash point at or above 73°F (23°C) and below 100°F (38°C).

[F] FLAMMABLE VAPOR OR FUMES. Mixtures of gases in air at concentrations equal to or greater than the LFL and less than or equal to the upper flammability limit (UFL).

[F] FLASH POINT. The minimum temperature corrected to a pressure of 14.7 psia (101 kPa) at which the application of a test flame causes the vapors of a portion of the sample to ignite under the conditions specified by the test procedures and apparatus. The flash point of a liquid shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D56, ASTM D93 or ASTM D3278.

FLEXIBLE AIR CONNECTOR. A conduit for transferring air between an air duct or *plenum* and an air terminal unit or between an air duct or *plenum* and an air inlet or air outlet. Such conduit is limited in its use, length and location.

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area, not including unoccupied accessory areas or thicknesses of walls.

[FG] FLOOR FURNACE. A completely self-contained furnace suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for *combustion* from outside such space and with means for observing flames and lighting the *appliance* from such space.

FLUE. A passageway within a *chimney* or vent through which gaseous *combustion products* pass.

FLUE CONNECTION (BREECHING). A passage for conducting the products of *combustion* from a fuel-fired *appliance* to the vent or *chimney* (see also "*Chimney connector*" and "*Vent connector*").

[FG] FLUE GASES. Products of *combustion* and excess air.

FLUE LINER (LINING). A system or material used to form the inside surface of a flue in a *chimney* or vent, for the purpose of protecting the surrounding structure from the effects of *combustion products* and conveying *combustion products* without leakage to the atmosphere.

FOOD-GRADE FLUID. Potable water or a fluid containing additives *listed* in accordance with the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts 174–186.

[FG] FUEL GAS. A natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum gas or a mixture of these.

[NY] FUEL GAS CODE OF NEW YORK STATE. The 2025 edition of the publication entitled "*Fuel Gas Code of New York State*," published by the International Code Council, Inc. (publication date July 2025).

FUEL OIL. Kerosene or any hydrocarbon oil having a flash point not less than 100°F (38°C).

FUEL-OIL PIPING SYSTEM. A closed piping system that connects a combustible liquid from a source of supply to a fuel-oil-burning *appliance*.

FURNACE. A completely self-contained heating unit that is designed to supply heated air to spaces remote from or adjacent to the *appliance* location.

FURNACE ROOM. A room primarily utilized for the installation of fuel-burning, space-heating and water-heating *appliances* other than boilers (see also "*Boiler room*").

FUSIBLE PLUG. A device arranged to relieve pressure by operation of a fusible member at a predetermined temperature.

GREASE DUCT. A duct serving a Type I hood, or cooking *appliances* equipped with integral down-draft exhaust systems that produce grease, to convey grease-laden air from the hood or cooking *appliance* directly to the outdoors.

GROUND SOURCE HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEM. Piping buried in horizontal or vertical excavations or placed in a body of water for the purpose of transporting heat transfer liquid to and from a heat pump. Included in this definition are closed loop systems in which the liquid is recirculated and open loop systems in which the liquid is drawn from a well or other source.

[BS] GYPSUM BOARD. A type of gypsum panel product consisting of a noncombustible core primarily of gypsum with paper surfacing.

[BS] GYPSUM WALLBOARD. A gypsum board used primarily as an interior surfacing for *building* structures.

HAZARDOUS LOCATION. Any location considered to be a fire hazard for flammable vapors, dust, combustible fibers or other highly combustible substances. The location is not necessarily categorized in the *Building Code of New York State* as a high-hazard use group classification.

HEAT EXCHANGER. A device that transfers heat from one medium to another.

HEAT PUMP. A *refrigeration system* or factory-made *appliance* that utilizes refrigerant to transfer heat into a space or substance.

HEAT TRANSFER LIQUID. The operating or thermal storage liquid in a mechanical system, including water or other liquid base, and additives at the concentration present under operating conditions used to move heat from one location to another. Refrigerants are not included as heat transfer liquids.

HEAVY-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Heavy-duty cooking *appliances* include electric under-fired broilers, electric chain (conveyor) broilers, gas under-fired broilers, gas chain (conveyor) broilers, gas open-burner ranges (with or without oven), electric and gas wok ranges, smokers, smoker ovens, and electric and gas over-fired (upright) broilers and salamanders.

HIGH-PROBABILITY SYSTEMS. A *refrigeration system* in which the basic design or the location of components is such that a leakage of refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will enter an *occupancy* classified area, other than the *machinery room*.

HIGH-SIDE PRESSURE. The parts of a refrigerating system subject to condenser pressure.

HOOD. An air intake device used to capture by entrapment, impingement, adhesion or similar means, grease, moisture, heat and similar contaminants before they enter a duct system.

Type I. A kitchen hood for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke. Such hoods are equipped with a fire suppression system.

Type II. A general kitchen hood for collecting and removing steam, vapor, heat, odors and products of *combustion*.

[FG] HYDROGEN GENERATING APPLIANCE. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages of integrated systems for generating gaseous hydrogen. Hydrogen generating *appliances* utilize electrolysis, reformation, chemical, or other processes to generate hydrogen.

IGNITION SOURCE. A flame, spark or hot surface capable of igniting flammable vapors or fumes. Such sources include *appliance* burners, burner ignitors and electrical switching devices.

[F] IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE OR HEALTH (IDLH). The concentration of airborne contaminants that poses a threat of death, immediate or delayed permanent adverse health effects, or effects that could prevent escape from such an environment. This contaminant concentration level is established by the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) based on both toxicity and flammability. It is generally expressed in parts per million by volume (ppm v/v) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m^3).

INDIRECT EVAPORATIVE COOLING. The evaporative cooling process where water evaporates into a secondary air stream, removing heat from a primary air stream utilizing a heat exchanger.

INDIRECT REFRIGERATION SYSTEM. A system in which a secondary coolant cooled or heated by the refrigerating system is circulated to the air or other substance to be cooled or heated. Indirect systems are distinguished by the following methods of application:

Closed system. A system in which a secondary fluid is either cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then circulated within a closed circuit in indirect contact with the air or other substance to be cooled or heated.

Double-indirect open-spray system. A system in which the secondary substance for an indirect open-spray system is heated or cooled by an intermediate coolant circulated from a second enclosure.

Open-spray system. A system in which a secondary coolant is cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then circulated in direct contact with the air or other substance to be cooled or heated.

Vented closed system. A system in which a secondary coolant is cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then passed through a closed circuit in the air or other substance to be cooled or heated, except that the evaporator or condenser is placed in an open or appropriately vented tank.

INDIRECT SOLAR SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop circulates between the solar collector and a heat exchanger and such gas or liquid is not drained from the system or supplied to the load during normal operation.

INFILTRATION. Uncontrolled inward air leakage to conditioned spaces through unintentional openings in ceilings, floors and walls from unconditioned spaces or the outdoors caused by pressure differences across these openings resulting from wind, the stack effect created by temperature differences between indoors and outdoors, and imbalances between supply and exhaust airflow rates.

INTERLOCK. A device actuated by another device with which it is directly associated, to govern succeeding operations of the same or allied devices. A circuit in which a given action cannot occur until after one or more other actions have taken place.

JOINT, FLANGED. A joint made by bolting together a pair of flanged ends.

JOINT, FLARED. A metal-to-metal compression joint in which a conical spread is made on the end of a tube that is compressed by a flare nut against a mating flare.

JOINT, PLASTIC ADHESIVE. A joint made in thermoset plastic piping by the use of an adhesive substance that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces without dissolving either one of them.

JOINT, PLASTIC HEAT FUSION. A joint made in thermoplastic piping by heating the parts sufficiently to permit fusion of the materials when the parts are pressed together.

JOINT, PLASTIC SOLVENT CEMENT. A joint made in thermoplastic piping by the use of a solvent or solvent cement that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces.

JOINT, SOLDERED. A gastight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures of alloys that melt at temperatures between 400°F (204°C) and 1,000°F (538°C).

JOINT, WELDED. A gastight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts in molten state.

[A] LABELED. *Equipment*, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the *labeled* items and whose labeling indicates either that the *equipment*, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FAN. A ceiling fan that is greater than 7 feet (2134 mm) in diameter. These fans are also referred to as high-volume, low-speed (HVLS) fans.

LIGHT-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Light-duty cooking *appliances* include gas and electric ovens (including standard, bake, roasting, revolving, retherm, convection, combination convection/steamer, countertop conveyorized baking/finishing, deck and pastry), electric and gas steam-jacketed kettles, electric and gas pasta cookers, electric and gas compartment steamers (both pressure and atmospheric) and electric and gas cheesemelters.

[FG] LIMIT CONTROL. A device responsive to changes in pressure, temperature or level for turning on, shutting off or throttling the gas supply to an *appliance*.

LIMITED CHARGE SYSTEM. A system in which, with the compressor idle, the design pressure will not be exceeded when the refrigerant charge has completely evaporated.

[A] LISTED. *Equipment,* materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed equipment* or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the *equipment*, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose. Terms that are used to identify *listed equipment*, products or materials include "listed," "certified," "classified" or other terms as determined appropriate by the listing organization.

LIVING SPACE. Space within a *dwelling unit* utilized for living, sleeping, eating, cooking, bathing, washing and sanitation purposes.

LOWER EXPLOSIVE LIMIT (LEL). See "*Lower flammable limit*."

[F] LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (LFL). The minimum concentration of vapor in air at which propagation of flame will occur in the presence of an *ignition source*. The LFL is sometimes referred to as LEL or lower explosive limit.

LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (REFRIGERANT) (LFL). The minimum concentration of refrigerant at which a flame is capable of propagating through a homogeneous mixture of refrigerant and air under specific test conditions in accordance with ASHRAE 34.

LOW-PRESSURE HOT-WATER-HEATING BOILER. A boiler furnishing hot water at pressures not exceeding 160 psi (1103 kPa) and at temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C).

LOW-PRESSURE STEAM-HEATING BOILER. A boiler furnishing steam at pressures not exceeding 15 psi (103 kPa).

LOW-PROBABILITY PUMP. A pump that is designed to prevent atmospheric release of the pumped fluid by one of the following methods:

1. The pump is permanently sealed.
2. The pump incorporates a static seal.
3. The pump incorporates not less than two sequential dynamic shaft seals to isolate the pumped fluid from atmosphere at shaft penetrations and automatically shuts down upon failure of any seal.

LOW-PROBABILITY SYSTEMS. A *refrigeration system* in which the basic design or the location of components is such that a leakage of refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will not enter an *occupancy*-classified area, other than the *machinery room*.

LOW-SIDE PRESSURE. The parts of a refrigerating system subject to evaporator pressure.

MACHINERY ROOM. An enclosed space that is required by Chapter 11 to contain refrigeration *equipment* and to comply with Sections 1105 and 1106.

MECHANICAL DRAFT SYSTEM. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases by mechanical means, that consists of an induced-draft portion under nonpositive static pressure or a forced-draft portion under positive static pressure.

Forced-draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static pressure.

Induced-draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure.

Power venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT/APPLIANCE ROOM. A room or space in which nonfuel-fired mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* are located.

MECHANICAL EXHAUST SYSTEM. A system for removing air from a room or space by mechanical means.

MECHANICAL JOINT.

1. A connection between pipes, fittings, or pipes and fittings that is not welded, brazed, caulked, soldered, solvent cemented or heat fused.
2. A general form of gas- or liquid-tight connections obtained by the joining of parts through a positive holding mechanical construction such as, but not limited to, flanged, screwed, clamped or flared connections.

MECHANICAL SYSTEM. A system specifically addressed and regulated in this code and composed of components, devices, *appliances* and *equipment*.

MEDIUM-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Medium-duty cooking *appliances* include electric discrete element ranges (with or without oven), electric and gas hot-top ranges, electric and gas griddles, electric and gas double-sided griddles, electric and gas fryers (including open deep fat fryers, donut fryers, kettle fryers and pressure fryers), electric and gas conveyor pizza ovens, electric and gas tilting skillets (braising pans) and electric and gas rotisseries.

MODULAR BOILER. A steam or hot-water-heating assembly consisting of a group of individual boilers called modules intended to be installed as a unit without intervening stop valves. Modules are under one jacket or are individually jacketed. The individual modules shall be limited to a maximum input rating of 400,000 Btu/h (117 228 W) gas, 3 gallons per hour (gph) (11.4 L/h) oil, or 115 kW (electric).

NATURAL DRAFT SYSTEM. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure entirely by natural draft.

NATURAL VENTILATION. The movement of air into and out of a space through intentionally provided openings, such as windows and doors, or through nonpowered ventilators.

NET OCCUPIABLE FLOOR AREA. The floor area of an *occupiable space* defined by the inside surfaces of its walls but excluding shafts, column enclosures and other permanently enclosed, inaccessible and unoccupiable areas. Obstructions in the space such as furnishings, display or storage racks and other obstructions, whether temporary or permanent, shall not be deducted from the space area.

NO-FLOW CONDITION (SOLAR). A condition where thermal energy is not transferred from a solar thermal collector by means of flow of a heat transfer fluid.

NONABRASIVE/ABRASIVE MATERIALS. Nonabrasive particulate in high concentrations, moderately abrasive particulate in low and moderate concentrations, and highly abrasive particulate in low concentrations, such as alfalfa, asphalt, plaster, gypsum and salt.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL. A material that passes ASTM E136.

NONFOOD-GRADE FLUID. Any fluid that is not designated as a food-grade fluid.

[A] OCCUPANCY. The purpose for which a *building*, or portion thereof, is utilized or occupied.

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE LIMIT (OEL). The time-weighted average (TWA) concentration for a normal 8-hour workday and a 40-hour workweek to which nearly all workers can be repeatedly exposed without adverse effect, based on the OSHA PEL, ACGIH TLV-TWA, TERA OARS WEEL, or consistent value.

OCCUPIABLE SPACE. An enclosed space intended for human activities, excluding those spaces intended primarily for other purposes, such as storage rooms and *equipment* rooms, that are only intended to be occupied occasionally and for short periods of time.

OFFSET (VENT). A combination of *approved* bends that make two changes in direction bringing one section of the vent out of line but into a line parallel with the other section.

OUTDOOR AIR. Air taken from the outdoors, and therefore not previously circulated through the system.

OUTDOOR OPENING. A door, window, louver or skylight openable to the outdoor atmosphere.

OUTLET. A threaded connection or bolted flange in a piping system to which a gas-burning *appliance* is attached.

PANEL HEATING. A method of radiant space heating in which heat is supplied by large heated areas of room surfaces. The heating element usually consists of warm water piping, warm air ducts, or electrical resistance elements embedded in or located behind ceiling, wall or floor surfaces.

[NY] PART 1202. The regulations set forth in 19 NYCRR Part 1202 ("Uniform Code: Administration and Enforcement in Certain Local Governments"), as currently in effect and as hereafter amended from time to time.

[NY] PART 1203. The regulations set forth in 19 NYCRR Part 1203 ("Uniform Code: Minimum Standards for Administration and Enforcement"), as currently in effect and as hereafter amended from time to time.

[NY] PART 1203—COMPLIANT CODE ENFORCEMENT PROGRAM. A code enforcement program that includes the features required by *Part 1203* and satisfies the requirements of *Part 1203*.

[NY] PART 1204. The regulations set forth in 19 NYCRR Part 1204 ("Uniform Code: Administration and Enforcement by State Agencies"), as currently in effect and as hereafter amended from time to time.

[NY] PART 1205. The regulations set forth in 19 NYCRR Part 1205 ("Uniform Code: Variance Procedures"), as currently in effect and as hereafter amended from time to time.

[A] PEER REVIEW. An independent and objective technical review conducted by an *approved* third party.

PELLET FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE. A closed-combustion, vented *appliance* equipped with a fuel-feed mechanism for burning processed pellets of solid fuel of a specified size and composition.

PIPING. Where used in this code, "piping" refers to either pipe or tubing, or both.

Pipe. A rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, copper-alloy, or plastic.

Tubing. Semirigid conduit of copper, copper-alloy, aluminum, plastic or steel.

PLASTIC, THERMOPLASTIC. A plastic that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.

PLASTIC, THERMOSETTING. A plastic that is capable of being changed into a substantially infusible or insoluble product when cured under application of heat or chemical means.

PLENUM. An enclosed portion of the *building* structure, other than an *occupiable space* being conditioned, that is designed to allow air movement, and thereby serve as part of an air distribution system.

POLLUTION-CONTROL UNIT (PCU). Manufactured *equipment* that is installed in a grease exhaust duct system for the purpose of extracting smoke, grease particles and odors from the exhaust flow by means of a series of filters.

PORTABLE FUEL CELL APPLIANCE. A fuel cell generator of electricity that is not fixed in place. A portable fuel cell *appliance* utilizes a cord and plug connection to a grid-isolated load and has an integral fuel supply.

POWER BOILER. See "*Boiler*."

[NY] PLUMBING CODE OF NEW YORK STATE. The 2025 edition of the publication entitled "*Plumbing Code of New York State*", published by the International Code Council, Inc. (publication date July 2025).

[A] PREMISES. A lot, plot or parcel of land, including any structure thereon.

PRESS-CONNECT JOINT. A permanent mechanical joint incorporating an elastomeric seal or an elastomeric seal and corrosion-resistant grip or bite ring. The joint is made with a pressing tool and jaw or ring approved by the fitting manufacturer.

PRESSURE, FIELD TEST. A test performed in the field to prove system tightness.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICE. A pressure-actuated valve or rupture member designed to relieve excessive pressure automatically.

PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE. A pressure-actuated valve held closed by a spring or other means and designed to relieve pressure automatically in excess of the device's setting.

PRESSURE VESSELS. Closed containers, tanks or vessels that are designed to contain liquids or gases, or both, under pressure.

PRESSURE VESSELS—REFRIGERANT. Any refrigerant-containing receptacle in a refrigerating system. This does not include evaporators where each separate section does not exceed 0.5 cubic foot (0.014 m^3) of refrigerant-containing volume, regardless of the maximum inside dimensions, evaporator coils, controls, headers, pumps and piping.

PRESSURE-LIMITING DEVICE. A pressure-responsive mechanism designed to stop automatically the operation of the pressure-imposing element at a predetermined pressure.

PROTECTIVE ASSEMBLY (REDUCED CLEARANCE). Any noncombustible assembly that is *labeled* or constructed in accordance with Table 308.4.2 and is placed between combustible materials or assemblies and mechanical *appliances*, devices or *equipment*, for the purpose of reducing required airspace *clearances*. Protective assemblies attached directly to a combustible assembly shall not be considered as part of that combustible assembly.

PURGE. To clear of air, water or other foreign substances.

PUSH-FIT JOINTS. A type of mechanical joint consisting of elastomeric seals and corrosion-resistant tube grippers. Such joints are permanent or removable, depending on the design.

QUICK-OPENING VALVE. A valve that opens completely by fast action, either manually or automatically controlled. A valve requiring one-quarter round turn or less is considered to be quick opening.

RADIANT HEATER. A heater designed to transfer heat primarily by direct radiation.

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction [see "*Access (to)*"].

RECEIVER, LIQUID. A vessel permanently connected to a *refrigeration system* by inlet and outlet pipes for storage of liquid refrigerant.

RECIRCULATED AIR. Air removed from a conditioned space and intended for reuse as supply air.

RECLAIMED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants reprocessed to the same specifications as for new refrigerants by means including distillation. Such refrigerants have been chemically analyzed to verify that the specifications have been met. Reclaiming usually implies the use of processes or procedures that are available only at a reprocessing or manufacturing facility.

RECOVERED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants removed from a system in any condition without necessarily testing or processing them.

RECYCLED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants from which contaminants have been reduced by oil separation, removal of noncondensable gases, and single or multiple passes through devices that reduce moisture, acidity and particulate matter, such as replaceable core filter driers. These procedures usually are performed at the field job site or in a local service shop.

REFRIGERANT. The fluid used for heat transfer in a *refrigeration system* that undergoes a change of state to absorb heat.

REFRIGERANT DESIGNATION. The unique identifying alphanumeric value or refrigerant number assigned to an individual refrigerant and published in ASHRAE 34.

REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION. The alphanumeric designation that indicates both the toxicity and flammability classifications of refrigerants in accordance with ASHRAE 34.

Flammability classification (refrigerant). The alphanumeric designation used to identify the flammability of refrigerants.

Class 1. Indicates a refrigerant with no flame propagation.

Class 2. Indicates a refrigerant with low flammability.

Class 2L. Indicates a refrigerant with low flammability and low burning velocity.

Class 3. Indicates a refrigerant with high flammability.

Toxicity classification (refrigerant). An alphabetical designation used to identify the toxicity of refrigerants. Class A indicates a refrigerant with low toxicity. Class B indicates a refrigerant with high toxicity.

REFRIGERATION CAPACITY RATING. Expressed as 1 horsepower (0.75 kW), 1 ton or 12,000 Btu/h (3.5 kW), shall all mean the same quantity.

REFRIGERATION MACHINERY ROOM. See "*Machinery room*."

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM. A combination of interconnected parts in which a refrigerant is enclosed and is circulated for the purpose of extracting then rejecting heat.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, ABSORPTION. A heat-operated, closed-refrigeration cycle in which a secondary fluid (the absorbent) absorbs a primary fluid (the refrigerant) that has been vaporized in the evaporator.

Direct system. A system in which the evaporator is in direct contact with the material or space refrigerated, or is located in air-circulating passages communicating with such spaces.

Indirect system. A system in which a brine coil cooled by the refrigerant is circulated to the material or space refrigerated, or is utilized to cool the air so circulated. Indirect systems are distinguished by the type or method of application.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, SELF-CONTAINED. A complete factory-assembled and tested system that is shipped in one or more sections and that does not have refrigerant-containing parts that are joined in the field by other than companion or block valves.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION. *Refrigeration systems* are classified according to the degree of probability that leaked refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will enter an occupied area. The distinction is based on the basic design or location of the components.

[NY] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is a licensed and registered architect (RA) in accordance with Article 147 of the New York State Education Law or a licensed and registered professional engineer (PE) in accordance with Article 145 of the New York State Education Law.

[NY] RESIDENTIAL CODE OF NEW YORK STATE. The 2025 edition of the publication entitled "*Residential Code of New York State*", published by the International Code Council, Inc. (publication date July 2025).

RETURN AIR. Air removed from an *approved* conditioned space or location and recirculated or exhausted.

RETURN AIR SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, *plenums*, fittings, registers and grilles through which air from the space or spaces to be heated or cooled is conducted back to the supply unit (see also "*Supply air system*").

[FG] ROOM HEATER, VENTED. A free-standing heating unit burning solid or liquid fuel for direct heating of the space in and adjacent to that in which the unit is located.

SAFETY VALVE. A valve that relieves pressure in a steam boiler by opening fully at the rated discharge pressure. The valve is of the spring-pop type.

SELF-CONTAINED EQUIPMENT. Complete, factory-assembled and tested, heating, air-conditioning or refrigeration *equipment* installed as a single unit, and having all working parts, complete with motive power, in an enclosed unit of said machinery.

[BF] SHAFT. An enclosed space extending through one or more stories of a *building*, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and the roof.

[BF] SHAFT ENCLOSURE. The walls or construction forming the boundaries of a shaft.

[A] SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a *dwelling unit* are not *sleeping units*.

[BF] SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to resist the passage of smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

[BF] SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX. A numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM. A system that converts solar radiation to thermal energy for use in heating or cooling.

SOLID FUEL (COOKING APPLICATIONS). Applicable to commercial food service operations only, solid fuel is any bulk material such as hardwood, mesquite, charcoal or briquettes that is combusted to produce heat for cooking operations.

SOURCE CAPTURE SYSTEM. A mechanical exhaust system designed and constructed to capture air contaminants at their source and to exhaust such contaminants to the outdoor atmosphere.

[FG] STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANT. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages that constitute an automatically operated assembly of integrated systems for generating useful electrical energy and recoverable thermal energy that is permanently connected and fixed in place.

STEAM BATH EQUIPMENT. Includes steam bath generators, combination room and steam generator systems, and steam bath cabinets intended for high-humidity concentrated heating at elevated temperatures for personal bathing.

STEAM-HEATING BOILER. A boiler operated at pressures not exceeding 15 psi (103 kPa) for steam.

STOP VALVE. A shutoff valve for controlling the flow of liquid or gases.

[BG] STORY. That portion of a *building* included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor next above, except that the topmost story shall be that portion of a *building* included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.

STRENGTH, ULTIMATE. The highest stress level that the component will tolerate without rupture.

SUPPLY AIR. That air delivered to each or any space supplied by the air distribution system or the total air delivered to all spaces supplied by the air distribution system, which is provided for ventilating, heating, cooling, humidification, dehumidification and other similar purposes.

SUPPLY AIR SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, *plenums*, fittings, registers and grilles through which air, heated or cooled, is conducted from the supply unit to the space or spaces to be heated or cooled (see also "*Return air system*").

THEORETICAL AIR. The exact amount of air required to supply oxygen for complete *combustion* of a given quantity of a specific fuel.

THERMAL RESISTANCE (*R*). A measure of the ability to retard the flow of heat. The *R*-value is the reciprocal of thermal conductance.

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY. An approved agency operating a product or material certification system that incorporates initial product testing, assessment and surveillance of a manufacturer's quality control system.

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED. Certification obtained by the manufacturer indicating that the function and performance characteristics of a product or material have been determined by testing and ongoing surveillance by an *approved third-party certification agency*. Assertion of certification is in the form of identification in accordance with the requirements of the *third-party certification agency*.

[P] THIRD-PARTY TESTED. Procedure by which an *approved* testing laboratory provides documentation that a product, material or system conforms to specified requirements.

TLV-TWA (THRESHOLD LIMIT VALUE-TIME-WEIGHTED AVERAGE). The time-weighted average concentration of a refrigerant or other chemical in air for a normal 8-hour workday and a 40-hour workweek, to which nearly all workers are repeatedly exposed, day after day, without adverse effects, as adopted by the American Conference of Government Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH).

TOILET ROOM. A room containing a water closet and, frequently, a lavatory, but not a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture.

TRANSITION FITTINGS, PLASTIC TO STEEL. An adapter for joining plastic pipe to steel pipe. The purpose of this fitting is to provide a permanent, pressure-tight connection between two materials that cannot be joined directly one to another.

[NY] UNIFORM CODE. The New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code adopted pursuant to Article 18 of the New York State Executive Law, as currently in effect and as hereafter amended from time to time.

[FG] UNIT HEATER. A self-contained *appliance* of the fan type, designed for the delivery of warm air directly into the space in which the *appliance* is located.

UNVENTED ALCOHOL FUEL-BURNING DECORATIVE APPLIANCE. A stationary, self-contained *appliance* intended to be directly or indirectly secured to a wall or floor and not intended for duct connection. Such *appliance* burns alcohol and is made in a manufacturing facility for subsequent delivery to the installation site.

VENT. A pipe or other conduit composed of factory-made components, containing a passageway for conveying *combustion products* and air to the atmosphere, *listed* and *labeled* for use with a specific type or class of *appliance*.

Pellet vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with *listed* pellet-fuel-burning *appliances*.

Type L vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with the following:

1. Oil-burning *appliances* that are listed for use with Type L vents.
2. Gas-fired *appliances* that are *listed* for use with Type B vents.

VENT CONNECTOR. The pipe that connects an *approved* fuel-fired *appliance* to a vent.

VENT DAMPER DEVICE, AUTOMATIC. A device intended for installation in the venting system, in the outlet of an individual automatically operated fuel-burning *appliance* that is designed to open the venting system automatically when the *appliance* is in operation and to close off the venting system automatically when the *appliance* is in a standby or shutdown condition.

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from the outside (outdoors), plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

[FG] VENTING SYSTEM. A continuous open passageway from the flue collar of an *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a *chimney* and vent connector, if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

WATER HEATER. Any heating *appliance* or *equipment* that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

ZONE. One *occupiable space* or several *occupiable spaces* with similar *occupancy* classification (see Table 403.3.1.1), occupant density, zone air distribution effectiveness and zone primary airflow rate per unit area.

CHAPTER

3 GENERAL REGULATIONS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 3 contains broadly applicable requirements that are necessarily placed in an overarching "general" chapter. These general requirements would not be suitably located in any other chapter that is specific to unique subject matter. General requirements include those related to installation, access, location, testing, structural and clearances.*

SECTION 301—GENERAL

301.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval and installation of all *equipment* and *appliances* that comprise parts of the *building* mechanical systems regulated by this code in accordance with Section 101.2.

301.2 Energy utilization. Heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems of all structures shall be designed and installed for efficient utilization of energy in accordance with the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*.

301.3 Identification. Each length of pipe and tubing and each pipe fitting utilized in a mechanical system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer.

301.4 Plastic pipe, fittings and components. Plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be *third-party certified* as conforming to NSF 14.

301.5 Third-party testing and certification. Piping, tubing and fittings shall comply with the applicable referenced standards, specifications and performance criteria of this code and shall be identified in accordance with Section 301.3. Piping, tubing and fittings shall either be tested by an *approved* third-party testing agency or certified by an *approved third-party certification agency*.

301.6 Fuel gas appliances and equipment. The approval and installation of fuel gas distribution piping and *equipment*, fuel gas-fired *appliances* and fuel gas-fired *appliance* venting systems shall be in accordance with the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*.

301.7 Listed and labeled. *Appliances* regulated by this code shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application in which they are installed and used, unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with Section 104.

Exception: Listing and labeling of *equipment* and *appliances* used for refrigeration shall be in accordance with Section 1101.2.

301.8 Labeling. Labeling shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in Sections 301.8.1 through 301.8.2.3.

301.8.1 Testing. An *approved* agency shall test a representative sample of the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* being labeled to the relevant standard or standards. The *approved* agency shall maintain a record of all of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.

301.8.2 Inspection and identification. The *approved* agency shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* to be labeled. The inspection shall verify that the labeled mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* are representative of the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* tested.

301.8.2.1 Independent. The agency to be *approved* shall be objective and competent. To confirm its objectivity, the agency shall disclose all possible conflicts of interest.

301.8.2.2 Equipment. An *approved* agency shall have adequate *equipment* to perform all required tests. The *equipment* shall be periodically calibrated.

301.8.2.3 Personnel. An *approved* agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests.

301.9 Label information. A permanent factory-applied nameplate(s) shall be affixed to *appliances* on which shall appear in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model number, serial number and the seal or mark of the *approved* agency. A label shall include the following:

1. Electrical *equipment* and *appliances*: Electrical rating in volts, amperes and motor phase; identification of individual electrical components in volts, amperes or watts, motor phase; Btu/h (W) output; and required clearances.
2. Absorption units: Hourly rating in Btu/h (W); minimum hourly rating for units having step or automatic modulating controls; type of fuel; type of refrigerant; cooling capacity in Btu/h (W); and required clearances.
3. Fuel-burning units: Hourly rating in Btu/h (W); type of fuel *approved* for use with the *appliance*; and required clearances.
4. Electric comfort heating *appliances*: electric rating in volts, amperes and phase; Btu/h (W) output rating; individual marking for each electrical component in amperes or watts, volts and phase; and required *clearances* from combustibles.

301.10 Electrical. Electrical wiring, controls and connections to *equipment* and *appliances* regulated by this code shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

301.11 Plumbing connections. Potable water supply and *building* drainage system connections to *equipment* and *appliances* regulated by this code shall be in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

301.12 Fuel types. Fuel-fired *appliances* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which they will be connected and the altitude at which they are installed. *Appliances* that comprise parts of the *building* mechanical system shall not be converted for the

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

usage of a different fuel, except where *approved* and converted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The fuel input rate shall not be increased or decreased beyond the limit rating for the altitude at which the *appliance* is installed.

301.13 Vibration isolation. Where vibration isolation of *equipment* and *appliances* is employed, an *approved* means of supplemental restraint shall be used to accomplish the support and restraint.

301.14 Repair. Defective material or parts shall be replaced or repaired in such a manner so as to preserve the original approval or listing.

301.15 Wind resistance. Mechanical *equipment*, *appliances* and supports that are exposed to wind shall be designed and installed to resist the wind pressures determined in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

[BS] 301.16 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, mechanical systems, *equipment* and *appliances* shall be located at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant *equipment*.

Exception: Mechanical systems, *equipment* and *appliances* are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant equipment provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

[BS] 301.16.1 Coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones. In coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones, mechanical systems and *equipment* shall not be mounted on or penetrate walls intended to break away under flood loads.

301.17 Rodentproofing. *Buildings* or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed to protect against the entrance of rodents in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

301.18 Seismic resistance. Where earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*, mechanical system supports, anchorage and bracing shall be designed and installed for seismic forces in accordance with Chapter 16 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

SECTION 302—PROTECTION OF STRUCTURE

302.1 Structural safety. The *building* or structure shall not be weakened by the installation of mechanical systems. Where floors, walls, ceilings or any other portion of the *building* or structure are required to be altered or replaced in the process of installing or repairing any system, the *building* or structure shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

302.2 Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and assemblies required to have a fire-resistance rating shall be protected in accordance with Chapter 7 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[BS] 302.3 Cutting, notching and boring in wood framing. The cutting, notching and boring of wood framing members shall comply with Section 2308.3 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[BS] 302.3.1 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glue-laminated members and I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a *registered design professional*.

[BS] 302.4 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without written concurrence and approval of a *registered design professional*. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member, such as HVAC *equipment* and water heaters, shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

[BS] 302.5 Cutting and notching in cold-formed steel framing. The cutting and notching of holes in cold-formed steel framing members shall be in accordance with AISI S240 for structural members and AISI S220 for nonstructural members.

[BS] 302.5.1 Cutting, notching and boring holes in structural steel framing. The cutting, notching and boring of holes in structural steel framing members shall be as prescribed by the *registered design professional*.

SECTION 303—EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCE LOCATION

303.1 General. *Equipment* and *appliances* shall be located as required by this section, specific requirements elsewhere in this code and the conditions of the *equipment* and *appliance* listing.

303.2 Hazardous locations. *Appliances* shall not be located in a *hazardous location* unless *listed* and *approved* for the specific installation.

303.3 Prohibited locations. Fuel-fired *appliances* shall not be located in, or obtain *combustion* air from, any of the following rooms or spaces:

1. Sleeping rooms.
2. Bathrooms.
3. Toilet rooms.
4. Storage closets.

5. Surgical rooms.

Exception: This section shall not apply to the following *appliances*:

1. *Direct-vent appliances* that obtain all *combustion* air directly from the outdoors.
2. Solid fuel-fired *appliances*, provided that combustion air is provided in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. *Appliances* installed in a dedicated enclosure in which all *combustion* air is taken directly from the outdoors, in accordance with Chapter 7. *Access* to such enclosure shall be through a solid door, weather-stripped in accordance with the exterior door air leakage requirements of the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State* and equipped with an *approved* self-closing device.

303.4 Protection from damage. *Appliances* shall not be installed in a location where subject to mechanical damage unless protected by *approved* barriers.

303.5 Indoor locations. Furnaces and boilers installed in closets and alcoves shall be *listed* for such installation.

303.6 Outdoor locations. *Appliances* installed in other than indoor locations shall be *listed* and *labeled* for outdoor installation.

303.7 Pit locations. *Appliances* installed in pits or excavations shall not come in direct contact with the surrounding soil and shall be installed not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the pit floor. The sides of the pit or excavation shall be held back not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the *appliance*. Where the depth exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below adjoining grade, the walls of the pit or excavation shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral load-bearing capacity to resist collapse. Excavation on the control side of the *appliance* shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) horizontally. The *appliance* shall be protected from flooding in an *approved* manner.

[BF] 303.8 Elevator shafts. Mechanical systems shall not be located in an elevator shaft.

303.9 Fireplaces in Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies. Fuel-burning *appliances* and fireplaces in Group I-2, Condition 2 *occupancies* shall be in accordance with Section 901.4.

SECTION 304—INSTALLATION

304.1 General. *Equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of the listing, the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.

304.2 Conflicts. Where conflicts between this code and the conditions of listing or the manufacturer's installation instructions occur, the provisions of this code shall apply.

Exception: Where a code provision is less restrictive than the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance* or the manufacturer's installation instructions, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

304.3 Elevation of ignition source. *Equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* and located in *hazardous locations* and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor surface on which the *equipment* or *appliance* rests. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

Exception: Elevation of the *ignition source* is not required for *appliances* that are *listed* as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

304.3.1 Parking garages. Connection of a parking garage with any room in which there is a fuel-fired *appliance* shall be by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation, except that a single door is permitted where the sources of ignition in the *appliance* are elevated in accordance with Section 304.3.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *appliance* installations complying with Section 304.6.

304.4 Prohibited equipment and appliance location. *Equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall not be installed in Group H *occupancies* or control areas where open use, handling or dispensing of combustible, flammable or explosive materials occurs.

[FG] 304.5 Hydrogen-generating and refueling operations. Hydrogen-generating and refueling *appliances* shall be installed and located in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Ventilation shall be required in accordance with Section 304.5.1, 304.5.2 or 304.5.3 in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages that contain hydrogen-generating *appliances* or refueling systems. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

[FG] 304.5.1 Natural ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be limited to a maximum floor area of 850 square feet (79 m^2) and shall communicate with the outdoors in accordance with Sections 304.5.1.1 and 304.5.1.2. The maximum rated output capacity of hydrogen-generating *appliances* shall not exceed 4 standard cubic feet per minute (0.00189 m^3/s) of hydrogen for each 250 square feet (23 m^2) of floor area in such spaces. The minimum cross-sectional dimension of air openings shall be 3 inches (76 mm). Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect. In such locations, *equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is not within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling.

[FG] 304.5.1.1 Two openings. Two permanent openings shall be provided within the garage. The upper opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling of the garage. The lower opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor of the garage. Both openings shall be provided in the same exterior wall. The openings shall communicate directly with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of $^1/_2$ square foot per 1,000 cubic feet (1 m^2/610 m^3) of garage volume.

[FG] 304.5.1.2 Louvers and grilles. In calculating free area required by Section 304.5.1, the required size of openings shall be based on the net free area of each opening. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25 percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75 percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

[FG] 304.5.2 Mechanical ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.16. In such locations, *equipment* and *appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is below the mechanical ventilation outlet(s).

[FG] 304.5.3 Specially engineered installations. As an alternative to the provisions of Sections 304.5.1 and 304.5.2, the necessary supply of air for ventilation and dilution of flammable gases shall be provided by an *approved* engineered system.

304.6 Public garages. *Appliances* located in public garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities, repair garages or other areas frequented by motor vehicles, shall be installed not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor. Where motor vehicles are capable of passing under an *appliance*, the *appliance* shall be installed at the *clearances* required by the *appliance* manufacturer and not less than 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the tallest vehicle garage door opening.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the *appliances* are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 304.3 and NFPA 30A.

304.7 Private garages. *Appliances* located in private garages and carports shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the *appliances* are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 304.3.

304.8 Construction and protection. Boiler rooms and furnace rooms shall be protected as required by the *Building Code of New York State*.

304.9 Clearances to combustible construction. Heat-producing *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed to maintain the required *clearances* to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such *clearances* shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308. *Clearances* to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing, shutters, coverings and drapes. Devices such as doorstops or limits, closers, drapery ties or guards shall not be used to provide the required *clearances*.

304.10 Clearances from grade. *Equipment* and *appliances* installed at grade level shall be supported on a level concrete slab or other *approved* material extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above adjoining grade or shall be suspended not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjoining grade. Such support shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

[BE] 304.11 Guards. Guards shall be provided where various components that require service and roof hatch openings are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof, or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of components that require service and each end of the roof hatch parallel to the roof edge. The top of the guard shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the elevated surface adjacent to the guard. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *Building Code of New York State*.

Exception: Guards are not required where fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSP Z359.1 are installed.

304.12 Area served. *Appliances* serving different areas of a *building* other than where they are installed shall be permanently marked in an *approved* manner that uniquely identifies the *appliance* and the area it serves.

SECTION 305—PIPING SUPPORT

305.1 General. Mechanical system piping shall be supported in accordance with this section.

305.2 Materials. Pipe hangers and supports shall have sufficient strength to withstand all anticipated static and specified dynamic loading conditions associated with the intended use. Pipe hangers and supports that are in direct contact with piping shall be of *approved* materials that are compatible with the piping and that will not promote galvanic action.

305.3 Structural attachment. Hangers and anchors shall be attached to the *building* construction in an *approved* manner.

305.4 Interval of support. Piping shall be supported at distances not exceeding the spacing specified in Table 305.4 or in accordance with ANSI/MSS SP-58.

TABLE 305.4—PIPING SUPPORT SPACING[a]		
PIPING MATERIAL	**MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet)**	**MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (feet)**
ABS pipe	4	10[c]
Aluminum pipe and tubing	10	15
Cast-iron pipe[b]	5	15
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	12	10
Copper or copper-alloy tubing	8	10
CPVC pipe or tubing, 1 inch and smaller	3	10[c]
CPVC pipe or tubing, $1^1/_4$-inches and larger	4	10[c]
Lead pipe	Continuous	4
PE-RT 1 inch and smaller	$2^2/_3$ (32 inches)	10[c]
PE-RT $1^1/_4$ inches and larger	4	10[c]
PEX tubing 1 inch and smaller	$2^2/_3$ (32 inches)	10[c]
PEX tubing $1^1/_4$ inches and larger	4	10[c]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, 1 inch and smaller	$2^2/_3$ (32 inches)	10[c]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, $1^1/_4$ inches and larger	4	10[c]
PVC pipe	4	10[c]
Steel pipe	12	15
Steel tubing	8	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. See Section 301.18.
b. The maximum horizontal spacing of cast-iron pipe hangers shall be increased to 10 feet where 10-foot lengths of pipe are installed.
c. Mid-story guide.

305.5 Protection against physical damage. In concealed locations where piping, other than cast-iron or steel, is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored, and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

305.5.1 Shield plates. Shield plates shall be of steel material having a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.4605 mm) (No. 16 gage).

SECTION 306—ACCESS AND SERVICE SPACE

306.1 Access. *Appliances*, controls devices, heat exchangers and HVAC system components that utilize energy shall provide access for inspection, service, repair and replacement without disabling the function of a fire-resistance-rated assembly or removing permanent construction, other *appliances*, venting systems or any other piping or ducts not connected to the *appliance* being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. A level working space not less than 30 inches deep and 30 inches wide (762 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided in front of the control side to service an *appliance*.

306.2 Appliances in rooms. Rooms containing *appliances* shall be provided with a door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide and 80 inches (2032 mm) high.

Exception: Within a *dwelling unit*, *appliances* installed in a compartment, alcove, basement or similar space shall be accessed by an opening or door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance* in the space, provided that a level service space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and the height of the *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm), is present at the front or service side of the *appliance* with the door open.

306.3 Appliances in attics. Attics containing *appliances* shall be provided with an opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*. The passageway shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed and not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide for its entire length, the passageway shall be not greater than 50 feet (15 250 mm) in length.

306.3.1 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with NFPA 70.

306.4 Appliances under floors. Underfloor spaces containing *appliances* shall be provided with an access opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest *appliance*. The passageway shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open and the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed and not less than 6 feet high (1929 mm) and 22 inches (559 mm) wide for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

306.4.1 Electrical requirements. A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *appliance* location in accordance with NFPA 70.

306.5 Equipment or appliances on roofs or elevated structures. Where *equipment* requiring access or *appliances* are located on an elevated structure or the roof of a *building* such that personnel will have to climb higher than 16 feet (4877 mm) above grade to access such *equipment* or *appliances*, an interior or exterior means of access shall be provided. Such access shall not require climbing over obstructions greater than 30 inches (762 mm) in height or walking on roofs having a slope greater than 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33 percent slope). Such access shall not require the use of portable ladders. Where access involves climbing over parapet walls, the height shall be measured to the top of the parapet wall.

Permanent ladders installed to provide the required access shall comply with the following minimum design criteria:

1. The side railing shall extend above the parapet or roof edge or landing platform not less than 42 inches (1067 mm).
2. Ladders shall have rung spacing not less than 10 inches (254 mm) and not to exceed 14 inches (356 mm) on center. The uppermost rung shall be not greater than 24 inches (610 mm) below the upper edge of the roof hatch, roof or parapet, as applicable.
3. Ladders shall have a toe spacing not less than 7 inches (178 mm) and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) deep.
4. There shall be not less than 16 inches (406 mm) between rails.
5. Rungs shall have a diameter not less than 0.75-inch (19.1 mm) and be capable of withstanding a 300-pound (136 kg) load.
6. Ladders over 30 feet (9144 mm) in height shall be provided with offset sections and landings capable of withstanding 100 pounds per square foot (488 kg/m^2). Landing dimensions shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) and not less than the width of the ladder served. A guard rail shall be provided on all open sides of the landing.
7. Climbing clearance. The distance from the centerline of the rungs to the nearest permanent object on the climbing side of the ladder shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) measured perpendicular to the rungs. This distance shall be maintained from the point of ladder access to the bottom of the roof hatch. A minimum clear width of 15 inches (381 mm) shall be provided on both sides of the ladder measured from the midpoint of and parallel with the rungs except where cages or wells are installed.
8. Landing required. The ladder shall be provided with a clear and unobstructed bottom landing area having a minimum dimension of 30 inches (762 mm) by 30 inches (762 mm) centered in front of the ladder.
9. Ladders shall be protected against corrosion by *approved* means.
10. Access to ladders shall be provided at all times.
11. Top landing required. The ladder shall be provided with a clear and unobstructed landing on the exit side of the roof hatch, having a minimum space of 30 inches (762 mm) deep and being the same width as the hatch.

Catwalks installed to provide the required access shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and shall have railings as required for service platforms.

Exception: This section shall not apply to Group R-3 *occupancies*.

306.5.1 Sloped roofs. Where *appliances*, *equipment*, fans or other components that require service are installed on a roof having a slope of 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25 percent slope) or greater and having an edge more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade at such edge, a level platform shall be provided on each side of the *appliance* or *equipment* to which access is required for service, repair or maintenance. The platform shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in any dimension and shall be provided with guards. The guards shall extend not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the platform, shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified

in the *Building Code of New York State*. Access shall not require walking on roofs having a slope greater than 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33 percent slope). Where access involves obstructions greater than 30 inches (762 mm) in height, such obstructions shall be provided with ladders installed in accordance with Section 306.5 or stairways installed in accordance with the requirements specified in the *Building Code of New York State* in the path of travel to and from *appliances*, fans or *equipment* requiring service.

306.5.2 Electrical requirements. A receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *equipment* location in accordance with NFPA 70.

SECTION 307—CONDENSATE DISPOSAL

307.1 Fuel-burning appliances. Liquid *combustion* by-products of condensing *appliances* shall be collected and discharged to an *approved* plumbing fixture or disposal area in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Condensate piping shall be of *approved* corrosion-resistant material and shall not be smaller than the drain connection on the *appliance*. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1 percent slope).

307.1.1 Identification. The termination of concealed condensate piping shall be marked to indicate whether the piping is connected to the primary or secondary drain.

307.2 Evaporators and cooling coils. Condensate drain systems shall be provided for *equipment* and *appliances* containing evaporators or cooling coils. Condensate drain systems shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 307.2.1 through 307.2.5.

Exception: Evaporators and cooling coils that are designed to operate in sensible cooling only and not support condensation shall not be required to meet the requirements of this section.

307.2.1 Condensate disposal. Condensate from all cooling coils and evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to an *approved* place of disposal. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1 percent slope). Condensate shall not discharge into a street, alley or other areas so as to cause a nuisance.

307.2.1.1 Condensate discharge. Condensate drains shall not directly connect to any plumbing drain, waste or vent pipe. Condensate drains shall not discharge into a plumbing fixture other than a floor sink, floor drain, trench drain, mop sink, hub drain, standpipe, utility sink or laundry sink. Condensate drain connections to a lavatory wye branch tailpiece or to a bathtub overflow pipe shall not be considered as discharging to a plumbing fixture. Except where discharging to grade outdoors, the point of discharge of condensate drains shall be located within the same *occupancy*, tenant space or *dwelling unit* as the source of the condensate.

307.2.2 Drain pipe materials and sizes. Components of the condensate disposal system shall be ABS, cast iron, copper and copper alloy, CPVC, cross-linked polyethylene, galvanized steel, PE-RT, polyethylene, polypropylene, PVC or PVDF pipe or tubing. Components shall be selected for the pressure and temperature rating of the installation. Joints and connections shall be made in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7 of the *Plumbing Code of New York State* relative to the material type. Condensate waste and drain line size shall be not less than $^3/_4$-inch pipe size and shall not decrease in size from the drain pan connection to the place of condensate disposal. Where the drain pipes from more than one unit are manifolded together for condensate drainage, the pipe or tubing shall be sized in accordance with Table 307.2.2.

TABLE 307.2.2—CONDENSATE DRAIN SIZING

EQUIPMENT CAPACITY	MINIMUM CONDENSATE PIPE DIAMETER
Up to 20 tons of refrigeration	$^3/_4$ inch
Over 20 tons to 40 tons of refrigeration	1 inch
Over 40 tons to 90 tons of refrigeration	$1^1/_4$ inch
Over 90 tons to 125 tons of refrigeration	$1^1/_2$ inch
Over 125 tons to 250 tons of refrigeration	2 inch

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ton = 3.517 kW.

307.2.3 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems. In addition to the requirements of Section 307.2.1, where damage to any *building* components could occur as a result of overflow from the *equipment* primary condensate removal system, one of the following auxiliary protection methods shall be provided for each cooling coil or fuel-fired *appliance* that produces condensate:

1. An auxiliary drain pan with a separate drain shall be provided under the coils on which condensation will occur. The auxiliary pan drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The pan shall have a minimum depth of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm), shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) larger than the unit, or the coil dimensions in width and length and shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant material. Galvanized sheet steel pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage). Nonmetallic pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm).

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2. A separate overflow drain line shall be connected to the drain pan provided with the *equipment*. Such overflow drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The overflow drain line shall connect to the drain pan at a higher level than the primary drain connection.
3. An auxiliary drain pan without a separate drain line shall be provided under the coils on which condensate will occur. Such pan shall be equipped with a water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 that will shut off the *equipment* served prior to overflow of the pan. The auxiliary drain pan shall be constructed in accordance with Item 1 of this section.
4. A water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 shall be provided that will shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain is blocked. The device shall be installed in the primary drain line, the overflow drain line, or in the equipment-supplied drain pan, located at a point higher than the primary drain line connection and below the overflow rim of such pan.

Exception: Fuel-fired *appliances* that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

307.2.3.1 Water-level monitoring devices. On down-flow units and all other coils that do not have a secondary drain or provisions to install a secondary or auxiliary drain pan, a water-level monitoring device shall be installed inside the primary drain pan. This device shall shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain becomes restricted. Devices installed in the drain line shall not be permitted.

307.2.3.2 Appliance, equipment and insulation in pans. Where *appliances*, *equipment* or insulation are subject to water damage when auxiliary drain pans fill, that portion of the *appliance*, *equipment* and insulation shall be installed above the rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the *appliance* or *equipment* shall be water resistant and *approved*.

307.2.3.3 Identification. The termination of concealed condensate piping shall be marked to indicate whether the piping is connected to the primary or secondary drain.

307.2.4 Traps. Condensate drains shall be trapped as required by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer.

307.2.4.1 Ductless mini-split system traps. Ductless mini-split *equipment* that produces condensate shall be provided with an inline check valve located in the drain line, or a trap.

307.2.5 Drain line maintenance. Condensate drain lines shall be configured to permit the clearing of blockages and performance of maintenance without requiring the drain line to be cut.

307.3 Condensate pumps. Condensate pumps located in uninhabitable spaces, such as attics and crawl spaces, shall be connected to the *appliance* or *equipment* served such that when the pump fails, the *appliance* or *equipment* will be prevented from operating. Pumps shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 308—CLEARANCE REDUCTION

308.1 Scope. This section shall govern the reduction in required *clearances* to combustible materials and combustible assemblies for *chimneys,* vents, kitchen exhaust *equipment*, mechanical *appliances*, and mechanical devices and *equipment*.

308.2 Listed appliances and equipment. The reduction of the required *clearances* to combustibles for *listed* and *labeled appliances* and *equipment* shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section except that such *clearances* shall not be reduced where reduction is specifically prohibited by the terms of the *appliance* or *equipment* listing.

308.3 Protective assembly construction and installation. Reduced *clearance* protective assemblies, including structural and support elements, shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. Spacers utilized to maintain an airspace between the protective assembly and the protected material or assembly shall be noncombustible. Where a space between the protective assembly and protected combustible material or assembly is specified, the same space shall be provided around the edges of the protective assembly and the spacers shall be placed so as to allow air circulation by convection in such space. Protective assemblies shall not be placed less than 1 inch (25 mm) from the mechanical *appliances*, devices or *equipment*, regardless of the allowable reduced *clearance*.

308.4 Allowable reduction. The reduction of required *clearances* to combustible assemblies or combustible materials shall be based on the utilization of a reduced *clearance* protective assembly in accordance with Section 308.4.1 or 308.4.2.

308.4.1 Labeled assemblies. The allowable *clearance* reduction shall be based on an approved reduced *clearance* protective assembly that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1618.

308.4.2 Reduction table. The allowable *clearance* reduction shall be based on one of the methods specified in Table 308.4.2. Where required *clearances* are not listed in Table 308.4.2, the reduced *clearances* shall be determined by linear interpolation between the distances listed in the table. Reduced *clearances* shall not be derived by extrapolation below the range of the table.

TABLE 308.4.2—CLEARANCE REDUCTION METHODS[b]

TYPE OF PROTECTIVE ASSEMBLY[a]	REDUCED CLEARANCE WITH PROTECTION (inches)[a]							
	Horizontal combustible assemblies located above the heat source				Horizontal combustible assemblies located beneath the heat source and all vertical combustible assemblies			
	Required clearance to combustibles without protection (inches)[a]				Required clearance to combustibles without protection (inches)			
	36	18	9	6	36	18	9	6
Galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), mounted on 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batt reinforced with wire on the back, 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
Galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	2
Two layers of galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), having a 1-inch airspace between layers, spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
Two layers of galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), having 1 inch of fiberglass insulation between layers, spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
0.5-inch inorganic insulating board, over 1 inch of fiberglass or mineral wool batt, against the combustible assembly	24	12	6	4	18	9	5	3
$3^1/_2$-inch brick wall, spaced 1 inch off the combustible wall	—	—	—	—	12	6	6	6
$3^1/_2$-inch brick wall, against the combustible wall	—	—	—	—	24	12	6	5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3, 1.0 Btu × in/(ft^2 × h × °F) = 0.144 W/m^2 × K.

a. Mineral wool and glass fiber batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1,500°F. Insulation material utilized as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu × in/(ft^2 × h × °F) or less. Insulation board shall be formed of noncombustible material.

b. For limitations on clearance reduction for solid fuel-burning appliances, masonry chimneys, connector pass-throughs, masonry fireplaces and kitchen ducts, see Sections 308.4.2.1 through 308.4.2.5.

308.4.2.1 Solid fuel-burning appliances. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearance* required for solid fuel-burning *appliances* that are *labeled* for installation with *clearances* of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. Where *appliances* are *labeled* for installation with *clearances* of greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the *clearance* reduction methods of Table 308.4.2 shall not reduce the *clearance* to less than 12 inches (305 mm).

308.4.2.2 Masonry chimneys. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for masonry *chimneys* as specified in Chapter 8 and the *Building Code of New York State*.

308.4.2.3 Chimney connector pass-throughs. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for *chimney* connector pass-throughs as specified in Section 803.10.4.

308.4.2.4 Masonry fireplaces. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for masonry fireplaces as specified in Chapter 8 and the *Building Code of New York State*.

308.4.2.5 Kitchen exhaust ducts. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the minimum *clearances* required by Section 506.3.11.1 for kitchen exhaust ducts enclosed in a shaft.

SECTION 309—TEMPERATURE CONTROL

[BG] 309.1 Space-heating systems. Interior spaces intended for human occupancy shall be provided with active or passive space-heating systems capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of not less than 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above floor on the design heating day. The installation of portable space heaters shall not be used to achieve compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Interior spaces where the primary purpose is not associated with human comfort.
2. Group F, H, S and U *occupancies*.

SECTION 310—EXPLOSION CONTROL

[F] 310.1 Explosion-control required. Structures occupied for purposes involving explosion hazards shall be provided with explosion control where required by the *Fire Code of New York State*. Explosion control systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 911 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

SECTION 311—SMOKE AND HEAT VENTS

[F] 311.1 Required. *Approved* smoke and heat vents shall be installed in the roofs of one-story buildings where required by the *Fire Code of New York State*. Smoke and heat vents shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

SECTION 312—HEATING AND COOLING LOAD CALCULATIONS

312.1 Load calculations. Heating and cooling system design loads for the purpose of sizing systems, *appliances* and *equipment* shall be determined in accordance with the procedures described in the ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183. Alternatively, design loads shall be determined by an *approved* equivalent computation procedure, using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3 [CE] of the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*.

CHAPTER

4 VENTILATION

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 4 intends to provide an indoor atmosphere that protects the health and well-being of building occupants. Both mechanical and natural ventilation are addressed. Mechanical ventilation provides what is considered to be acceptable indoor air quality. Mechanical ventilation minimizes adverse health effects and provides an atmosphere that generally is not objectionable to occupants.*

SECTION 401—GENERAL

401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the ventilation of spaces within a *building* intended to be occupied. Mechanical exhaust systems, including exhaust systems serving clothes dryers and cooking *appliances*; hazardous exhaust systems; dust, stock and refuse conveyor systems; subslab soil exhaust systems; smoke control systems; energy recovery ventilation systems and other systems specified in Section 502 shall comply with Chapter 5.

[NY] 401.2 Ventilation required. Every occupied space shall be ventilated by natural means in accordance with Section 402 or by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403. *Dwelling units* complying with the air leakage requirements of the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State* or 2025 New York State ASHRAE 90.1 shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403. Ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 *occupancies* shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 407.

401.3 When required. Ventilation shall be provided during the periods that the room or space is occupied.

401.4 Intake opening location. Air intake openings shall comply with all of the following:

1. Intake openings shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from lot lines or buildings on the same lot.
2. Mechanical and gravity outdoor air intake openings shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from any hazardous or noxious contaminant source, such as vents, streets, alleys, parking lots and loading docks, except as specified in Item 3 or Section 501.3.1. Outdoor air intake openings shall be permitted to be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from streets, alleys, parking lots and loading docks provided that the openings are located not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) vertically above such locations. Where openings front on a street or public way, the distance shall be measured from the closest edge of the street or public way.
3. Intake openings shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) below contaminant sources where such sources are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the opening. Separation is not required between intake air openings and living space *exhaust air* openings of an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* where a factory-built intake/exhaust combination termination fitting is used to separate the air streams in accordance with the fan manufacturer's instructions.
4. Intake openings on structures in flood hazard areas shall be at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant equipment.

401.5 Intake opening protection. Air intake openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles. Openings in louvers, grilles and screens shall be sized in accordance with Table 401.5, and shall be protected against local weather conditions. Louvers that protect air intake openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *Building Code of New York State*, shall comply with AMCA 550. Outdoor air intake openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

TABLE 401.5—OPENING SIZES IN LOUVERS, GRILLES AND SCREENS PROTECTING AIR INTAKE OPENINGS

OUTDOOR OPENING TYPE	MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM OPENING SIZES IN LOUVERS, GRILLES AND SCREENS[a]
Intake openings in residential occupancies	Not < $^1/_4$ inch and not > $^1/_2$ inch
Intake openings in other than residential occupancies	> $^1/_4$ inch and not > 1 inch

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For rectangular openings, the table requirements apply to the shortest side. For round openings, the table requirements apply to the diameter. For square openings, the table requirements apply to any side.

401.6 Contaminant sources. Stationary local sources producing airborne particulates, heat, odors, fumes, spray, vapors, smoke or gases in such quantities as to be irritating or injurious to health shall be provided with an exhaust system in accordance with Chapter 5 or a means of collection and removal of the contaminants. Such exhaust shall discharge directly to an *approved* location at the exterior of the *building*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 402—NATURAL VENTILATION

[BG] 402.1 Natural ventilation. *Natural ventilation* of an occupied space shall be through windows, doors, louvers or other openings to the outdoors. The operating mechanism for such openings shall be provided with *ready access* so that the openings are readily controllable by the *building* occupants.

[BG] 402.2 Ventilation area required. The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.

[BG] 402.3 Adjoining spaces. Where rooms and spaces without openings to the outdoors are ventilated through an adjoining room, the opening to the adjoining rooms shall be unobstructed and shall have an area not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 25 square feet (2.3 m^2). The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

Exception: Exterior openings required for ventilation shall be permitted to open into a thermally isolated sunroom addition or patio cover, provided that the openable area between the sunroom addition or patio cover and the interior room has an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m^2). The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

[BG] 402.4 Openings below grade. Where openings below grade provide required *natural ventilation*, the outdoor horizontal clear space measured perpendicular to the opening shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The depth of the opening shall be measured from the average adjoining ground level to the bottom of the opening.

SECTION 403—MECHANICAL VENTILATION

403.1 Ventilation system. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided by a method of supply air and return or *exhaust air* except that mechanical *ventilation air* requirements for Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 *occupancies* shall be provided by an exhaust system, supply system or combination thereof. The amount of supply air shall be approximately equal to the amount of return and *exhaust air*. The system shall not be prohibited from producing negative or positive pressure. The system to convey *ventilation air* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Chapter 6.

403.2 Outdoor air required. The minimum outdoor airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with Section 403.3.

Exception: Where the *registered design professional* demonstrates that an engineered ventilation system design will prevent the maximum concentration of contaminants from exceeding that obtainable by the rate of outdoor air ventilation determined in accordance with Section 403.3, the minimum required rate of outdoor air shall be reduced in accordance with such engineered system design.

403.2.1 Recirculation of air. The outdoor air required by Section 403.3 shall not be recirculated. Air in excess of that required by Section 403.3 shall not be prohibited from being recirculated as a component of supply air to *building* spaces, except that:

1. *Ventilation air* shall not be recirculated from one *dwelling* to another or to dissimilar *occupancies*.
2. Supply air to a swimming pool and associated deck areas shall not be recirculated unless such air is dehumidified to maintain the relative humidity of the area at 60 percent or less. Air from this area shall not be recirculated to other spaces where more than 10 percent of the resulting supply airstream consists of air recirculated from these spaces. The design and installation of dehumidification systems shall comply with ANSI/ACCA 10 Manual SPS.
3. Where mechanical exhaust is required by Note b in Table 403.3.1.1, recirculation of air from such spaces shall be prohibited. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited. Where recirculation of air is prohibited, all air supplied to such spaces shall be exhausted, including any air in excess of that required by Table 403.3.1.1.
4. Where mechanical exhaust is required by Note g in Table 403.3.1.1, mechanical exhaust is required and recirculation from such spaces is prohibited where more than 10 percent of the resulting supply airstream consists of air recirculated from these spaces. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited.

403.2.2 Transfer air. Except where recirculation from such spaces is prohibited by Table 403.3.1.1, air transferred from *occupiable spaces* is not prohibited from serving as *makeup air* for required exhaust systems in such spaces as kitchens, baths, toilet rooms, elevators and smoking lounges. The amount of transfer air and *exhaust air* shall be sufficient to provide the flow rates as specified in Section 403.3.1.1. The required outdoor airflow rates specified in Table 403.3.1.1 shall be introduced directly into such spaces or into the occupied spaces from which air is transferred or a combination of both.

403.3 Outdoor air and local exhaust airflow rates. Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 *occupancies* three stories and less in height above grade plane shall be provided with outdoor air and local exhaust in accordance with Section 403.3.2. Other *buildings* intended to be occupied shall be provided with outdoor air and local exhaust in accordance with Section 403.3.1.

403.3.1 Other buildings intended to be occupied. The design of local exhaust systems and ventilation systems for outdoor air for *occupancies* other than Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4 shall comply with Sections 403.3.1.1 through 403.3.1.4.

403.3.1.1 Outdoor airflow rate. Ventilation systems shall be designed to have the capacity to supply the minimum outdoor airflow rate, determined in accordance with this section. In each *occupiable space*, the ventilation system shall be designed to deliver the required rate of outdoor airflow to the *breathing zone*. The occupant load utilized for design of the ventilation system shall be not less than the number determined from the estimated maximum occupant load rate indicated in Table 403.3.1.1. Ventilation rates for *occupancies* not represented in Table 403.3.1.1 shall be those for a listed *occupancy* classification that is most similar in terms of occupant density, activities and *building* construction; or shall be determined by an

approved engineering analysis. The ventilation system shall be designed to supply the required rate of *ventilation air* continuously during the period the *building* is occupied, except as otherwise stated in other provisions of the code.

With the exception of smoking lounges, the ventilation rates in Table 403.3.1.1 are based on the absence of smoking in *occupiable spaces*. Where smoking is anticipated in a space other than a smoking lounge, the ventilation system serving the space shall be designed to provide ventilation over and above that required by Table 403.3.1.1 in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Exception: The occupant load is not required to be determined based on the estimated maximum occupant load rate indicated in Table 403.3.1.1 where *approved* statistical data document the accuracy of an alternative anticipated occupant density.

TABLE 403.3.1.1—MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT^2 [a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT^2 [a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT^2 [a]
Animal facilities				
Animal exam room (veterinary office)	20	10	0.12	—
Animal imaging (MR/CT/PET)	20	10	0.18	0.9
Animal operating rooms	20	10	0.18	3.00
Animal postoperative recovery room	20	10	0.18	1.50
Animal preparation rooms	20	10	0.18	1.50
Animal procedure room	20	10	0.18	2.25
Animal surgery scrub	20	10	0.18	1.50
Large-animal holding room	20	10	0.18	2.25
Necropsy	20	10	0.18	2.25
Small-animal cage room (static cages)	20	10	0.18	2.25
Small-animal cage room (ventilated cages)	20	10	0.18	1.50
Correctional facilities				
Booking/waiting	50	7.5	0.06	—
Cells				
without plumbing fixtures	25	5	0.12	—
with plumbing fixtures[g]	25	5	0.12	1.0
Day room	30	5	0.06	—
Dining halls (see “Food and beverage service”)	—	—	—	—
Guard stations	15	5	0.06	—
Dry cleaners, laundries				
Coin-operated dry cleaner	20	15	—	—
Coin-operated laundries	20	7.5	0.12	—
Commercial dry cleaner	30	30	—	—
Commercial laundry	10	5	0.12	—
Storage, pick up	30	7.5	0.12	—
Education				
Art classroom[g]	20	10	0.18	0.7
Auditoriums	150	5	0.06	—
Classrooms (ages 5–8)	25	10	0.12	—
Classrooms (age 9 plus)	35	10	0.12	—

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 403.3.1.1—MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES—continued				
OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	**OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT² [a]**	**PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON**	**AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT² [a]**	**EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT² [a]**
Computer lab	25	10	0.12	—
Corridors (see "Public spaces")	—	—	—	—
Day care (through age 4)	25	10	0.18	—
Lecture classroom	65	7.5	0.06	—
Lecture hall (fixed seats)	150	7.5	0.06	—
Locker/dressing rooms[g]	—	—	—	0.25
Media center	25	10	0.12	—
Multiuse assembly	100	7.5	0.06	—
Music/theater/dance	35	10	0.06	—
Science laboratories[g]	25	10	0.18	1.0
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Sports locker rooms[g]	—	—	—	0.5
Wood/metal shops[g]	20	10	0.18	0.5
Food and beverage service				
Bars, cocktail lounges	100	7.5	0.18	—
Break rooms	25	5	0.06	—
Cafeteria, fast food	100	7.5	0.18	—
Coffee stations	20	5	0.06	—
Corridors	—	—	0.06	—
Dining rooms	70	7.5	0.18	—
Kitchens (cooking)[b]	20	7.5	0.12	0.7
Occupiable storage rooms for liquids or gels	2	5	0.12	—
Hotels, motels, resorts and dormitories				
Bathrooms/toilet—private[g]	—	—	—	25/50[f]
Bedroom/living room	10	5	0.06	—
Conference/meeting	50	5	0.06	—
Dormitory sleeping areas	20	5	0.06	—
Gambling casinos	120	7.5	0.18	—
Laundry rooms, central	10	5	0.12	—
Laundry rooms within dwelling units	10	5	0.12	—
Lobbies/prefunction	30	7.5	0.06	—
Multipurpose assembly	120	5	0.06	—
Offices				
Break rooms	50	5	0.12	—
Conference rooms	50	5	0.06	—
Main entry lobbies	10	5	0.06	—
Occupiable storage rooms for dry materials	2	5	0.06	—
Office spaces	5	5	0.06	—
Reception areas	30	5	0.06	—
Telephone/data entry	60	5	0.06	—
Outpatient healthcare facilities[i, j]				

TABLE 403.3.1.1—MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES—continued				
OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	**OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT^2 [a]**	**PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON**	**AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT^2 [a]**	**EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT^2 [a]**
Birthing room	15	10	0.18	—
Class 1 imaging room	5	5	0.12	—
Dental operatory[k]	20	10	0.18	—
General examination room	20	7.5	0.12	—
Other dental treatment areas	5	5	0.06	—
Physical therapy exercise area	7	20	0.18	—
Physical therapy individual room	20	10	0.06	—
Physical therapeutic pool area	—	—	0.48	—
Prosthetics and orthotics room	20	10	0.18	—
Psychiatric consultation room	20	5	0.06	—
Psychiatric examination room	20	5	0.06	—
Psychiatric group room	50	5	0.06	—
Psychiatric seclusion room	5	10	0.06	—
Speech therapy room	20	5	0.06	—
Urgent care examination room	20	7.5	0.12	—
Urgent care observation room	20	5	0.06	—
Urgent care treatment room	20	7.5	0.18	—
Urgent care triage room	20	10	0.18	—
Private dwellings, single and multiple				
Garages, common for multiple units[b]	—	—	—	0.75
Kitchens[b]	—	—	—	50/100[f]
Living areas[c]	Based on number of bedrooms. First bedroom, 2; each additional bedroom, 1	0.35 ACH but not less than 15 cfm/person	—	—
Toilet rooms and bathrooms[g]	—	—	—	25/50[f]
Public spaces				
Corridors	—	—	0.06	—
Courtrooms	70	5	0.06	—
Elevator car	—	—	—	1.0
Legislative chambers	50	5	0.06	—
Libraries	10	5	0.12	—
Museums (children's)	40	7.5	0.12	—
Museums/galleries	40	7.5	0.06	—
Places of religious worship	120	5	0.06	—
Room with adult changing station	—	—	—	50/70[e]
Shower room (per shower head)[g]	—	—	—	50/20[f]
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Toilet rooms — public[g]	—	—	—	50/70[e]
Retail stores, sales floors and show-room floors				
Dressing rooms	—	—	—	0.25
Mall common areas	40	7.5	0.06	—
Sales	15	7.5	0.12	—

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 403.3.1.1—MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES—continued				
OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT^{2} [a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT^{2} [a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT^{2} [a]
Shipping and receiving	2	10	0.12	—
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Storage rooms	—	—	0.12	—
Warehouses (see “Storage”)	—	10	0.06	—
Specialty shops				
Automotive motor fuel-dispensing stations[b]	—	—	—	1.5
Banks or lobbies	15	7.5	0.06	—
Barber	25	7.5	0.06	0.5
Beauty salons[b]	25	20	0.12	0.6
Embalming room[b]	—	—	—	2.0
Nail salons [b, h]	25	20	0.12	0.6
Pet shops (animal areas)[b]	10	7.5	0.18	0.9
Supermarkets	8	7.5	0.06	—
Sports and amusement				
Bowling alleys (seating areas)	40	10	0.12	—
Disco/dance floors	100	20	0.06	—
Game arcades	20	7.5	0.18	—
Gym, stadium, arena (play area)	7	20	0.18	—
Health club/aerobics room	40	20	0.06	—
Health club/weight room	10	20	0.06	—
Ice arenas without combustion engines	—	—	0.30	0.5
Spectator areas	150	7.5	0.06	—
Swimming pools (pool and deck area)	—	—	0.48	—
Storage				
Refrigerated warehouses/ freezers (< 50°F)	—	10	—	—
Repair garages, enclosed parking garages[b, d]	—	—	—	0.75
Warehouses[l]	—	10	0.06	—
Theaters				
Auditoriums (see “Education”)	—	—	—	—
Lobbies	150	5	0.06	—
Stages, studios	70	10	0.06	—
Ticket booths	60	5	0.06	—
Transportation				
Platforms	100	7.5	0.06	—
Transportation waiting	100	7.5	0.06	—
Workrooms				
Bank vaults/safe deposit	5	5	0.06	—
Computer (without printing)	4	5	0.06	—
Copy, printing rooms	4	5	0.06	0.5
Darkrooms	—	—	—	1.0

TABLE 403.3.1.1—MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES—continued				
OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT^{2} [a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT^{2} [a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT^{2} [a]
Manufacturing where hazardous materials are not used	7	10	0.18	—
Manufacturing where hazardous materials are used (excludes heavy industrial and chemical processes)	7	10	0.18	—
Meat processing[c]	10	15	—	—
Pharmacy (prep. area)	10	5	0.18	—
Photo studios	10	5	0.12	—
Sorting, packing, light assembly	7	7.5	0.12	—
Telephone closets	—	—	0.00	—

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s, 1 ton = 908 kg, 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot = 0.00508 m^3/(s × m^2), °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Based on net occupiable floor area.

b. Mechanical exhaust required and the recirculation of air from such spaces is prohibited. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited (see Section 403.2.1, Item 3).

c. Spaces unheated or maintained below 50°F are not covered by these requirements unless the occupancy is continuous.

d. Ventilation systems in enclosed parking garages shall comply with Section 404.

e. Rates are per water closet, urinal or adult changing station. The higher rate shall be provided where the exhaust system is designed to operate intermittently. The lower rate shall be permitted only where the exhaust system is designed to operate continuously while occupied.

f. Rates are per room unless otherwise indicated. The higher rate shall be provided where the exhaust system is designed to operate intermittently. The lower rate shall be permitted only where the exhaust system is designed to operate continuously while occupied.

g. Mechanical exhaust is required and recirculation from such spaces is prohibited. For occupancies other than science laboratories, where there is a wheel-type energy recovery ventilation (ERV) unit in the exhaust system design, the volume of air leaked from the exhaust airstream into the outdoor airstream within the ERV shall be less than 10 percent of the outdoor air volume. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited (see Section 403.2.1, Items 2 and 4).

h. For nail salons, each manicure and pedicure station shall be provided with a source capture system capable of exhausting not less than 50 cfm per station. Exhaust inlets shall be located in accordance with Section 502.20. Where one or more required source capture systems operate continuously during occupancy, the exhaust rate from such systems shall be permitted to be applied to the exhaust flow rate required by Table 403.3.1.1 for the nail salon.

i. Outpatient facilities to which the rates apply are freestanding birth centers, urgent care centers, neighborhood clinics and physicians' offices, Class 1 imaging facilities, outpatient psychiatric facilities, outpatient rehabilitation facilities and outpatient dental facilities.

j. The requirements of this table provide for acceptable IAQ. The requirements of this table do not address the airborne transmission of airborne viruses, bacteria and other infectious contagions.

k. These rates are intended only for outpatient dental clinics where the amount of nitrous oxide is limited. They are not intended for dental operatories in institutional buildings where nitrous oxide is piped.

l. The occupiable floor area in warehouses shall not include the floor area of self-storage units, floor areas under rack storage or designated palletized storage floor areas.

403.3.1.1.1 Zone outdoor airflow. The minimum outdoor airflow required to be supplied to each zone shall be determined as a function of *occupancy* classification and space air distribution effectiveness in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.1.1 through 403.3.1.1.1.3.

403.3.1.1.1.1 Breathing zone outdoor airflow. The outdoor airflow rate required in the *breathing zone* (V_{bz}) of the *occupiable space* or spaces in a zone shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-1.

Equation 4-1 $$V_{bz} = R_p P_z + R_a A_z$$

where:

A_z = Zone floor area: the net occupiable floor area of the space or spaces in the zone.

P_z = Zone population: the number of people in the space or spaces in the zone.

R_p = People outdoor air rate: the outdoor airflow rate required per person from Table 403.3.1.1.

R_a = Area outdoor air rate: the outdoor airflow rate required per unit area from Table 403.3.1.1.

403.3.1.1.1.2 Zone air distribution effectiveness. The zone air distribution effectiveness (E_z) shall be determined using Table 403.3.1.1.1.2.

TABLE 403.3.1.1.1.2—ZONE AIR DISTRIBUTION EFFECTIVENESS[a, b, c, d]	
AIR DISTRIBUTION CONFIGURATION	E_z
Ceiling or floor supply of cool air	1.0[e]
Ceiling or floor supply of warm air and floor return	1.0
Ceiling supply of warm air and ceiling return	0.8[f]
Floor supply of warm air and ceiling return	0.7
Makeup air drawn in on the opposite side of the room from the exhaust or return	0.8
Makeup air drawn in near to the exhaust or return location	0.5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 foot per minute = 0.00506 m/s, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. "Cool air" is air cooler than space temperature.

b. "Warm air" is air warmer than space temperature.

c. "Ceiling" includes any point above the breathing zone.

d. "Floor" includes any point below the breathing zone.

e. Zone air distribution effectiveness of 1.2 shall be permitted for systems with a floor supply of cool air and ceiling return, provided that low-velocity displacement ventilation achieves unidirectional flow and thermal stratification.

f. Zone air distribution effectiveness of 1.0 shall be permitted for systems with a ceiling supply of warm air, provided that supply air temperature is less than 15°F above space temperature and provided that the 150-foot-per-minute supply air jet reaches to within $4^1/_2$ feet of floor level.

403.3.1.1.1.3 Zone outdoor airflow. The zone outdoor airflow rate (V_{oz}), shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-2.

Equation 4-2 $$V_{oz} = \frac{V_{bz}}{E_z}$$

403.3.1.1.2 System outdoor airflow. The outdoor air required to be supplied by each ventilation system shall be determined in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.2.1 through 403.3.1.1.2.3.4 as a function of system type and zone outdoor airflow rates.

403.3.1.1.2.1 Single zone systems. Where one air handler supplies a mixture of outdoor air and recirculated return air to only one zone, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-3.

Equation 4-3 $$V_{ot} = V_{oz}$$

403.3.1.1.2.2 100 percent outdoor air systems. Where one air handler supplies only outdoor air to one or more zones, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined using Equation 4-4.

Equation 4-4 $$V_{ot} = \Sigma_{all\ zones} V_{oz}$$

403.3.1.1.2.3 Multiple zone recirculating systems. Where one air handler supplies a mixture of outdoor air and recirculated return air to more than one zone, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.2.3.1 through 403.3.1.1.2.3.4.

403.3.1.1.2.3.1 Primary outdoor air fraction. The primary outdoor air fraction (Z_p) shall be determined for each zone in accordance with Equation 4-5.

Equation 4-5 $$Z_p = \frac{V_{oz}}{V_{pz}}$$

where:

V_{pz} = Primary airflow: The airflow rate supplied to the zone from the airhandling unit at which the outdoor air intake is located. It includes outdoor intake air and recirculated air from that air-handling unit but does not include air transferred or air recirculated to the zone by other means. For design purposes, V_{pz} shall be the zone design primary airflow rate, except for zones with variable air volume supply and V_{pz} shall be the lowest expected primary airflow rate to the zone when it is fully occupied.

403.3.1.1.2.3.2 System ventilation efficiency. The system ventilation efficiency (E_v) shall be determined using Table 403.3.1.1.2.3.2 or Appendix A of ASHRAE 62.1.

TABLE 403.3.1.1.2.3.2—SYSTEM VENTILATION EFFICIENCY[a, b]	
Max (Z_p)	E_v
≤ 0.15	1
≤ 0.25	0.9
≤ 0.35	0.8
≤ 0.45	0.7
≤ 0.55	0.6
≤ 0.65	0.5
≤ 0.75	0.4
> 0.75	0.3

a. *Max (Z_p)* is the largest value of Z_p calculated using Equation 4-5 among all the zones served by the system.
b. Interpolating between table values shall be permitted.

403.3.1.1.2.3.3 Uncorrected outdoor air intake. The uncorrected outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ou}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-6.

Equation 4-6 $$V_{ou} = D\Sigma_{all\ zones}R_pP_z + \Sigma_{all\ zones}R_aA_z$$

where:

D = Occupant diversity: the ratio of the system population to the sum of the zone populations, determined in accordance with Equation 4-7.

Equation 4-7 $$D = \frac{P_s}{\Sigma_{all\ zones}P_z}$$

where:

P_s = System population: The total number of occupants in the area served by the system. For design purposes, P_s shall be the maximum number of occupants expected to be concurrently in all zones served by the system.

403.3.1.1.2.3.4 Outdoor air intake flow rate. The outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-8.

Equation 4-8 $$V_{ot} = \frac{V_{ou}}{E_v}$$

403.3.1.2 Exhaust ventilation. Exhaust airflow rate shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Table 403.3.1.1. Outdoor air introduced into a space by an exhaust system shall be considered as contributing to the outdoor airflow required by Table 403.3.1.1.

403.3.1.3 System operation. The minimum flow rate of outdoor air that the ventilation system must be capable of supplying during its operation shall be permitted to be based on the rate per person indicated in Table 403.3.1.1 and the actual number of occupants present. Where demand-controlled ventilation is employed to adjust the outdoor airflow rate based on the actual number of occupants present, the minimum quantity of outdoor air shall not fall below that determined from the area outdoor airflow rate column of Table 403.3.1.1 during periods when the *building* is expected to be occupied.

403.3.1.4 Variable air volume system control. Variable air volume air distribution systems, other than those designed to supply only 100 percent outdoor air, shall be provided with controls to regulate the flow of outdoor air. Such control system shall be designed to maintain the flow rate of outdoor air at a rate of not less than that required by Section 403.3 over the entire range of supply air operating rates.

[NY] 403.3.2 Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies. The design of local exhaust systems and ventilation systems for outdoor air in Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 *occupancies* shall comply with Sections 403.3.2.1 through 403.3.2.5 and either Section R403.6.1 or C403.7.4 of the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*.

[NY] 403.3.2.1 Outdoor air for dwelling units. An outdoor air ventilation system consisting of a mechanical exhaust system, supply system or combination thereof shall be installed for each *dwelling unit*. Local exhaust or supply systems, including outdoor air ducts connected to the return side of an air handler, are permitted to serve as such a system, unless otherwise required by the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*. The outdoor air ventilation system shall be designed to provide the required rate of outdoor air continuously during the period that the *building* is occupied. The minimum continuous outdoor airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-9.

Equation 4-9 $$Q_{OA} = 0.03A_{floor} + 7.5(N_{br} + 1)$$

where:

Q_{OA} = outdoor airflow rate, cfm

A_{floor} = conditioned floor area, ft^2

N_{br} = number of bedrooms; not to be less than one

Exceptions:

1. The outdoor air ventilation system is not required to operate continuously where the system has controls that enable operation for not less than 1 hour of each 4-hour period. The average outdoor airflow rate over the 4-hour period shall be not less than that prescribed by Equation 4-9.
2. The minimum mechanical ventilation rate determined in accordance with Equation 4-9 shall be reduced by 30 percent provided that both of the following conditions apply:
   2.1. A ducted system supplies *ventilation air* directly to each bedroom and to one or more of the following rooms:
      2.1.1. Living room.
      2.1.2. Dining room.
      2.1.3. Kitchen.
   2.2. The whole-house ventilation system is a *balanced ventilation system*.

403.3.2.2 Outdoor air for other spaces. Corridors and other common areas within the conditioned space shall be provided with outdoor air at a rate of not less than 0.06 cfm per square foot [0.0003 m^3/(s × m^2)] of floor area.

403.3.2.3 Local exhaust. Local exhaust systems shall be provided in kitchens, bathrooms and toilet rooms and shall have the capacity to exhaust the minimum airflow rate determined in accordance with Table 403.3.2.3.

TABLE 403.3.2.3—MINIMUM REQUIRED LOCAL EXHAUST RATES FOR GROUP R-2, R-3 AND R-4 OCCUPANCIES

AREA TO BE EXHAUSTED	EXHAUST RATE CAPACITY
Kitchens	100 cfm intermittent or 50 cfm continuous
Bathrooms and toilet rooms	50 cfm intermittent or 25 cfm continuous

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s.

403.3.2.4 System controls. Where provided within a *dwelling unit*, controls for outdoor air ventilation systems shall include text or a symbol indicating the system's function.

403.3.2.5 Ventilating equipment. Fans providing exhaust or outdoor air shall be *listed* and *labeled* to provide the minimum required air flow in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 210-ANSI/ASHRAE 51.

SECTION 404—ENCLOSED PARKING GARAGES

404.1 Enclosed parking garages. Mechanical ventilation systems for enclosed parking garages shall operate continuously or shall be automatically operated by means of carbon monoxide detectors applied in conjunction with nitrogen dioxide detectors. Such detectors shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2075 and installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Automatic operation shall cycle the ventilation system between the following two modes of operation:

1. Full-on at an airflow rate of not less than 0.75 cfm per square foot [0.0038 m^3 /(s × m^2)] of the floor area served.
2. Standby at an airflow rate of not less than 0.05 cfm per square foot [0.00025 m^3 /(s × m^2)] of the floor area served.

404.2 Occupied spaces accessory to public garages. Connecting offices, waiting rooms, ticket booths and similar uses that are accessory to a public garage shall be maintained at a positive pressure and shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 403.3.1.

SECTION 405—SYSTEMS CONTROL

405.1 General. Mechanical ventilation systems shall be provided with manual or automatic controls that will operate such systems whenever the spaces are occupied. Air-conditioning systems that supply required *ventilation air* shall be provided with controls designed to automatically maintain the required outdoor air supply rate during occupancy.

SECTION 406—VENTILATION OF UNINHABITED SPACES

406.1 General. Uninhabited spaces, such as crawl spaces and attics, shall be provided with *natural ventilation* openings as required by the *Building Code of New York State* or shall be provided with a mechanical exhaust and supply air system. The mechanical exhaust rate shall be not less than 0.02 cfm per square foot (0.00001 m^3/s × m^2) of horizontal area and shall be automatically controlled to operate when the relative humidity in the space served exceeds 60 percent.

SECTION 407—AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES AND GROUP I-2 OCCUPANCIES

407.1 General. Mechanical ventilation for ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 *occupancies* shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code, ASHRAE/ASHE 170 and NFPA 99.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

5 EXHAUSTSYSTEMS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 5 addresses exhaust systems for, among others, kitchens, laboratories, processes, garages, hazardous systems, clothes dryers and smoke control systems. Many provisions are linked to the Fire Code of New York State. Exhaust systems mitigate health and fire hazards by removing and diluting contaminants in buildings. Exhaust system discharge location is also addressed as an important concern.*

SECTION 501—GENERAL

501.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, construction and installation of mechanical exhaust systems, including exhaust systems serving clothes dryers and cooking *appliances*; hazardous exhaust systems; dust, stock and refuse conveyor systems; subslab soil exhaust systems; smoke control systems; energy recovery ventilation systems and other systems specified in Section 502.

501.2 Independent system required. Single or combined mechanical exhaust systems for *environmental air* shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. Dryer, domestic kitchen and hazardous exhaust shall be independent of all other systems. Type I exhaust systems shall be independent of all other exhaust systems except as provided in Section 506.3.5. Single or combined Type II exhaust systems for food-processing operations shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 506 through 509.

501.3 Exhaust discharge. The air removed by every mechanical exhaust system shall be discharged outdoors at a point where it will not cause a public nuisance and not less than the distances specified in Section 501.3.1. The air shall be discharged to a location from which it cannot again be readily drawn in by a ventilating system. Air shall not be exhausted into an attic or crawl space, or be directed onto walkways.

Exceptions:

1. Whole-house ventilation-type attic fans shall be permitted to discharge into the attic space of *dwelling units* having private attics.
2. Commercial cooking recirculating systems.
3. Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or *natural ventilation* is otherwise provided in accordance with Chapter 4, *listed* and *labeled* domestic ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.

501.3.1 Location of exhaust outlets. The termination point of exhaust outlets and ducts discharging to the outdoors shall be located with the following minimum distances:

1. For ducts conveying explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts: 30 feet (9144 mm) from property lines; 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings into buildings; 6 feet (1829 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 30 feet (9144 mm) from combustible walls and operable openings into buildings that are in the direction of the exhaust discharge; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.
2. For other product-conveying outlets: 10 feet (3048 mm) from the property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings into buildings; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.
3. For all *environmental air* exhaust: 3 feet (914 mm) from property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from operable openings, except where the exhaust opening is located not less than 1 foot (305 mm) above the gravity air intake opening into buildings for all *occupancies* other than Group U; and 10 feet (3048 mm) from mechanical air intakes. Such exhaust shall not be considered hazardous or noxious. Separation is not required between intake air openings and living space *exhaust air* openings of an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* where a factory-built intake/exhaust combination termination fitting is used to separate the air streams in accordance with the fan manufacturer's instructions.
4. Exhaust outlets serving structures in flood hazard areas shall be installed at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant equipment.
5. For specific systems, see the following sections:
    - 5.1. Clothes dryer exhaust, Section 504.4.
    - 5.2. Kitchen hoods and other kitchen exhaust *equipment*, Sections 506.3.13, 506.4 and 506.5.
    - 5.3. Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems, Section 510.2.
    - 5.4. Subslab soil exhaust systems, Section 511.4.
    - 5.5. Smoke control systems, Section 512.10.3.
    - 5.6. Refrigerant discharge, Section 1105.7.
    - 5.7. *Machinery room* discharge, Section 1105.6.1.

501.3.2 Exhaust opening protection. Exhaust openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles. Openings in screens, louvers and grilles shall be sized not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) and not larger than

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

$^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). Openings shall be protected against local weather conditions. Louvers that protect exhaust openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *Building Code of New York State*, shall comply with AMCA Standard 550. Outdoor openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

501.4 Pressure equalization. Mechanical exhaust systems shall be sized to remove the quantity of air required by this chapter to be exhausted. The system shall operate when air is required to be exhausted. Where mechanical exhaust is required in a room or space in other than *occupancies* in Group R-3 and *dwelling units* in Group R-2, such space shall be maintained with a neutral or negative pressure. If a greater quantity of air is supplied by a mechanical ventilating supply system than is removed by a mechanical exhaust for a room, adequate means shall be provided for the natural or mechanical exhaust of the excess air supplied. If only a mechanical exhaust system is installed for a room or if a greater quantity of air is removed by a mechanical exhaust system than is supplied by a mechanical ventilating supply system for a room, adequate *makeup air* shall be provided to satisfy the deficiency.

501.5 Ducts. Where exhaust duct construction is not specified in this chapter, such construction shall comply with Chapter 6.

501.6 Common ducts. The discharge from exhaust fans serving separate *dwelling* or *sleeping units* shall not be connected to a common duct or shaft, except where the common duct or shaft is maintained at a negative pressure.

SECTION 502—REQUIRED SYSTEMS

502.1 General. An exhaust system shall be provided, maintained and operated as specifically required by this section and for all occupied areas where machines, vats, tanks, furnaces, forges, salamanders and other *appliances*, *equipment* and processes in such areas produce or throw off dust or particles sufficiently light to float in the air, or emit heat, odors, fumes, spray, gas or smoke in such quantities so as to be irritating or injurious to health or safety.

502.1.1 Exhaust location. The inlet to an exhaust system shall be located in the area of heaviest concentration of contaminants.

[F] 502.1.2 Fuel-dispensing areas. The bottom of an air inlet or exhaust opening in fuel-dispensing areas shall be located not more than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

502.1.3 Equipment, appliance and service rooms. *Equipment*, *appliance* and system service rooms that house sources of odors, fumes, noxious gases, smoke, steam, dust, spray or other contaminants shall be designed and constructed so as to prevent spreading of such contaminants to other occupied parts of the *building*.

[F] 502.1.4 Hazardous exhaust. The mechanical exhaust of high concentrations of dust or hazardous vapors shall conform to the requirements of Section 509.

[F] 502.2 Aircraft fueling and defueling. Compartments housing piping, pumps, air eliminators, water separators, hose reels and similar *equipment* used in aircraft fueling and defueling operations shall be adequately ventilated at floor level or within the floor itself.

[F] 502.3 Battery-charging areas for powered industrial trucks and equipment. Ventilation shall be provided in an *approved* manner in battery-charging areas for powered industrial trucks and *equipment* to prevent a dangerous accumulation of flammable gases.

[NY] 502.4 Energy storage systems. Energy storage systems shall be regulated and ventilated in accordance with Section 1207.6.1 of the *Fire Code of New York State* and the general requirements of this chapter.

[NY] 502.5 Reserved.

[F] 502.6 Dry cleaning plants. Ventilation in dry cleaning plants shall be adequate to protect employees and the public in accordance with this section and DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000, where applicable.

[F] 502.6.1 Type II systems. Type II dry cleaning systems shall be provided with a mechanical ventilation system that is designed to exhaust 1 cubic foot of air per minute for each square foot of floor area (1 cfm/ft^2) [0.00508 m^3/ (s × m^2)] in dry cleaning rooms and in drying rooms. The ventilation system shall operate automatically when the dry cleaning *equipment* is in operation and shall have manual controls at an *approved* location.

[F] 502.6.2 Type IV and V systems. Type IV and V dry cleaning systems shall be provided with an automatically activated exhaust ventilation system to maintain an air velocity of not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s) through the loading door when the door is opened.

Exception: Dry cleaning units are not required to be provided with exhaust ventilation where an exhaust hood is installed immediately outside of and above the loading door and operates at an airflow rate as follows:

Equation 5-1 $Q = 100 \times A_{LD}$

where:

Q = Flow rate exhausted through the hood, cubic feet per minute.

A_{LD} = Area of the loading door, square feet.

[F] 502.6.3 Spotting and pretreating. Scrubbing tubs, scouring, brushing or spotting operations shall be located such that solvent vapors are captured and exhausted by the ventilating system.

[F] 502.7 Application of flammable finishes. Mechanical exhaust as required by this section shall be provided for operations involving the application of flammable finishes.

[F] 502.7.1 During construction. Ventilation shall be provided for operations involving the application of materials containing flammable solvents in the course of construction, *alteration* or demolition of a structure.

[F] 502.7.2 Limited spraying spaces. Positive mechanical ventilation that provides not less than six complete air changes per hour shall be installed in limited spraying spaces. Such system shall meet the requirements of the *Fire Code of New York State* for handling flammable vapors. Explosion venting is not required.

[F] 502.7.3 Flammable vapor areas. Mechanical ventilation of flammable vapor areas shall be provided in accordance with Sections 502.7.3.1 through 502.7.3.6.

[F] 502.7.3.1 Operation. Mechanical ventilation shall be kept in operation at all times while spraying operations are being conducted and for a sufficient time thereafter to allow vapors from drying coated articles and finishing material residue to be exhausted. Spraying *equipment* shall be interlocked with the ventilation of the flammable vapor area such that spraying operations cannot be conducted unless the ventilation system is in operation.

[F] 502.7.3.2 Recirculation. Air exhausted from spraying operations shall not be recirculated.

Exceptions:

1. Air exhausted from spraying operations shall be permitted to be recirculated as *makeup air* for unmanned spray operations provided that:
   - 1.1. The solid particulate has been removed.
   - 1.2. The vapor concentration is less than 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL).
   - 1.3. *Approved equipment* is used to monitor the vapor concentration.
   - 1.4. An alarm is sounded and spray operations are automatically shut down if the vapor concentration exceeds 25 percent of the LFL.
   - 1.5. In the event of shutdown of the vapor concentration monitor, 100 percent of the air volume specified in Section 509 is automatically exhausted.
2. Air exhausted from spraying operations is allowed to be recirculated as *makeup air* to manned spraying operations where all of the conditions provided in Exception 1 are included in the installation and documents have been prepared to show that the installation does not pose a life safety hazard to personnel inside the spray booth, spraying space or spray room.

[F] 502.7.3.3 Air velocity. The ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the flammable contaminants are diluted in noncontaminated air to maintain concentrations in the exhaust airflow below 25 percent of the contaminant's lower flammable limit (LFL). In addition, the spray booth shall be provided with mechanical ventilation so that the average air velocity through openings is in accordance with Sections 502.7.3.3.1 and 502.7.3.3.2.

[F] 502.7.3.3.1 Open face or open front spray booth. For spray application operations conducted in an open face or open front spray booth, the ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings is not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s).

Exception: For fixed or automated electrostatic spray application equipment, the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings shall be not less than 50 feet per minute (0.25 m/s).

[F] 502.7.3.3.2 Enclosed spray booth or spray room with openings for product conveyance. For spray application operations conducted in an enclosed spray booth or spray room with openings for product conveyance, the ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the average air velocity into the spray booth through openings is not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s).

Exceptions:

1. For fixed or automated electrostatic spray application equipment, the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings shall be not less than 50 feet per minute (0.25 m/s).
2. Where methods are used to reduce cross drafts that can draw vapors and overspray through openings from the spray booth or spray room, the average air velocity into the spray booth or spray room shall be that necessary to capture and confine vapors and overspray to the spray booth or spray room.

[F] 502.7.3.4 Ventilation obstruction. Articles being sprayed shall be positioned in a manner that does not obstruct collection of overspray.

[F] 502.7.3.5 Independent ducts. Each spray booth and spray room shall have an independent exhaust duct system discharging to the outdoors.

Exceptions:

1. Multiple spray booths having a combined frontal area of 18 square feet (1.67 m^2) or less are allowed to have a common exhaust where identical spray-finishing material is used in each booth. If more than one fan serves one booth, such fans shall be interconnected so that all fans operate simultaneously.
2. Where treatment of exhaust is necessary for air pollution control or energy conservation, ducts shall be allowed to be manifolded if all of the following conditions are met:
   - 2.1. The sprayed materials used are compatible and will not react or cause ignition of the residue in the ducts.
   - 2.2. Nitrocellulose-based finishing material shall not be used.

2.3. A filtering system shall be provided to reduce the amount of overspray carried into the duct manifold.

2.4. Automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided at the junction of each booth exhaust with the manifold, in addition to the protection required by this chapter.

[F] 502.7.3.6 Fan motors and belts. Electric motors driving exhaust fans shall not be placed inside booths or ducts. Fan rotating elements shall be nonferrous or nonsparking or the casing shall consist of, or be lined with, such material. Belts shall not enter the duct or booth unless the belt and pulley within the duct are tightly enclosed.

[F] 502.7.4 Dipping operations. Flammable vapor areas of dip tank operations shall be provided with mechanical ventilation adequate to prevent the dangerous accumulation of vapors. Required ventilation systems shall be so arranged that the failure of any ventilating fan will automatically stop the dipping conveyor system.

[F] 502.7.5 Electrostatic apparatus. The flammable vapor area in spray-finishing operations involving electrostatic apparatus and devices shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.7.3.

[F] 502.7.6 Powder coating. Exhaust ventilation for powder-coating operations shall be sufficient to maintain the atmosphere below one-half of the minimum explosive concentration for the material being applied. Nondeposited, air-suspended powders shall be removed through exhaust ducts to the powder recovery system.

[F] 502.7.7 Floor resurfacing operations. To prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors during floor resurfacing operations, mechanical ventilation at a minimum rate of 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s × m^2)] of area being finished shall be provided. Such exhaust shall be by *approved* temporary or portable means. Vapors shall be exhausted to the outdoors.

[F] 502.8 Hazardous materials—general requirements. Exhaust ventilation systems for structures containing hazardous materials shall be provided as required in Sections 502.8.1 through 502.8.5.

[F] 502.8.1 Storage in excess of the maximum allowable quantities. Indoor storage areas and storage *buildings* for hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area shall be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation or *natural ventilation* where *natural ventilation* can be shown to be acceptable for the materials as stored.

Exceptions:

1. Storage areas for flammable solids complying with Section 5904 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.
2. Storage areas and storage *buildings* for fireworks and explosives complying with Chapter 56 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.8.1.1 System requirements. Exhaust ventilation systems shall comply with all of the following:

1. The installation shall be in accordance with this code.
2. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided at a rate of not less than 1 cfm per square foot [0.00508 m^3/(s × m^2)] of floor area over the storage area.
3. The systems shall operate continuously unless alternate designs are *approved*.
4. A manual shutoff control shall be provided outside of the room in a position adjacent to the access door to the room or in another *approved* location. The switch shall be a break-glass or other *approved* type and shall be *labeled*: VENTILATION SYSTEM EMERGENCY SHUTOFF.
5. The exhaust ventilation shall be designed to consider the density of the potential fumes or vapors released. For fumes or vapors that are heavier than air, exhaust shall be taken from a point within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor. For fumes or vapors that are lighter than air, exhaust shall be taken from a point within 12 inches (305 mm) of the highest point of the room.
6. The location of both the exhaust and inlet air openings shall be designed to provide air movement across all portions of the floor or room to prevent the accumulation of vapors.
7. The *exhaust air* shall not be recirculated to occupied areas if the materials stored are capable of emitting hazardous vapors and contaminants have not been removed. Air contaminated with explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts; flammable, highly toxic or toxic gases; or radioactive materials shall not be recirculated.

[F] 502.8.2 Gas rooms, exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets. The ventilation system for gas rooms, exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets for any quantity of hazardous material shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding area. Highly toxic and toxic gases shall comply with Sections 502.9.7.1, 502.9.7.2 and 502.9.8.4.

[F] 502.8.3 Indoor dispensing and use. Indoor dispensing and use areas for hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area shall be provided with exhaust ventilation in accordance with Section 502.8.1.

Exception: Ventilation is not required for dispensing and use of flammable solids other than finely divided particles.

[F] 502.8.4 Indoor dispensing and use—point sources. Where gases, liquids or solids in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area and having a hazard ranking of 3 or 4 in accordance with NFPA 704 are dispensed or used, mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided to capture gases, fumes, mists or vapors at the point of generation.

Exception: Where it can be demonstrated that the gases, liquids or solids do not create harmful gases, fumes, mists or vapors.

[F] 502.8.5 Closed systems. Where closed systems for the use of hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area are designed to be opened as part of normal operations, ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 502.8.4.

[F] 502.9 Hazardous materials—requirements for specific materials. Exhaust ventilation systems for specific hazardous materials shall be provided as required in Section 502.8 and Sections 502.9.1 through 502.9.11.

[F] 502.9.1 Compressed gases—medical gas systems. Rooms for the storage of compressed medical gases in amounts exceeding the permit amounts for compressed gases in the *Fire Code of New York State*, and that do not have an exterior wall, shall be exhausted through a duct to the exterior of the *building*. Both separate airstreams shall be enclosed in a 1-hour-rated shaft enclosure from the room to the exterior. *Approved* mechanical ventilation shall be provided at a minimum rate of 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s × m^2)] of the area of the room.

Gas cabinets for the storage of compressed medical gases in amounts exceeding the permit amounts for compressed gases in the *Fire Code of New York State* shall be connected to an exhaust system. The average velocity of ventilation at the face of access ports or windows shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) at any point at the access port or window.

[F] 502.9.2 Corrosives. Where corrosive materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area are dispensed or used, mechanical exhaust ventilation in accordance with Section 502.8.4 shall be provided.

[F] 502.9.3 Cryogenics. Storage areas for stationary or portable containers of cryogenic fluids in any quantity shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.8. Indoor areas where cryogenic fluids in any quantity are dispensed shall be ventilated in accordance with the requirements of Section 502.8.4 in a manner that captures any vapor at the point of generation.

Exception: Ventilation for indoor dispensing areas is not required where it can be demonstrated that the cryogenic fluids do not create harmful vapors.

[F] 502.9.4 Explosives. Squirrel cage blowers shall not be used for exhausting hazardous fumes, vapors or gases in operating *buildings* and rooms for the manufacture, assembly or testing of explosives. Only nonferrous fan blades shall be used for fans located within the ductwork and through which hazardous materials are exhausted. Motors shall be located outside the duct.

[F] 502.9.5 Flammable and combustible liquids. Exhaust ventilation systems shall be provided as required by Sections 502.9.5.1 through 502.9.5.5 for the storage, use, dispensing, mixing and handling of flammable and combustible liquids. Unless otherwise specified, this section shall apply to any quantity of flammable and combustible liquids.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to flammable and combustible liquids that are exempt from the *Fire Code of New York State*.
2. The storage of beer, distilled spirits and wine in barrels and casks conforming to the requirements of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.9.5.1 Vaults. Vaults that contain tanks of Class I liquids shall be provided with continuous ventilation at a rate of not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 of floor area [0.00508 m^3/(s × m^2)], but not less than 150 cfm (4.25 m^3/min). Failure of the exhaust airflow shall automatically shut down the dispensing system. The exhaust system shall be designed to provide air movement across all parts of the vault floor. Supply and exhaust ducts shall extend to a point not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the floor. The exhaust system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 91. Means shall be provided to automatically detect any flammable vapors and to automatically shut down the dispensing system upon detection of such flammable vapors in the exhaust duct at a concentration of 25 percent of the LFL.

[F] 502.9.5.2 Storage rooms and warehouses. Liquid storage rooms and liquid storage warehouses for quantities of liquids exceeding those specified in the *Fire Code of New York State* shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.8.1.

[F] 502.9.5.3 Cleaning machines. Areas containing machines used for parts cleaning in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State* shall be adequately ventilated to prevent accumulation of vapors.

[F] 502.9.5.4 Use, dispensing and mixing. Continuous mechanical ventilation shall be provided for the use, dispensing and mixing of flammable and combustible liquids in open or closed systems in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area and for bulk transfer and process transfer operations. The ventilation rate shall be not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s × m^2)] of floor area over the design area. Provisions shall be made for the introduction of *makeup air* in a manner that will include all floor areas or pits where vapors can collect. Local or spot ventilation shall be provided where needed to prevent the accumulation of hazardous vapors.

Exception: Where *natural ventilation* can be shown to be effective for the materials used, dispensed or mixed.

[F] 502.9.5.5 Bulk plants or terminals. Ventilation shall be provided for portions of properties where flammable and combustible liquids are received by tank vessels, pipelines, tank cars or tank vehicles and are stored or blended in bulk for the purpose of distributing such liquids by tank vessels, pipelines, tank cars, tank vehicles or containers as required by Sections 502.9.5.5.1 through 502.9.5.5.3.

[F] 502.9.5.5.1 General. Ventilation shall be provided for rooms, *buildings* and enclosures in which Class I liquids are pumped, used or transferred. Design of ventilation systems shall consider the relatively high specific gravity of the vapors. Where *natural ventilation* is used, adequate openings in outside walls at floor level, unobstructed except by louvers or coarse screens, shall be provided. Where *natural ventilation* is inadequate, mechanical ventilation shall be provided.

[F] 502.9.5.5.2 Basements and pits. Class I liquids shall not be stored or used within a *building* having a basement or pit into which flammable vapors can travel, unless such area is provided with ventilation designed to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors therein.

[F] 502.9.5.5.3 Dispensing of Class I liquids. Containers of Class I liquids shall not be drawn from or filled within *buildings* unless a provision is made to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors in hazardous concentrations. Where mechanical ventilation is required, it shall be kept in operation while flammable vapors could be present.

[F] 502.9.6 Highly toxic and toxic liquids. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids as required by Sections 502.9.6.1 and 502.9.6.2.

[F] 502.9.6.1 Treatment system. This provision shall apply to indoor and outdoor storage and use of highly toxic and toxic liquids in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area. Exhaust scrubbers or other systems for processing vapors of highly toxic liquids shall be provided where a spill or accidental release of such liquids can be expected to release highly toxic vapors at normal temperature and pressure.

[F] 502.9.6.2 Open and closed systems. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids used in open systems in accordance with Section 502.8.4. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids used in closed systems in accordance with Section 502.8.5.

Exception: Liquids or solids that do not generate highly toxic or toxic fumes, mists or vapors.

[F] 502.9.7 Highly toxic and toxic compressed gases—any quantity. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic compressed gases in any quantity as required by Sections 502.9.7.1 and 502.9.7.2.

[F] 502.9.7.1 Gas cabinets. Gas cabinets containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases in any quantity shall comply with Section 502.8.2 and the following requirements:

1. The average ventilation velocity at the face of gas cabinet access ports or windows shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) at any point at the access port or window.
2. Gas cabinets shall be connected to an exhaust system.
3. Gas cabinets shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.7.2 Exhausted enclosures. Exhausted enclosures containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases in any quantity shall comply with Section 502.8.2 and the following requirements:

1. The average ventilation velocity at the face of the enclosure shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s).
2. Exhausted enclosures shall be connected to an exhaust system.
3. Exhausted enclosures shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.8 Highly toxic and toxic compressed gases—quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic compressed gases in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area as required by Sections 502.9.8.1 through 502.9.8.6.

[F] 502.9.8.1 Ventilated areas. The room or area in which indoor gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures are located shall be provided with exhaust ventilation. Gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.8.2 Local exhaust for portable tanks. A means of local exhaust shall be provided to capture leakage from indoor and outdoor portable tanks. The local exhaust shall consist of portable ducts or collection systems designed to be applied to the site of a leak in a valve or fitting on the tank. The local exhaust system shall be located in a gas room. Exhaust shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.9.8.3 Piping and controls—stationary tanks. Filling or dispensing connections on indoor stationary tanks shall be provided with a means of local exhaust. Such exhaust shall be designed to capture fumes and vapors. The exhaust shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.9.8.4 Gas rooms. The ventilation system for gas rooms shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding area. The exhaust ventilation from gas rooms shall be directed to an exhaust system.

[F] 502.9.8.5 Treatment system. The exhaust ventilation from gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures and gas rooms, and local exhaust systems required in Sections 502.9.8.2 and 502.9.8.3 shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.9.8.6 Process equipment. Effluent from indoor and outdoor process *equipment* containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases which could be discharged to the atmosphere shall be processed through an exhaust scrubber or other processing system. Such systems shall be in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.9.9 Ozone gas generators. Ozone cabinets and ozone gas-generator rooms for systems having a maximum ozone-generating capacity of $^1/_2$ pound (0.23 kg) or more over a 24-hour period shall be mechanically ventilated at a rate of not less than six air changes per hour. For cabinets, the average velocity of ventilation at *makeup air* openings with cabinet doors closed shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s).

[F] 502.9.10 LP-gas distribution facilities. LP-gas distribution facilities shall be ventilated in accordance with NFPA 58.

[F] 502.9.10.1 Portable container use. Above-grade underfloor spaces or basements in which portable LP-gas containers are used or are stored awaiting use or resale shall be provided with an *approved* means of ventilation.

Exception: Department of Transportation (DOT) specification cylinders with a maximum water capacity of 2.7 pounds (1.2 kg) for use in completely self-contained hand torches and similar applications. The quantity of LP-gas shall not exceed 20 pounds (9 kg).

[F] 502.9.11 Silane gas. Exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets for the indoor storage of silane gas in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area shall comply with Chapter 64 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.10 Hazardous production materials (HPM). Exhaust ventilation systems and materials for ducts utilized for the exhaust of HPM shall comply with this section, other applicable provisions of this code, the *Building Code of New York State* and the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.10.1 Where required. Exhaust ventilation systems shall be provided in the following locations in accordance with the requirements of this section and the *Building Code of New York State*.

1. Fabrication areas: Exhaust ventilation for fabrication areas shall comply with the *Building Code of New York State*. Additional manual control switches shall be provided where required by the code official.
2. Workstations: A ventilation system shall be provided to capture and exhaust gases, fumes and vapors at workstations.
3. Liquid storage rooms: Exhaust ventilation for liquid storage rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.1.1 and the *Building Code of New York State*.
4. HPM rooms: Exhaust ventilation for HPM rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.1.1 and the *Building Code of New York State*.
5. Gas cabinets: Exhaust ventilation for gas cabinets shall comply with Section 502.8.2. The gas cabinet ventilation system is allowed to connect to a workstation ventilation system. Exhaust ventilation for gas cabinets containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
6. Exhausted enclosures: Exhaust ventilation for exhausted enclosures shall comply with Section 502.8.2. Exhaust ventilation for exhausted enclosures containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
7. Gas rooms: Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.2. Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
8. Cabinets containing pyrophoric liquids or Class 3 water-reactive liquids: Exhaust ventilation for cabinets in fabrication areas containing pyrophoric liquids shall be as required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 502.10.2 Penetrations. Exhaust ducts penetrating fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *Building Code of New York State* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *Building Code of New York State* shall be contained in a shaft of equivalent fire-resistance-rated construction. Exhaust ducts shall not penetrate fire walls. *Fire dampers* shall not be installed in exhaust ducts.

[F] 502.10.3 Treatment systems. Treatment systems for highly toxic and toxic gases shall comply with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

502.11 Motion picture projectors. Motion picture projectors shall be exhausted in accordance with Section 502.11.1 or 502.11.2.

502.11.1 Projectors with an exhaust discharge. Projectors equipped with an exhaust discharge shall be directly connected to a mechanical exhaust system. The exhaust system shall operate at an exhaust rate as indicated by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

502.11.2 Projectors without exhaust connection. Projectors without an exhaust connection shall have contaminants exhausted through a mechanical exhaust system. The exhaust rate for electric arc projectors shall be not less than 200 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.09 m^3/s) per lamp. The exhaust rate for xenon projectors shall be not less than 300 cfm (0.14 m^3/s) per lamp. Xenon projector exhaust shall be at a rate such that the exterior temperature of the lamp housing does not exceed 130°F (54°C). The lamp and projection room exhaust systems, whether combined or independent, shall not be interconnected with any other exhaust or return system within the *building*.

[F] 502.12 Organic coating processes. Enclosed structures involving organic coating processes in which Class I liquids are processed or handled shall be ventilated at a rate of not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$] of solid floor area. Ventilation shall be accomplished by exhaust fans that intake at floor levels and discharge to a safe location outside the structure. Noncontaminated intake air shall be introduced in such a manner that all portions of solid floor areas are provided with continuous uniformly distributed air movement.

502.13 Public garages. Mechanical exhaust systems for public garages, as required in Chapter 4, shall operate continuously or in accordance with Section 404.

502.14 Motor vehicle operation. In areas where motor vehicles operate, mechanical ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 403. Additionally, areas in which stationary motor vehicles are operated shall be provided with a *source capture system* that connects directly to the motor vehicle exhaust systems. Such system shall be engineered by a *registered design professional* or shall be factory-built *equipment* designed and sized for the purpose.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply where the motor vehicles being operated or repaired are electrically powered.
2. This section shall not apply to one- and two-family *dwellings*.
3. This section shall not apply to motor vehicle service areas where engines are operated inside the *building* only for the duration necessary to move the motor vehicles in and out of the *building*.

[F] 502.15 Repair garages. Where Class I liquids or LP-gas are stored or used within a *building* having a basement or pit wherein flammable vapors could accumulate, the basement or pit shall be provided with ventilation designed to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors therein.

[F] 502.16 Repair garages for vehicles fueled by lighter-than-air fuels. Repair garages used for the conversion and repair of vehicles that use compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas, hydrogen or other lighter-than-air motor fuels shall be provided with an *approved* mechanical exhaust ventilation system. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall be in accordance with Section 502.16.1 or 502.16.2 as applicable.

Exceptions:

1. Repair garages where work is not performed on the fuel system and is limited to exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas, hydrogen or other lighter-than-air-fueled motor vehicle.
2. Repair garages for hydrogen-fueled vehicles where work is not performed on the hydrogen storage tank and is limited to the exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the hydrogen-fueled vehicle. During the work, the entire hydrogen fuel system shall contain a quantity of hydrogen that is less than 200 cubic feet (5.6 m^3).

[F] 502.16.1 Repair garages for hydrogen-fueled vehicles. Repair garages used for the repair of hydrogen-fueled vehicles shall be provided with an *approved* exhaust ventilation system in accordance with this code and Chapter 6 of NFPA 2.

[F] 502.16.2 Exhaust ventilation system. Repair garages used for the repair of compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas or other lighter-than-air motor fuel, other than hydrogen, shall be provided with an *approved* mechanical exhaust ventilation system. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall be in accordance with this code and Sections 502.16.2.1 and 502.16.2.2.

Exception: Where *approved*, *natural ventilation* shall be an alternative to mechanical exhaust *ventilation*.

[F] 502.16.2.1 Design. For indoor locations, air supply inlets and exhaust outlets for mechanical ventilation shall be arranged to provide uniformly distributed air movement with inlets uniformly arranged on walls near floor level and outlets located at the high point of the room in walls or the roof.

Failure of the exhaust ventilation system shall cause the fueling system to shut down.

The exhaust ventilation rate shall be not less than 1 cubic foot per minute (0.03 m^3/min) per 12 cubic feet (0.34 m^3) of room volume.

[F] 502.16.2.2 Operation. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall operate continuously.

Exceptions:

1. Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems that are interlocked with a gas detection system designed in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*.
2. Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems in garages that are used only for the repair of vehicles fueled by liquid fuels or odorized gases, such as compressed natural gas, where the exhaust ventilation system is electrically interlocked with the lighting circuit.

502.17 Tire rebuilding or recapping. Each room where rubber cement is used or mixed, or where flammable or combustible solvents are applied, shall be ventilated in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 91.

502.17.1 Buffing machines. Each buffing machine shall be connected to a dust-collecting system that prevents the accumulation of the dust produced by the buffing process.

502.18 Specific rooms. Specific rooms, including bathrooms, locker rooms, smoking lounges and toilet rooms, shall be exhausted in accordance with the ventilation requirements of Chapter 4.

502.19 Indoor firing ranges. Ventilation shall be provided in an *approved* manner in areas utilized as indoor firing ranges. Ventilation shall be designed to protect employees and the public in accordance with DOL 29 CFR 1910.1025 where applicable.

502.20 Manicure and pedicure stations. Manicure and pedicure stations shall be provided with an exhaust system in accordance with Table 403.3.1.1, Note h. Manicure tables and pedicure stations not provided with factory-installed exhaust inlets shall be provided with exhaust inlets located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally and vertically from the point of chemical application.

502.20.1 Operation. The exhaust system for manicure and pedicure stations shall have controls that operate the system continuously when the space is occupied.

SECTION 503—MOTORS AND FANS

503.1 General. Motors and fans shall be sized to provide the required air movement. Motors in areas that contain flammable vapors or dusts shall be of a type *approved* for such environments. A manually operated remote control installed at an *approved* location shall be provided to shut off fans or blowers in flammable vapor or dust systems. Electrical *equipment* and *appliances* used in operations that generate explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall be interlocked with the ventilation system so that the *equipment* and *appliances* cannot be operated unless the ventilation fans are in operation. Motors for fans used to convey flammable vapors or dusts shall be located outside the duct or shall be protected with *approved* shields and dustproofing. Motors and fans shall be provided with a means of *access* for servicing and maintenance.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

503.2 Fans. Parts of fans in contact with explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall be of nonferrous or nonsparking materials, or their casing shall be lined or constructed of such material. Where the size and hardness of materials passing through a fan are capable of producing a spark, both the fan and the casing shall be of nonsparking materials. Where fans are required to be spark resistant, their bearings shall not be within the airstream, and all parts of the fan shall be grounded. Fans in systems-handling materials that are capable of clogging the blades, and fans in buffing or woodworking exhaust systems, shall be of the radial-blade or tube-axial type.

503.3 Equipment and appliance identification plate. *Equipment* and *appliances* used to exhaust explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall bear an identification plate stating the ventilation rate for which the system was designed.

503.4 Corrosion-resistant fans. Fans located in systems conveying corrosives shall be of materials that are resistant to the corrosive or shall be coated with corrosion-resistant materials.

SECTION 504—CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

504.1 Installation. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Dryer exhaust systems shall convey the moisture and any products of *combustion* to the outside of the *building*.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *listed* and *labeled* condensing (ductless) clothes dryers.

504.2 Exhaust penetrations. Where a clothes dryer exhaust duct penetrates a wall or ceiling membrane, the annular space shall be sealed with noncombustible material, *approved* fire caulking or a noncombustible dryer exhaust duct wall receptacle. Ducts that exhaust clothes dryers shall not penetrate or be located within any fireblocking, draftstops or any wall, floor/ceiling or other assembly required by the *Building Code of New York State* to be fire-resistance rated, unless such duct is constructed of galvanized steel or aluminum of the thickness specified in Section 603.4 and the fire-resistance rating is maintained in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*. *Fire dampers*, *combination fire/smoke dampers* and any similar devices that will obstruct the exhaust flow shall be prohibited in clothes dryer exhaust ducts.

504.3 Cleanout. Each vertical riser shall be provided with a means for cleanout.

504.4 Exhaust installation. Dryer exhaust ducts for clothes dryers shall terminate on the outside of the *building* and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the exhaust flow. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not be connected to a vent connector, vent or *chimney*. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not extend into or through ducts or *plenums*. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall be sealed in accordance with Section 603.9.

504.4.1 Termination location. Exhaust duct terminations shall be in accordance with the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. Where the manufacturer's instructions do not specify a termination location, the exhaust duct shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in any direction from openings into *buildings*, including openings in ventilated soffits.

504.4.2 Exhaust termination outlet and passageway size. The passageway of dryer exhaust duct terminals shall be undiminished in size and shall provide an open area of not less than 12.5 square inches (8065 mm^2).

504.5 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators. Domestic dryer exhaust duct power ventilators shall be *listed* and *labeled* to UL 705 for use in dryer exhaust duct systems. The dryer exhaust duct power ventilator shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

504.6 Booster fans prohibited. Domestic booster fans shall not be installed in dryer exhaust systems.

504.7 Makeup air. Installations exhausting more than 200 cfm (0.09 m^3/s) shall be provided with *makeup air*. Where a closet is designed for the installation of a clothes dryer, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) shall be provided in the closet enclosure or *makeup air* shall be provided by other *approved* means.

504.8 Protection against physical damage. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

504.8.1 Shield plates. Shield plates shall be of steel material having a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage).

504.9 Domestic clothes dryer ducts. Exhaust ducts for domestic clothes dryers shall conform to the requirements of Sections 504.9.1 through 504.9.6.

504.9.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) in thickness. The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

504.9.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4-foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude more than $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) into the inside of the duct.

Where dryer exhaust ducts are enclosed in wall or ceiling cavities, such cavities shall allow the installation of the duct without deformation.

504.9.3 Transition ducts. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be not greater than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall not be concealed within construction.

504.9.4 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Sections 504.9.4.1 through 504.9.4.3.

504.9.4.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table 504.9.4.1.

TABLE 504.9.4.1—DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH
4″ radius mitered 45-degree elbow	2 feet 6 inches
4″ radius mitered 90-degree elbow	5 feet
6″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
6″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 9 inches
8″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
8″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 7 inches
10″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	9 inches
10″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

504.9.4.2 Manufacturer's instructions. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The code official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer. Where the exhaust duct is to be concealed, the installation instructions shall be provided to the code official prior to the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table 504.9.4.1 shall be used.

504.9.4.3 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilator length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer exhaust duct power ventilator manufacturer's installation instructions.

504.9.5 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct equivalent length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

504.9.6 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed. Where the clothes dryer is not installed at the time of occupancy, the exhaust duct shall be capped at the location of the future dryer.

Exception: Where a *listed* condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of structure.

504.10 Commercial clothes dryers. The installation of dryer exhaust ducts serving commercial clothes dryers shall comply with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Exhaust fan motors installed in exhaust systems shall be located outside of the airstream. In multiple installations, the fan shall operate continuously or be interlocked to operate when any individual unit is operating. Ducts shall have a minimum *clearance* of 6 inches (152 mm) to combustible materials. Clothes dryer transition ducts used to connect the *appliance* to the exhaust duct system shall be limited to single lengths not to exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall not be concealed within construction.

504.11 Common exhaust systems for clothes dryers located in multistory structures. Where a common multistory duct system is designed and installed to convey exhaust from multiple clothes dryers, the construction of the system shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. The shaft in which the duct is installed shall be constructed and fire-resistance rated as required by the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. Dampers shall be prohibited in the exhaust duct. Penetrations of the shaft and ductwork shall be protected in accordance with Section 607.5.5, Exception 2.
3. Rigid metal ductwork shall be installed within the shaft to convey the exhaust. The ductwork shall be constructed of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) and in accordance with SMACNA Duct Construction Standards.
4. The ductwork within the shaft shall be designed and installed without offsets.
5. The exhaust fan motor design shall be in accordance with Section 503.2.
6. The exhaust fan motor shall be located outside of the airstream.
7. The exhaust fan shall run continuously, and shall be connected to a standby power source.
8. Exhaust fan operation shall be monitored in an *approved* location and shall initiate an audible or visual signal when the fan is not in operation.
9. *Makeup air* shall be provided for the exhaust system.

10. A cleanout opening shall be located at the base of the shaft to provide *access* to the duct to allow for cleaning and inspection. The finished opening shall be not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm).
11. Screens shall not be installed at the termination.
12. The common multistory duct system shall serve only clothes dryers and shall be independent of other exhaust systems.

SECTION 505—DOMESTIC COOKING EXHAUST EQUIPMENT

505.1 General. Domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* shall comply with the requirements of this section.

505.2 Domestic cooking exhaust. Where domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* is provided, it shall comply with the following as applicable:

1. The fan for overhead range hoods and downdraft exhaust *equipment* not integral with the cooking *appliance* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 507.
2. Overhead range hoods and downdraft exhaust *equipment* with integral fans shall comply with UL 507.
3. Domestic cooking *appliances* with integral downdraft exhaust *equipment* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ANSI Z21.1 or UL 858.
4. Microwave ovens with integral exhaust for installation over the cooking surface shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 923.

505.3 Exhaust ducts. Domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* shall discharge to the outdoors through sheet metal ducts constructed of galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum or copper. Such ducts shall have smooth inner walls, shall be airtight and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Installations in Group I-1 and I-2 *occupancies* shall be in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State* and Section 904.14 of the *Fire Code of New York State* and Section 505.7 or 505.8.

Exceptions:

1. Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or *natural ventilation* is otherwise provided in accordance with Chapter 4, *listed* and *labeled* ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.
2. Ducts for domestic kitchen cooking *appliances* equipped with downdraft exhaust systems shall be permitted to be constructed of Schedule 40 PVC pipe and fittings provided that the installation complies with all of the following:
    2.1. The duct shall be installed under a concrete slab poured on grade.
    2.2. The underfloor trench in which the duct is installed shall be completely backfilled with sand or gravel.
    2.3. The PVC duct shall extend not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above the indoor concrete floor surface.
    2.4. The PVC duct shall extend not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above grade outside of the *building*.
    2.5. The PVC ducts shall be solvent cemented.

505.4 Makeup air required. Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cfm (0.19 m^3/s) shall be provided with *makeup air* at a rate approximately equal to the *exhaust air* rate. Such *makeup air* systems shall be equipped with a means of closure and shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system.

505.5 Common exhaust systems for domestic kitchens located in multistory structures. Where a common multistory duct system is designed and installed to convey exhaust from multiple domestic kitchen exhaust systems, the construction of the system shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. The shaft in which the duct is installed shall be constructed and fire-resistance rated as required by the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. Dampers shall be prohibited in the exhaust duct, except as specified in Section 505.3. Penetrations of the shaft and ductwork shall be protected in accordance with Section 607.5.5, Exception 2.
3. Rigid metal ductwork shall be installed within the shaft to convey the exhaust. The ductwork shall be constructed of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) and in accordance with SMACNA Duct Construction Standards.
4. The ductwork within the shaft shall be designed and installed without offsets.
5. The exhaust fan motor design shall be in accordance with Section 503.2.
6. The exhaust fan motor shall be located outside of the airstream.
7. The exhaust fan shall run continuously, and shall be connected to a standby power source.
8. Exhaust fan operation shall be monitored in an *approved* location and shall initiate an audible or visual signal when the fan is not in operation.
9. Where the exhaust rate for an individual kitchen exceeds 400 cfm (0.19 m^3/s) *makeup air* shall be provided in accordance with Section 505.4.
10. A cleanout opening shall be located at the base of the shaft to provide *access* to the duct to allow for cleanout and inspection. The finished openings shall be not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm).
11. Screens shall not be installed at the termination.
12. The common multistory duct system shall serve only kitchen exhaust and shall be independent of other exhaust systems.

505.6 Other than Group R. In other than Group R *occupancies*, where domestic cooktops, ranges, and open-top broilers are used for domestic purposes, domestic cooking exhaust systems shall be provided.

505.7 Group I-1 occupancies. In Group I-1 *occupancies*, hood installations over domestic cooking equipment installed in accordance with Section 420.9 of the *Building Code of New York State* shall comply with the following:

1. Range hoods shall have a minimum air flow rate of 500 cfm (14 000 L/min).
2. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided to the rooms or spaces containing the domestic cooking equipment in accordance with Section 403.3.1.
3. Range hood exhaust shall discharge to the outdoors.

Exception: A *listed* and *labeled* ductless range hood shall be permitted where a charcoal filter is provided in the hood to reduce smoke and odors.

505.8 Group I-2 occupancies. In Group I-2 *occupancies*, hood installations above domestic cooking equipment installed in accordance with Section 407.2.7 of the *Building Code of New York State* shall comply with the following:

1. Range hoods shall have a minimum air flow rate of 500 cfm (14 000 L/min).
2. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided to the rooms or spaces containing the domestic cooking equipment in accordance with Section 403.3.1.
3. Range hood exhaust shall discharge to the outdoors.

Exception: A *listed* and *labeled* ductless range hood shall be permitted where a charcoal filter is provided in the hood to reduce smoke and odors.

SECTION 506—COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD VENTILATION SYSTEM DUCTS AND EXHAUST EQUIPMENT

506.1 General. Commercial kitchen hood ventilation ducts and exhaust *equipment* shall comply with the requirements of this section. Commercial kitchen grease ducts shall be designed for the type of cooking *appliance* and hood served.

506.2 Corrosion protection. Ducts and exhaust equipment exposed to the outside atmosphere or subject to a corrosive environment shall be protected against corrosion in an *approved* manner.

506.3 Grease duct systems. Grease duct systems shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 506.3.1 through 506.3.13.3.

506.3.1 Grease duct materials. Grease ducts shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) or stainless steel not less than 0.0450 inch (1.14 mm) (No. 18 gage) in thickness.

Exception: Factory-built commercial kitchen grease ducts *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1978 and installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

506.3.2 Joints, seams, and penetrations of grease ducts. Joints, seams and penetrations of grease ducts shall be made with a continuous liquid-tight weld or braze made on the external surface of the grease duct system.

Exceptions:

1. Penetrations shall not be required to be welded or brazed where sealed by devices that are *listed* for the application.
2. Internal welding or brazing shall not be prohibited provided that the joint is formed or ground smooth and is provided with *ready access* for inspection.
3. Factory-built commercial kitchen grease ducts *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1978 and installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

506.3.2.1 Grease duct joint types. Grease duct joints shall be butt joints, welded flange joints with a maximum flange depth of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) or overlapping duct joints of either the telescoping or bell type. Overlapping joints shall be installed to prevent ledges and obstructions from collecting grease or interfering with gravity drainage to the intended collection point. The difference between the inside cross-sectional dimensions of overlapping sections of duct shall not exceed $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). The length of overlap for overlapping duct joints shall not exceed 2 inches (51 mm).

506.3.2.2 Grease duct-to-hood joints. Grease duct-to-hood joints shall be made with continuous internal or external liquid-tight welded or brazed joints. Such joints shall be smooth, available for inspection, and without grease traps.

Exceptions: This section shall not apply to:

1. A vertical duct-to-hood collar connection made in the top plane of the hood in accordance with all of the following:
   - 1.1. The exhaust outlet of the hood shall have a 1-inch-deep (25 mm), full perimeter, welded flange turned down into the hood interior at an angle of 90 degrees (1.57 rad) from the plane of the opening.
   - 1.2. The grease duct shall have a 1-inch-deep (25 mm) flange made by a 1-inch by 1-inch (25 mm by 25 mm) angle iron welded to the full perimeter of the grease duct not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the bottom end of the duct.
   - 1.3. A gasket rated for use at not less than 1,500°F (816°C) is installed between the grease duct flange and the top of the hood.
   - 1.4. The grease duct-to-hood joint shall be secured by stud bolts not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) in diameter welded to the hood with a spacing not greater than 4 inches (102 mm) on center for the full perimeter of the opening. The bolts and nuts shall be secured with lockwashers.

2. *Listed* and *labeled* grease duct-to-hood collar connections installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

506.3.2.3 Grease duct-to-exhaust fan connections. Grease duct-to-exhaust fan connections shall be flanged and gasketed at the base of the fan for vertical discharge fans; shall be flanged, gasketed and bolted to the inlet of the fan for side-inlet utility fans; and shall be flanged, gasketed and bolted to the inlet and outlet of the fan for in-line fans. Gasket and sealing materials shall be rated for continuous duty at a temperature of not less than 1,500°F (816°C).

506.3.2.4 Vibration isolation. A vibration isolation connector for connecting a grease duct to a fan shall consist of noncombustible packing in a metal sleeve joint of *approved* design or shall be a coated-fabric flexible grease duct connector *listed* and *labeled* for the application. Vibration isolation connectors shall be installed only at the connection of a grease duct to a fan inlet or outlet.

506.3.2.5 Grease duct test. A field test shall be performed prior to the use or concealment of any portion of a grease duct system. Grease ducts shall be considered to be concealed where installed in shafts or covered by coatings or wraps that prevent the grease ducts from being visually inspected on all sides. The permit holder shall be responsible to provide the necessary *equipment* and perform the grease duct leakage test. A light test shall be performed to determine that all welded and brazed joints are liquid tight.

A test shall be performed for the entire grease duct system, including the hood-to-duct connection. The grease duct system shall be permitted to be tested in sections, provided that every joint is tested. For *listed* factory-built grease ducts, this test shall be limited to duct joints assembled in the field and shall exclude factory welds. The test shall be performed in accordance with either Section 506.3.2.5.1 or 506.3.2.5.2.

506.3.2.5.1 Light test. A duct test shall be performed by passing a lamp, having not less than 1600 lumens, through the entire section of ductwork to be tested. The lamp shall be open so as to emit light equally in all directions perpendicular to the duct walls. A successful test shall be where the light from the lamp is not visible at any point on the exterior of the duct.

506.3.2.5.2 Water spray test. A duct test shall be performed by simulating a cleaning operation of the interior of the duct. A water pump capable of a flowing outlet pressure of not less than 1,200 psi (8274 kPa) shall be used, along with any necessary hoses and spray nozzles, to apply high-pressure water to the inside surfaces of the duct. A successful test shall be where there is no evidence of cleaning water at any point on the exterior of the duct.

506.3.3 Grease duct supports. Grease duct bracing and supports shall be of noncombustible material securely attached to the structure and designed to carry gravity and seismic loads within the stress limitations of the *Building Code of New York State*. Bolts, screws, rivets and other mechanical fasteners shall not penetrate grease duct walls.

506.3.4 Air velocity. Grease duct systems shall be designed and installed to provide an air velocity within the grease duct system of not less than 500 feet per minute (2.5 m/s).

Exception: The velocity limitations shall not apply within grease duct transitions utilized to connect grease ducts to differently sized or shaped openings in hoods and fans, provided that such transitions do not exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in length and are designed to prevent the trapping of grease.

506.3.5 Separation of grease duct system. A separate grease duct system shall be provided for each Type I hood. A separate grease duct system is not required where all of the following conditions are met:

1. All interconnected hoods are located within the same story.
2. All interconnected hoods are located within the same room or in adjoining rooms.
3. Interconnecting grease ducts do not penetrate assemblies required to be fire-resistance rated.
4. The grease duct system does not serve solid-fuel-fired *appliances*.

506.3.6 Grease duct clearances. Where enclosures are not required, grease duct systems and exhaust *equipment* serving a Type I hood shall have a *clearance* to combustible construction of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), and shall have a *clearance* to noncombustible construction and gypsum wallboard attached to noncombustible structures of not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Factory-built commercial kitchen grease ducts *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1978.
2. *Listed* and *labeled* exhaust *equipment* installed in accordance with Section 304.1.
3. Where commercial kitchen grease ducts are continuously covered on all sides with a *listed* and *labeled* field-applied grease duct enclosure material, system, product or method of construction specifically evaluated for such purpose in accordance with ASTM E2336, the required *clearance* shall be in accordance with the listing of such material, system, product or method.

506.3.7 Prevention of grease accumulation in grease ducts. Grease duct systems serving a Type I hood shall be constructed and installed so that grease cannot collect in any portion thereof, and the system shall slope not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2 percent slope) toward the hood or toward a grease reservoir designed and installed in accordance with Section 506.3.7.1. Where horizontal grease ducts exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm) in length, the slope shall be not less than 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.3 percent slope).

Exception: Factory-built grease ducts shall be installed at a slope that is in accordance with the listing and manufacturer's installation instructions.

506.3.7.1 Grease duct reservoirs. Grease duct reservoirs shall:

1. Be constructed as required for the grease duct they serve.

2. Be located on the bottom of the horizontal grease duct or the bottommost section of the grease duct riser.
3. Extend across the full width of the grease duct and have a length of not less than 12 inches (305 mm).
4. Have a depth of not less than 1 inch (25 mm).
5. Have a bottom that slopes to a drain.
6. Be provided with a cleanout opening constructed in accordance with Section 506.3.8 and installed to provide direct *access* to the reservoir. The cleanout opening shall be located on a side or on top of the grease duct so as to permit cleaning of the reservoir.
7. Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions where manufactured devices are utilized.

506.3.8 Grease duct cleanouts and openings. Grease duct cleanouts and openings shall comply with all of the following:

1. Grease ducts shall not have openings except where required for the operation and maintenance of the system.
2. Sections of grease ducts that are inaccessible from the hood or discharge openings shall be provided with cleanout openings spaced not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) apart and not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) from changes in direction greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad).
3. Cleanouts and openings shall be equipped with tight-fitting doors constructed of steel having a thickness not less than that required for the grease duct.
4. Cleanout doors shall be installed liquid tight.
5. Door assemblies including any frames and gaskets shall be *approved* for the application and shall not have fasteners that penetrate the grease duct.
6. Gasket and sealing materials shall be rated for not less than 1,500°F (816°C).
7. *Listed* door assemblies shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

506.3.8.1 Personnel entry. Where a grease duct is large enough to allow entry of personnel, not less than one *approved* or *listed* opening having dimensions not less than 22 inches by 20 inches (559 mm by 508 mm) shall be provided in the horizontal sections, and in the top of vertical risers. Where such entry is provided, the grease duct and its supports shall be capable of supporting the additional load, and the cleanouts specified in Section 506.3.8 are not required.

506.3.8.2 Cleanouts serving in-line fans. A cleanout shall be provided for both the inlet side and outlet side of an in-line fan except where a grease duct does not connect to the fan. Such cleanouts shall be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the fan duct connections.

506.3.9 Grease duct horizontal cleanouts. Cleanouts serving horizontal sections of grease ducts shall:

1. Be spaced not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) apart.
2. Be located not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) from changes in direction that are greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad).
3. Be located on the bottom only where other locations are not available and shall be provided with internal damming of the opening such that grease will flow past the opening without pooling. Bottom cleanouts and openings shall be *approved* for the application and installed liquid tight.
4. Not be closer than 1 inch (25 mm) from the edges of the grease duct.
5. Have opening dimensions of not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm). Where such dimensions preclude installation, the opening shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) on one side and shall be large enough to provide *access* for cleaning and maintenance.
6. Be located at grease reservoirs.
7. Be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of horizontal discharge fans.

506.3.10 Underground grease duct installation. Underground grease duct installations shall comply with all of the following:

1. Underground grease ducts shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) and shall be coated to provide protection from corrosion or shall be constructed of stainless steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0450 inch (1.140 mm) (No. 18 gage).
2. The underground grease duct system shall be tested and approved in accordance with Section 506.3.2.5 prior to coating or placement in the ground.
3. The underground grease duct system shall be completely encased in concrete with a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm).
4. Ducts shall slope toward grease reservoirs.
5. A grease reservoir with a cleanout to allow cleaning of the reservoir shall be provided at the base of each vertical grease duct riser.
6. Cleanouts shall be provided with *access* to permit cleaning and inspection of the grease duct in accordance with Section 506.3.
7. Cleanouts in horizontal grease ducts shall be installed on the topside of the grease duct.
8. Cleanout locations shall be legibly identified at the point of *access* from the interior space.

506.3.11 Grease duct enclosures. A commercial kitchen grease duct serving a Type I hood that penetrates a ceiling, wall, floor or any concealed space shall be enclosed from the point of penetration to the outlet terminal. In-line exhaust fans not located outdoors shall be enclosed as required for grease ducts. A grease duct shall penetrate exterior walls only at locations where

unprotected openings are permitted by the *Building Code of New York State*. The grease duct enclosure shall serve a single grease duct and shall not contain other ducts, piping or wiring systems. Grease duct enclosures shall be a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 506.3.11.1, a field-applied enclosure assembly in accordance with Section 506.3.11.2 or a factory-built grease duct enclosure assembly in accordance with Section 506.3.11.3. Grease duct enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that of the assembly penetrated and not less than 1 hour. *Fire dampers* and *smoke dampers* shall not be installed in grease ducts.

Exception: A grease duct enclosure shall not be required for a grease duct that penetrates only a nonfire-resistance-rated roof/ceiling assembly.

506.3.11.1 Shaft enclosure. Grease ducts constructed in accordance with Section 506.3.1 shall be permitted to be enclosed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State* requirements for shaft construction. Such grease duct systems and exhaust *equipment* shall have a *clearance* to combustible construction of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), and shall have a *clearance* to noncombustible construction and gypsum wallboard attached to noncombustible structures of not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Shaft enclosures shall be sealed around the grease duct at the point of penetration and vented to the outside of the building through the use of weather-protected openings.

506.3.11.2 Field-applied grease duct enclosure. Grease ducts constructed in accordance with Section 506.3.1 shall be enclosed by a *listed* and *labeled* field-applied grease duct enclosure material, systems, product, or method of construction specifically evaluated for such purpose in accordance with ASTM E2336. The surface of the grease duct shall be continuously covered on all sides from the point at which the grease duct originates to the outlet terminal. Grease duct penetrations shall be protected with a through-penetration firestop system tested and *listed* in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479 and having a "F" and "T" rating equal to the fire-resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. The grease duct enclosure and firestop system shall be installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Partial application of a field-applied grease duct enclosure shall not be installed for the sole purpose of reducing *clearances* to combustibles at isolated sections of grease duct. Exposed duct-wrap systems shall be protected where subject to physical damage.

506.3.11.3 Factory-built grease duct enclosure assemblies. Factory-built grease ducts incorporating integral enclosure materials shall be *listed* and *labeled* for use as grease duct enclosure assemblies specifically evaluated for such purpose in accordance with UL 2221. Grease duct penetrations shall be protected with a through-penetration firestop system tested and *listed* in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479 and having an "F" and "T" rating equal to the fire-resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. The grease duct enclosure assembly and firestop system shall be installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

506.3.12 Grease duct fire-resistive access opening. Where cleanout openings are located in grease ducts within a fire-resistance-rated enclosure, access openings shall be provided in the enclosure at each cleanout point. Access openings shall be equipped with tight-fitting sliding or hinged doors that are equal in fire-resistive protection to that of the shaft or enclosure. An *approved* sign shall be placed on access opening panels with wording as follows: "ACCESS PANEL. DO NOT OBSTRUCT."

506.3.13 Exhaust outlets. Exhaust outlets for grease ducts shall conform to the requirements of Sections 506.3.13.1 through 506.3.13.3.

506.3.13.1 Termination above the roof. Exhaust outlets that terminate above the roof shall have the discharge opening located not less than 40 inches (1016 mm) above the roof surface.

506.3.13.2 Termination through an exterior wall. Exhaust outlets shall be permitted to terminate through exterior walls where the smoke, grease, gases, vapors and odors in the discharge from such terminations do not create a public nuisance or a fire hazard. Such terminations shall not be located where protected openings are required by the *Building Code of New York State*. Such terminations shall be located in accordance with Section 506.3.13.3 and shall not be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of any opening in the exterior wall.

506.3.13.3 Termination location. Exhaust outlets shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from parts of the same or contiguous *buildings*, adjacent *buildings* and adjacent property lines and shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the adjoining grade level. Exhaust outlets shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from or not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above air intake openings into any *building*.

Exception: Exhaust outlets shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from parts of the same or contiguous *building*, an adjacent *building*, adjacent property line and air intake openings into a *building* where air from the exhaust outlet discharges away from such locations.

506.4 Ducts serving Type II hoods. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems serving Type II hoods shall comply with Sections 506.4.1 and 506.4.2.

506.4.1 Ducts. Ducts and *plenums* serving Type II hoods shall be constructed of rigid metallic materials. Duct construction, installation, bracing and supports shall comply with Chapter 6. Ducts subject to positive pressure and ducts conveying moisture-laden or waste-heat-laden air shall be constructed, joined and sealed in an *approved* manner.

506.4.2 Type II terminations. Exhaust outlets serving Type II hoods shall terminate in accordance with the hood manufacturer's installation instructions and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Exhaust outlets shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in any direction from openings into the *building*.
2. Outlets shall terminate not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from property lines or *buildings* on the same lot.
3. Outlets shall terminate not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above grade.

4. Outlets that terminate above a roof shall terminate not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the roof surface.
5. Outlets shall terminate not less than 30 inches (762 mm) from exterior vertical walls.
6. Outlets shall be protected against local weather conditions.
7. Outlets shall not be directed onto walkways.
8. Outlets shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

506.5 Exhaust equipment. Exhaust *equipment*, including fans and grease reservoirs, shall comply with Sections 506.5.1 through 506.5.6 and shall be of an *approved* design or shall be *listed* for the application.

506.5.1 Exhaust fans. Exhaust fan housings serving a Type I hood shall be constructed as required for grease ducts in accordance with Section 506.3.1.

Exception: Fans *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 705.

506.5.1.1 Fan motor. Exhaust fan motors shall be located outside of the exhaust airstream.

506.5.1.2 In-line fan location. Where enclosed grease duct systems are connected to in-line fans not located outdoors, the fan shall be located in a room or space having the same fire-resistance rating as the grease duct enclosure. *Access* shall be provided for servicing and cleaning of fan components. Such rooms or spaces shall be ventilated in accordance with the fan manufacturer's installation instructions.

506.5.2 Pollution-control units. The installation of pollution-control units shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. Pollution-control units shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 8782.
2. Fans serving pollution-control units shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 705.
3. Bracing and supports for pollution-control units shall be of noncombustible material securely attached to the structure and designed to carry gravity and seismic loads within the stress limitations of the *Building Code of New York State*.
4. Pollution-control units located indoors shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such use.
5. *Clearances* shall be maintained between the pollution-control unit and combustible material in accordance with the listing. Where enclosed grease duct systems, as required by Section 506.3.11, are connected to a pollution control unit installed indoors, all of the following shall apply:
    5.1. The unit shall be *listed* and *labeled*, in accordance with ASTM E2336 or UL 2221, for location in an enclosure.
    5.2. The unit shall be installed in a dedicated room or space enclosure, constructed as required by Section 506.3.11, and have the same fire-resistance rating as the duct enclosure.
    5.3. Access shall be provided for servicing and cleaning of the unit.
    5.4. The dedicated room or space enclosure shall be ventilated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
6. Clearances shall be maintained between the pollution-control unit and combustible material in accordance with the listing.
7. Roof-mounted pollution-control units shall be *listed* for outdoor installation and shall be mounted not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the roof.
8. Exhaust outlets for pollution-control units shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.13.
9. An airflow differential pressure control shall be provided to monitor the pressure drop across the filter sections of a pollution-control unit. When the airflow is reduced below the design velocity, the airflow differential pressure control shall activate a visual alarm located in the area where cooking operations occur.
10. Pollution-control units shall be provided with a factory-installed fire suppression system.
11. Service space shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the pollution control unit and the requirements of Section 306.
12. Wash-down drains shall discharge through a grease interceptor and shall be sized for the flow. Drains shall be sealed with a trap or other *approved* means to prevent air bypass. Where a trap is utilized it shall have a seal depth that accounts for the system pressurization and evaporation between cleanings.
13. Protection from freezing shall be provided for the water supply and fire suppression systems where such systems are subject to freezing.
14. Grease duct connections to pollution-control units shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.2.3. Where water splash or carryover can occur in the transition duct as a result of a washing operation, the transition duct shall slope downward toward the cabinet drain pan for a length not less than 18 inches (457 mm). Grease ducts shall transition to the full size of the unit's inlet and outlet openings.
15. Extra-heavy-duty *appliance* exhaust systems shall not be connected to pollution-control units except where such units are specifically designed and listed for use with solid fuels.
16. Pollution-control units shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

506.5.3 Exhaust fan discharge. Exhaust fans shall be positioned so that the discharge will not impinge on the roof, other *equipment* or *appliances* or parts of the structure. A vertical discharge fan shall be manufactured with an *approved* drain outlet at the lowest point of the housing to permit drainage of grease to an *approved* grease reservoir.

506.5.4 Exhaust fan mounting. Upblast fans serving Type I hoods and installed in a vertical or horizontal position shall be hinged, supplied with a flexible weatherproof electrical cable to permit inspection and cleaning and shall be equipped with a means of restraint to limit the swing of the fan on its hinge. The grease duct system shall extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the roof surface.

506.5.5 Clearances. Exhaust *equipment* serving a Type I hood shall have a *clearance* to combustible construction of not less than 18 inches (457 mm).

Exception: Factory-built exhaust *equipment* installed in accordance with Section 304.1 and *listed* for a lesser *clearance*.

506.5.6 Termination location. The outlet of exhaust *equipment* serving Type I hoods shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.13.

Exception: The minimum horizontal distance between vertical discharge fans and parapet-type *building* structures shall be 2 feet (610 mm), provided that such structures are not higher than the top of the fan discharge opening.

SECTION 507—COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS

507.1 General. Commercial kitchen exhaust hoods shall comply with the requirements of this section. Hoods shall be Type I or II and shall be designed to capture and confine cooking vapors and residues. A Type I hood shall be installed at or above appliances in accordance with Section 507.2. A Type II hood shall be installed at or above *appliances* in accordance with Section 507.3. Where any cooking *appliance* under a single hood requires a Type I hood, a Type I hood shall be installed. Where a Type II hood is required, a Type I or Type II hood shall be installed.

Exceptions:

1. Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems that are and *labeled* in accordance with UL 710B, and installed in accordance with Section 304.1, shall not be required to comply with Sections 507.1.5, 507.1.6, 507.2.3, 507.2.5, 507.2.8, 507.2.10 and 507.3.1. Spaces in which such systems are located shall be considered to be kitchens and shall be ventilated in accordance with Table 403.3.1.1. For the purpose of determining the floor area required to be ventilated, each individual *appliance* shall be considered as occupying not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).
2. A hood shall not be required at or above any of the following:
   - 2.1. Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 710B, and installed in accordance with Section 304.1. Spaces in which such systems are located shall be considered to be kitchens and shall be ventilated in accordance with Table 403.3.1.1. For the purpose of determining the floor area required to be ventilated, each individual *appliance* shall be considered as occupying not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).
   - 2.2. Cooking *appliances* equipped with integral down-draft exhaust systems are *listed* and *labeled* for the application in accordance with NFPA 96.
   - 2.3. Smoker ovens with the integral exhaust systems are *listed* and tested for the application.
3. Ovens *listed* and *labeled* for use with wood fuel in accordance with UL 2162 and vented in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. An electric cooking *appliance listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 197 for reduced grease emissions.
5. Commercial electric dishwashers incorporating a self-contained condensing system *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 921.
6. Where the heat and moisture loads from dishwashers and *appliances* that produce heat or moisture and do not produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process are incorporated into the HVAC system design or into the design of a separate removal system. Spaces containing such cooking *appliances* that do not require Type II hoods shall be provided with exhaust at a rate of 0.70 cfm per square foot [0.00356 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$]. For the purpose of determining the floor area required to be exhausted, each individual *appliance* that is not required to be installed under a Type II hood shall be considered as occupying not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2). Such additional square footage shall be provided with exhaust at a rate of 0.70 cfm per square foot [0.00356 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$].

507.1.1 Operation. Commercial kitchen exhaust hood systems shall operate during the cooking operation. The hood exhaust rate shall comply with either the listing of the hood, Section 507.2.10 or Section 507.3.4. The exhaust fan serving a Type I hood shall have automatic controls that will activate the fan when any *appliance* that requires such Type I hood is turned on, or a means of interlock shall be provided that will prevent operation of such *appliances* when the exhaust fan is not turned on. Where one or more temperature or radiant energy sensors are used to activate a Type I hood exhaust fan, the fan shall activate not more than 15 minutes after the first *appliance* served by that hood has been turned on. A method of interlock between an exhaust hood system and *appliances* equipped with standing pilot burners shall not cause the pilot burners to be extinguished. A method of interlock between an exhaust hood system and cooking *appliances* shall not involve or depend on any component of a fire-extinguishing system.

The net exhaust volumes for hoods shall be permitted to be reduced during part-load cooking conditions, where engineered or *listed* multispeed or variable speed controls automatically operate the exhaust system to maintain capture and removal of cooking effluents as required by this section. Reduced volumes shall not be below that required to maintain capture and removal of effluents from the idle cooking *appliances* that are operating in a standby mode.

507.1.1.1 Multiple hoods utilizing a single exhaust system. Where heat or radiant energy sensors are utilized in hood systems consisting of multiple hoods served by a single exhaust system, such sensors shall be provided in each hood. Sensors shall be capable of being accessed from the hood outlet or from a cleanout location.

507.1.2 Domestic cooking appliances used for commercial purposes. Domestic cooking *appliances* utilized for commercial purposes shall be provided with either Type I or Type II hoods as required for the type of *appliances* and processes in accordance with Sections 507.2 and 507.3. Domestic cooking *appliances* utilized for domestic cooking shall comply with Section 505.

507.1.3 Fuel-burning appliances. *Appliances* equipped with draft hoods or atmospheric burners shall not be located in the same room or space containing a Type I or Type II hood except where the *appliance* is located in a sealed enclosure equipped with a self-closing device with combustion air obtained from the outdoors or from other spaces in the *building* in accordance with Chapter 7 or the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*.

507.1.4 Cleaning. A hood shall be designed to provide for thorough cleaning of the entire hood.

507.1.5 Exhaust outlets. Exhaust outlets located within the hood shall be located so as to optimize the capture of particulate matter. Each outlet shall serve not more than a 12-foot (3658 mm) section of hood.

507.1.6 Hood size and location. Hoods shall comply with the overhang, setback and height requirements in accordance with Sections 507.1.6.1 and 507.1.6.2, based on the type of hood.

507.1.6.1 Canopy size and location. The inside lower edge of canopy-type Type I and II commercial hoods shall overhang or extend a horizontal distance of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the edge of the top horizontal surface of the *appliance* on all open sides. The vertical distance between the front lower lip of the hood and such surface shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).

Exception: The hood shall be permitted to be flush with the outer edge of the cooking surface where the hood is closed to the *appliance* side by a noncombustible wall or panel.

507.1.6.*2* Noncanopy size and location. Noncanopy-type hoods shall be located not greater than 3 feet (914 mm) above the cooking surface. The edge of the hood shall be set back not greater than 1 foot (305 mm) from the edge of the cooking surface.

507.1.7 Performance test. A performance test shall be conducted upon completion and before final approval of the installation of a ventilation system serving *commercial cooking appliances*. The test shall verify the rate of exhaust airflow required by Section 507.2.10 or Section 507.3.4, makeup airflow required by Section 508 and proper operation as specified in this chapter. The permit holder shall furnish the necessary test *equipment* and *devices* required to perform the tests.

507.1.7.1 Capture and containment test. The permit holder shall verify capture and containment performance of the exhaust system. This field test shall be conducted with all *appliances* under the hood at operating temperatures, with all sources of outdoor air providing *makeup air* for the hood operating and with all sources of recirculated air providing conditioning for the space in which the hood is located operating. Capture and containment shall be verified visually by observing smoke or steam produced by actual or simulated cooking, such as that provided by smoke generators.

507.2 Type I hoods. Type I hoods shall be installed where cooking *appliances* produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process. Type I hoods shall be installed over *medium-duty, heavy-duty* and *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances*.

507.2.1 Type I exhaust flow rate label. Type I hoods shall bear a label indicating the minimum exhaust flow rate in cfm per linear foot (1.55 L/s per linear meter) of hood that provides for capture and containment of the exhaust effluent for the cooking *appliances* served by the hood, based on the cooking *appliance* duty classifications defined in this code.

507.2.2 Type I extra-heavy-duty. Type I hoods for use over *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall not cover *heavy-, medium-* or *light-duty appliances*. Such hoods shall discharge to an exhaust system that is independent of other exhaust systems.

507.2.3 Type I materials. Type I hoods shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0466 inch (1.181 mm) (No. 18 gage) or stainless steel not less than 0.0335 inch [0.8525 mm (No. 20 MSG)] in thickness.

507.2.4 Type I supports. Type I hoods shall be secured in place by noncombustible supports. Type I hood supports shall be adequate for the applied load of the hood, the unsupported grease duct systems, the effluent loading and the possible weight of personnel working in or on the hood.

507.2.5 Type I hoods. External hood joints, seams and penetrations for Type I hoods shall be made with a continuous external liquid-tight weld or braze to the lowest outermost perimeter of the hood. Internal hood joints, seams, penetrations, filter support frames and other appendages attached inside the hood shall not be required to be welded or brazed but shall be otherwise sealed to be grease tight.

Exceptions:

1. Penetrations shall not be required to be welded or brazed where sealed by devices that are *listed* for the application.
2. Internal welding or brazing of seams, joints and penetrations of the hood shall not be prohibited provided that the joint is formed smooth or ground so as to not trap grease, and is readily cleanable.

507.2.6 Clearances for Type I hood. A Type I hood shall be installed with a *clearance* to combustibles of not less than 18 inches (457 mm).

Exceptions:

1. *Clearance* shall not be required from gypsum wallboard or $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) or thicker cementitious wallboard attached to noncombustible structures provided that a smooth, cleanable, nonabsorbent and noncombustible mate-

rial is installed between the hood and the gypsum or cementitious wallboard over an area extending not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in all directions from the hood.

2. Type I hoods *listed* and *labeled* for *clearances* less than 18 inches (457 mm) in accordance with UL 710 shall be installed with the *clearances* specified by such listings.

507.2.7 Type I hoods penetrating a ceiling. Type I hoods or portions thereof penetrating a ceiling, wall or furred space shall comply with Section 506.3.11. Field-applied grease duct enclosure systems, as addressed in Section 506.3.11.2, shall not be utilized to satisfy the requirements of this section.

507.2.8 Type I grease filters. Type I hoods shall be equipped with grease filters *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1046. Grease filters shall be provided with *access* for cleaning or replacement. The lowest edge of a grease filter located above the cooking surface shall be not less than the height specified in Table 507.2.8.

TABLE 507.2.8—MINIMUM DISTANCE BETWEEN THE LOWEST EDGE OF A GREASE FILTER AND THE COOKING SURFACE OR THE HEATING SURFACE

TYPE OF COOKING APPLIANCES	HEIGHT ABOVE COOKING SURFACE (feet)
Without exposed flame	0.5
Exposed flame and burners	2
Exposed charcoal and charbroil type	3.5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

507.2.8.1 Criteria. Filters shall be of such size, type and arrangement as will permit the required quantity of air to pass through such units at rates not exceeding those for which the filter or unit was designed or *approved*. Filter units shall be installed in frames or holders so as to be readily removable without the use of separate tools, unless designed and installed to be cleaned in place and the system is equipped for such cleaning in place. Where filters are designed and required to be cleaned, removable filter units shall be of a size that will allow them to be cleaned in a dishwashing machine or pot sink. Filter units shall be arranged in place or provided with drip-intercepting devices to prevent grease or other condensate from dripping into food or on food preparation surfaces.

507.2.8.2 Mounting position of grease filters. Filters shall be installed at an angle of not less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal and shall be equipped with a drip tray beneath the lower edge of the filters.

507.2.9 Grease gutters for Type I hood. Grease gutters shall drain to an *approved* collection receptacle that is fabricated, designed and installed to allow *access* for cleaning.

507.2.10 Capacity of Type I hoods. Commercial food service hoods shall exhaust a minimum net quantity of air determined in accordance with this section and Sections 507.2.10.1 through 507.2.10.3. The net quantity of *exhaust air* shall be calculated by subtracting any airflow supplied directly to a hood cavity from the total exhaust flow rate of a hood. Where any combination of *heavy-duty, medium-duty* and *light-duty cooking appliances* are utilized under a single hood, the exhaust rate required by this section for the heaviest duty *appliance* covered by the hood shall be used for the entire hood.

507.2.10.1 Extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods used for *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	Not allowed
Double island canopy (per side)	550
Eyebrow	Not allowed
Single island canopy	700
Wall-mounted canopy	550

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.2.10.2 Heavy-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods used for *heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	400
Double island canopy (per side)	400
Eyebrow	Not allowed
Single island canopy	600
Wall-mounted canopy	400
For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.	

507.2.10.3 Medium-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods used for *medium-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	300
Double island canopy (per side)	300
Eyebrow	250
Single island canopy	500
Wall-mounted canopy	300
For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.	

507.2.11 Fire suppression systems. A Type I hood shall be provided with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system complying with Section 904.12 of the *Building Code of New York State* and the *Fire Code of New York State*.

507.3 Type II hoods. Type II hoods shall be installed above *light-duty cooking appliances,* dishwashers and *appliances* that produce heat or moisture and do not produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process. Type II hoods shall be installed above all *appliances* that produce products of *combustion* and do not produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process. A Type I hood shall be permitted to be installed for a required Type II hood, provided that the Type I hood installation complies with all of the requirements for a Type I hood installation. Where such a Type I hood serves only dishwashers and *appliances* that require a Type II hood, the Type I hood shall not be required to have fire suppression or grease filters.

507.3.1 Type II hood materials. Type II hoods shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage) or stainless steel not less than 0.0220 inch (0.5550 mm) (No. 24 gage) in thickness, copper sheets weighing not less than 24 ounces per square foot (7.3 kg/m^2) or of other *approved* material and gage.

507.3.2 Type II supports. Type II hood supports shall be adequate for the applied load of the hood, the unsupported ductwork, the effluent loading and the possible weight of personnel working in or on the hood.

507.3.3 Type II hoods joint, seams and penetrations. Joints, seams and penetrations for Type II hoods shall be constructed as set forth in Chapter 6, shall be sealed on the interior of the hood and shall provide a smooth surface that is readily cleanable and watertight.

507.3.4 Capacity of Type II hoods. Type II hoods shall exhaust a minimum net quantity of air determined in accordance with this section and Sections 507.3.4.1 through 507.3.4.2. The net quantity of *exhaust air* shall be calculated by subtracting any airflow supplied directly to a hood cavity from the total exhaust flow rate of a hood.

507.3.4.1 Light-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods used for *light-duty* cooking *appliances* and food service preparation shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	250
Double island canopy (per side)	250
Eyebrow	250
Single island canopy	400
Wall-mounted canopy	200
For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.	

507.3.4.2 Dishwashing appliances. The minimum net airflow for Type II hoods used for dishwashing *appliances* shall be 100 cfm per linear foot (155 L/s per linear meter) of hood length.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 508—COMMERCIAL KITCHEN MAKEUP AIR

508.1 Makeup air. *Makeup air* shall be supplied during the operation of commercial kitchen exhaust systems that are provided for *commercial cooking appliances*. The amount of *makeup air* supplied to the *building* from all sources shall be approximately equal to the amount of *exhaust air* for all exhaust systems for the *building*. The *makeup air* shall not reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system. *Makeup air* shall be provided by gravity or mechanical means or both. Mechanical *makeup air* systems shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system. *Makeup air* intake opening locations shall comply with Section 401.4.

508.1.1 Makeup air temperature. HVAC systems that serve the kitchen space shall have the additional capacity necessary for the latent and sensible loads that are introduced by the *makeup air* supplied to the kitchen space, or the *makeup air* shall be conditioned by dedicated systems such that the difference in temperature between the *makeup air* supplied to the kitchen space and the design setpoint temperature in the kitchen space is not greater than 10°F (6°C).

Exception: *Makeup air* supplied to a compensating hood shall not be required to be conditioned.

508.1.2 Makeup air ducts. *Makeup air* ducts connecting to or within 18 inches (457 mm) of a Type I hood shall be constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 603.1, 603.3, 603.4, 603.9, 603.10 and 603.12. Duct insulation installed within 18 inches (457 mm) of a Type I hood shall be noncombustible or shall be *listed* for the application.

508.1.3 Air balance. Design plans for a facility with a commercial kitchen ventilation system shall include a schedule or diagram indicating the design outdoor air balance. The design outdoor air balance shall indicate all exhaust and replacement air for the facility, plus the net exfiltration if applicable. The total replacement air airflow rate shall equal the total exhaust airflow rate plus the net exfiltration.

508.2 Compensating hoods. Manufacturers of compensating hoods shall provide a label indicating the minimum exhaust flow, the maximum makeup airflow or both that provides capture and containment of the exhaust effluent.

Exception: Compensating hoods with *makeup air* supplied only from the front face discharge and side face discharge openings shall not be required to be *labeled* with the maximum makeup airflow.

SECTION 509—HAZARDOUS EXHAUST SYSTEMS

509.1 General. This section shall govern the design and construction of duct systems for hazardous exhaust and shall determine where such systems are required. Hazardous exhaust systems are systems designed to capture and control hazardous emissions generated from product handling or processes, and convey those emissions to the outdoors. Hazardous emissions include flammable vapors, gases, fumes, mists or dusts, and volatile or airborne materials posing a health hazard, such as toxic or corrosive materials. For the purposes of this section, the health-hazard rating of materials shall be as specified in NFPA 704.

For the purposes of the provisions of Section 509, a laboratory shall be defined as a facility where the use of chemicals is related to testing, analysis, teaching, research or developmental activities. Chemicals are used or synthesized on a nonproduction basis, rather than in a manufacturing process.

509.2 Where required. A hazardous exhaust system shall be required wherever operations involving the handling or processing of hazardous materials, in the absence of such exhaust systems and under normal operating conditions, have the potential to create one of the following conditions:

1. A flammable vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust is present in concentrations exceeding 25 percent of the lower flammability limit of the substance for the expected room temperature.
2. A vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 4 is present in any concentration.
3. A vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 1, 2 or 3 is present in concentrations exceeding 1 percent of the median lethal concentration of the substance for acute inhalation toxicity.

Exception: Laboratories, as defined in Section 509.1, except where the concentrations listed in Item 1 are exceeded or a vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 1, 2, 3 or 4 is present in concentrations exceeding 1 percent of the median lethal concentration of the substance for acute inhalation toxicity.

[F] 509.2.1 Lumber yards and woodworking facilities. *Equipment* or machinery located inside *buildings* at lumber yards and woodworking facilities that generates or emits combustible dust shall be provided with an *approved* dust-collection and exhaust system installed in accordance with this section and the *Fire Code of New York State*. *Equipment* and systems that are used to collect, process or convey combustible dusts shall be provided with an *approved* explosion-control system.

[F] 509.2.2 Combustible fibers. *Equipment* or machinery within a *building* that generates or emits combustible fibers shall be provided with an *approved* dust-collecting and exhaust system. Such systems shall comply with this code and the *Fire Code of New York State*.

509.3 Design and operation. The design and operation of the exhaust system shall be such that flammable contaminants are diluted in noncontaminated air to maintain concentrations in the exhaust flow below 25 percent of the contaminant's lower flammability limit.

509.4 Incompatible materials and common shafts. Incompatible materials, as defined in the *Fire Code of New York State*, shall not be exhausted through the same hazardous exhaust system. Hazardous exhaust systems shall not share common shafts with other duct systems, except where such systems are hazardous exhaust systems originating in the same fire area.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

Exception: The provisions of this section shall not apply to laboratory exhaust systems where all of the following conditions apply:

1. All of the hazardous exhaust ductwork and other laboratory exhaust within both the occupied space and the shafts are under negative pressure while in operation.
2. The hazardous exhaust ductwork manifolded together within the occupied space must originate within the same fire area.
3. Hazardous exhaust ductwork originating in different fire areas and manifolded together in a common shaft shall meet the provisions of Section 717.5.3, Exception 1, Item 1.1 of the *Building Code of New York State*.
4. Each control branch has a flow-regulating device.
5. Perchloric acid hoods and connected exhaust shall be prohibited from manifolding.
6. Radioisotope hoods are equipped with filtration, carbon beds or both where required by the *registered design professional*.
7. Biological safety cabinets are filtered.
8. Each hazardous exhaust duct system shall be served by redundant exhaust fans that comply with either of the following:
    8.1. The fans shall operate simultaneously in parallel and each fan shall be individually capable of providing the required exhaust rate.
    8.2. Each of the redundant fans is controlled so as to operate when the other fan has failed or is shut down for servicing.

509.5 Design. Systems for removal of vapors, gases and smoke shall be designed by the constant velocity or equal friction methods. Systems conveying particulate matter shall be designed employing the constant velocity method.

509.5.1 Balancing. Systems conveying explosive or radioactive materials shall be prebalanced by duct sizing. Other systems shall be balanced by duct sizing with balancing devices, such as dampers. Dampers provided to balance airflow shall have securely fixed minimum-position blocking devices to prevent restricting the flow below the required volume or velocity.

509.5.2 Emission control. The design of the system shall be such that the emissions are confined to the area in which they are generated by air currents, hoods or enclosures and shall be exhausted by a duct system to a safe location or treated by removing contaminants.

509.5.3 Hoods required. Hoods or enclosures shall be used where contaminants originate in a limited area of a space. The design of the hood or enclosure shall be such that air currents created by the exhaust systems will capture the contaminants and transport them directly to the exhaust duct.

509.5.4 Contaminant capture and dilution. The velocity and circulation of air in work areas shall be such that contaminants are captured by an airstream at the area where the emissions are generated and conveyed into a product-conveying duct system. Contaminated air from work areas where hazardous contaminants are generated shall be diluted below the thresholds specified in Section 509.2 with air that does not contain other hazardous contaminants.

509.5.5 Makeup air. *Makeup air* from all sources shall be provided during operations at a rate approximately equal to the rate that air is exhausted by the hazardous exhaust system. *Makeup air* shall be provided by gravity or mechanical means or both. Mechanical *makeup air* systems shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system. The *makeup air* shall not reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system. *Makeup air* intakes shall be located in accordance with Section 401.4.

509.5.6 Clearances. The minimum *clearance* between hoods and combustible construction shall be the *clearance* required by the duct system.

509.5.7 Ducts. Hazardous exhaust duct systems shall extend directly to the exterior of the *building* and shall not extend into or through ducts and *plenums*.

509.6 Penetrations. Penetrations of structural elements by a hazardous exhaust system shall conform to Sections 509.6.1 through 509.6.4.

Exception: Duct penetrations within Group H-5 *occupancies* as allowed by the *Building Code of New York State*.

509.6.1 Fire dampers and smoke dampers. *Fire dampers* and *smoke dampers* are prohibited in hazardous exhaust ducts.

509.6.1.1 Shaft penetrations. Hazardous exhaust ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated shafts shall comply with Section 714.4.1 or 714.4.1.2 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

509.6.2 Floors. Hazardous exhaust systems that penetrate a floor/ceiling assembly shall be enclosed in a fire-resistance-rated shaft constructed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

509.6.3 Wall assemblies. Hazardous exhaust duct systems that penetrate fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies shall be enclosed in fire-resistance-rated construction from the point of penetration to the outlet terminal, except where the interior of the duct is equipped with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system. Ducts shall be enclosed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State* requirements for shaft construction and such enclosure shall have a minimum fire-resistance rating of not less than the highest fire-resistance-rated wall assembly penetrated.

509.6.4 Fire walls. Ducts shall not penetrate a fire wall.

509.7 Suppression required. Ducts shall be protected with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system installed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

Exceptions:

1. An *approved* automatic fire suppression system shall not be required in ducts conveying materials, fumes, mists and vapors that are nonflammable and noncombustible under all conditions and at any concentrations.
2. Automatic fire suppression systems shall not be required in metallic and noncombustible, nonmetallic exhaust ducts in semiconductor fabrication facilities.
3. An *approved* automatic fire suppression system shall not be required in ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10 inches (254 mm).
4. For laboratories, as defined in Section 509.1, automatic fire protection systems shall not be required in laboratory hoods or exhaust systems.

509.7.1 Duct cleanout. Ducts conveying combustible dust as part of a dust collection system shall be equipped with cleanouts that are provided with *approved access*, predesigned to be disassembled for cleaning, or engineered for automatic cleanouts. Where provided, cleanouts shall be located at the base of each vertical duct riser and at intervals not exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) in horizontal sections of duct.

509.8 Duct construction. Ducts used to convey hazardous exhaust shall be constructed of materials *approved* for installation in such an exhaust system and shall comply with one of the following:

1. Ducts shall be constructed of *approved* G90 galvanized sheet steel, with a minimum nominal thickness as specified in Table 509.8.
2. Ducts used in systems exhausting nonflammable corrosive fumes or vapors shall be constructed of nonmetallic materials that exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and that are *listed* and *labeled* for the application.

Where the products being exhausted are detrimental to the duct material, the ducts shall be constructed of alternative materials that are compatible with the exhaust.

TABLE 509.8—MINIMUM DUCT THICKNESS

DIAMETER OF DUCT OR MAXIMUM SIDE DIMENSION	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS		
	Nonabrasive materials	Nonabrasive/abrasive materials	Abrasive materials
0–8 inches	0.028 inch (No. 24 gage)	0.034 inch (No. 22 gage)	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)
9–18 inches	0.034 inch (No. 22 gage)	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)
19–30 inches	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)	0.064 inch (No. 16 gage)
Over 30 inches	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)	0.064 inch (No. 16 gage)	0.079 inch (No. 14 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

509.8.1 Duct joints. Ducts shall be made tight with lap joints having a minimum lap of 1 inch (25 mm). Joints used in ANSI/SMACNA Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards and ANSI/SMACNA Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards are also acceptable.

509.8.2 Clearance to combustibles. Ducts shall have a *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Table 509.8.2. Exhaust gases having temperatures in excess of 600°F (316°C) shall be exhausted to a *chimney* in accordance with Section 510.2.

TABLE 509.8.2—CLEARANCE TO COMBUSTIBLES

TYPE OF EXHAUST OR TEMPERATURE OF EXHAUST (°F)	CLEARANCE TO COMBUSTIBLES (inches)
Less than 100	1
100–600	12
Flammable vapors	6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

509.8.3 Explosion relief. Systems exhausting potentially explosive mixtures shall be protected with an *approved* explosion relief system or by an *approved* explosion prevention system designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 69. An explosion relief

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

system shall be designed to minimize the structural and mechanical damage resulting from an explosion or deflagration within the exhaust system. An explosion prevention system shall be designed to prevent an explosion or deflagration from occurring.

509.9 Supports. Ducts shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm). Supports shall be constructed of noncombustible material.

SECTION 510—DUST, STOCK AND REFUSE CONVEYING SYSTEMS

510.1 Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems. Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems shall comply with the provisions of Section 509, Sections 510.1.1 through 510.2 and the *Fire Code of New York State*.

510.1.1 Collectors and separators. Collectors and separators involving such systems as centrifugal separators, bag filter systems and similar devices, and associated supports shall be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall be located on the exterior of the *building* or structure. A collector or separator shall not be located nearer than 10 feet (3048 mm) to combustible construction or to an unprotected wall or floor opening, unless the collector is provided with a metal vent pipe that extends above the highest part of any roof with a distance of 30 feet (9144 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Collectors such as "Point of Use" collectors, close extraction weld fume collectors, spray finishing booths, stationary grinding tables, sanding booths, and integrated or machine-mounted collectors shall be permitted to be installed indoors provided that the installation is in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State* and NFPA 70.
2. Collectors in independent exhaust systems handling combustible dusts shall be permitted to be installed indoors provided that such collectors are installed in compliance with the *Fire Code of New York State* and NFPA 70.

510.1.2 Discharge pipe. Discharge piping shall conform to the requirements for ducts, including *clearances* required for high-heat *appliances*, as contained in this code. A delivery pipe from a cyclone collector shall not convey refuse directly into the firebox of a boiler, furnace, Dutch oven, refuse burner, incinerator or other *appliance*.

510.1.3 Conveying systems exhaust discharge. An exhaust system shall discharge to the outside of the *building* either directly by flue or indirectly through the bin or vault into which the system discharges except where the contaminants have been removed. Exhaust system discharge shall be permitted to be recirculated provided that the solid particulate has been removed at a minimum efficiency of 99.9 percent at 10 microns (10.01 mm), vapor concentrations are less than 25 percent of the LFL, and *approved equipment* is used to monitor the vapor concentration.

510.1.4 Spark protection. The outlet of an open-air exhaust terminal shall be protected with an *approved* metal or other noncombustible screen to prevent the entry of sparks.

510.1.5 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of the *Fire Code of New York State* on all systems that convey combustible dust or combustible refuse or stock that produces combustible dusts in such a manner that the concentration and conditions could create a fire or explosion hazard. Determination of concentrations or conditions that are deemed to not create a fire or explosion hazard shall be based on a Dust Hazard Analysis prepared in accordance with Section 2203.2 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

510.1.5.1 Screens. Where a screen is installed in a safety relief vent, the screen shall be attached so as to permit ready release under the explosion pressure.

510.1.5.2 Hoods. The relief vent shall be provided with an *approved* noncombustible cowl or hood, or with a counterbalanced relief valve or cover arranged to prevent the escape of hazardous materials, gases or liquids.

510.2 Exhaust outlets. Outlets for exhaust that exceed 600°F (315°C) shall be designed as a *chimney* in accordance with Table 510.2.

TABLE 510.2—CONSTRUCTION, CLEARANCE AND TERMINATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SINGLE-WALL METAL CHIMNEYS

CHIMNEYS SERVING	MINIMUM THICKNESS		TERMINATION				CLEARANCE			
	Walls (inch)	Lining	Above roof opening (feet)	Above any part of building within (feet)			Combustible construction (inches)		Noncombustible construction	
				10	25	50	Interior inst.	Exterior inst.	Interior inst.	Exterior inst.
High-heat appliances (Over 2,000°F)[a]	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	$4^1/_2$″ laid on $4^1/_2$″ bed	20	—	—	20	See Note c			
Low-heat appliances (1,000°F normal operation)	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	None	3	2	—	—	18	6	Up to 18″ diameter, 2″ Over 18″ diameter, 4″	
Medium-heat appliances (2,000°F maximum)[b]	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	Up to 18″ dia.—$2^1/_2$″ Over 18″—$4^1/_2$″ on $4^1/_2$″ bed	10	—	10	—	36	24		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. Lining shall extend from bottom to top of outlet.

b. Lining shall extend from 24 inches below connector to 24 feet above.

c. Clearance shall be as specified by the design engineer and shall have sufficient clearance from *buildings* and structures to avoid overheating combustible materials (maximum 160°F).

SECTION 511—SUBSLAB SOIL EXHAUST SYSTEMS

511.1 General. Where a subslab soil exhaust system is provided, the duct shall conform to the requirements of this section.

511.2 Materials. Subslab soil exhaust system duct material shall be air duct material *listed* and *labeled* to the requirements of UL 181 for Class 0 air ducts, or any of the following piping materials that comply with the *Plumbing Code of New York State* as *building* sanitary drainage and vent pipe: cast iron; galvanized steel; copper or copper-alloy pipe and tube of a weight not less than type DWV; and plastic piping.

511.3 Grade. Exhaust system ducts shall not be trapped and shall have a minimum slope of $^1/_8$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1 percent slope).

511.4 Termination. Subslab soil exhaust system ducts shall extend through the roof and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof and not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from any operable openings or air intake.

511.5 Identification. Subslab soil exhaust ducts shall be permanently identified within each floor level by means of a tag, stencil or other *approved* marking.

SECTION 512—SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEMS

[F] 512.1 Scope and purpose. This section applies to mechanical and passive smoke control systems that are required by the *Building Code of New York State* or the *Fire Code of New York State*. The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. These provisions are not intended for the preservation of contents, the timely restoration of operations, or for assistance in fire suppression or overhaul activities. Smoke control systems regulated by this section serve a different purpose than the smoke and heat removal provisions found in Section 910 of the *Building Code of New York State* or the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.2 General design requirements. *Buildings*, structures, or parts thereof required by the *Building Code of New York State* or the *Fire Code of New York State* to have a smoke control system or systems shall have such systems designed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 909 of the *Building Code of New York State* and the generally accepted and well-established principles of engineering relevant to the design. The *construction documents* shall include sufficient information and detail to describe adequately the elements of the design necessary for the proper implementation of the smoke control systems. These documents shall be accompanied with sufficient information and analysis to demonstrate compliance with these provisions.

[F] 512.3 Special inspection and test requirements. In addition to the ordinary inspection and test requirements that *buildings*, structures and parts thereof are required to undergo, smoke control systems subject to the provisions of Section 909 of the *Building Code of New York State* shall undergo special inspections and tests sufficient to verify the proper commissioning of the smoke control design in its final installed condition. The design submission accompanying the *construction documents* shall clearly detail procedures and methods to be used and the items subject to such inspections and tests. Such commissioning shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice and, where possible, based on published standards for the particular testing involved. The special inspections and tests required by this section shall be conducted under the same terms as found in Section 1704 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[F] 512.4 Analysis. A rational analysis supporting the types of smoke control systems to be employed, their methods of operation, the systems supporting them and the methods of construction to be utilized shall accompany the submitted *construction documents* and shall include, but not be limited to, the items indicated in Sections 512.4.1 through 512.4.7.

[F] 512.4.1 Stack effect. The system shall be designed such that the maximum probable normal or reverse stack effects will not adversely interfere with the system's capabilities. In determining the maximum probable stack effects, altitude, elevation, weather history and interior temperatures shall be used.

[F] 512.4.2 Temperature effect of fire. Buoyancy and expansion caused by the design fire in accordance with Section 512.9 shall be analyzed. The system shall be designed such that these effects do not adversely interfere with its capabilities.

[F] 512.4.3 Wind effect. The design shall consider the adverse effects of wind. Such consideration shall be consistent with the wind-loading provisions of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.4.4 HVAC systems. The design shall consider the effects of the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems on both smoke and fire transport. The analysis shall include all permutations of systems' status. The design shall consider the effects of fire on the HVAC systems.

[F] 512.4.5 Climate. The design shall consider the effects of low temperatures on systems, property and occupants. Air inlets and exhausts shall be located so as to prevent snow or ice blockage.

[F] 512.4.6 Duration of operation. All portions of active or engineered smoke control systems shall be capable of continued operation after detection of the fire event for a period of not less than either 20 minutes or 1.5 times the calculated egress time, whichever is greater.

[F] 512.4.7 Smoke control system interaction. The design shall consider the interaction effects of the operation of multiple smoke control systems for all design scenarios.

[F] 512.5 Smoke barrier construction. Smoke barriers required for passive smoke control and a smoke control system using the pressurization method shall comply with Section 709 of the *Building Code of New York State*. The maximum allowable leakage area shall be the aggregate area calculated using the following leakage area ratios:

1. Walls: $A/A_w = 0.00100$.
2. Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways: $A/A_w = 0.00035$.
3. Enclosed exit access stairways and ramps and all other shafts: $A/A_w = 0.00150$.
4. Floors and roofs: $A/A_F = 0.00050$.

where:

A = Total leakage area, square feet (m^2).

A_F = Unit floor or roof area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

A_w = Unit wall area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

The leakage area ratios shown do not include openings created by gaps around doors and operable windows. The total leakage area of the smoke barrier shall be determined in accordance with Section 512.5.1 and tested in accordance with Section 512.5.2.

[F] 512.5.1 Total leakage area. Total leakage area of the barrier is the product of the smoke barrier gross area times the allowable leakage area ratio, plus the area of other openings such as gaps around doors and operable windows.

[F] 512.5.2 Testing of leakage area. Compliance with the maximum total leakage area shall be determined by achieving the minimum air pressure difference across the barrier with the system in the smoke control mode for mechanical smoke control systems utilizing the pressurization method. Compliance with the maximum total leakage area of passive smoke control systems shall be verified through methods such as door fan testing or other methods, as *approved* by the fire code official.

[F] 512.5.3 Opening protection. Openings in smoke barriers shall be protected by automatic-closing devices actuated by the required controls for the mechanical smoke control system. Door openings shall be protected by door assemblies complying with the requirements of the *Building Code of New York State* for doors in smoke barriers.

Exceptions:

1. Passive smoke control systems with automatic-closing devices actuated by spot-type smoke detectors *listed* for releasing service installed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. Fixed openings between smoke zones that are protected utilizing the airflow method.
3. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where a pair of opposite-swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 512.5.3.1, the doors shall not be required to be protected in accordance with Section 716 of the *Building Code of New York State*. The doors shall be close-fitting within operational tolerances and shall not have a center mullion or undercuts in excess of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm), louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops and astragals or rabbets at meeting edges and, where permitted by the door manufacturer's listing, positive-latching devices are not required.
4. In Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, where such doors are special-purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies installed in accordance with Section 1010.3.3 of the *Building Code of New York State* and are automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.5 of the *Building Code of New York State*.
5. Group I-3.

6. Openings between smoke zones with clear ceiling heights of 14 feet (4267 mm) or greater and bank down capacity of greater than 20 minutes as determined by the design fire size.

[F] 512.5.3.1 Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, where doors are installed across a *corridor*, the doors shall be automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.5 of the *Building Code of New York State* and shall have a vision panel with fire-protection-rated glazing materials in fire-protection-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested.

[F] 512.5.3.2 Ducts and air transfer openings. Ducts and air transfer openings are required to be protected with a minimum Class II, 250°F (121°C) *smoke damper* complying with the *Building Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.6 Pressurization method. The primary mechanical means of controlling smoke shall be by pressure differences across smoke barriers. Maintenance of a tenable environment is not required in the smoke control zone of fire origin.

[F] 512.6.1 Minimum pressure difference. The pressure difference across a smoke barrier used to separate smoke zones shall be not less than 0.05-inch water gage (12.4 Pa) in *buildings* equipped throughout with automatic sprinkler systems.

In *buildings* permitted to not be equipped throughout with automatic sprinkler systems, the smoke control system shall be designed to achieve pressure differences not less than two times the maximum calculated pressure difference produced by the design fire.

[F] 512.6.2 Maximum pressure difference. The maximum air pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be determined by required door-opening or closing forces. The actual force required to open exit doors when the system is in the smoke control mode shall be in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*. Opening and closing forces for other doors shall be determined by standard engineering methods for the resolution of forces and reactions. The calculated force to set a side-hinged, swinging door in motion shall be determined by:

Equation 5-2 $F = F_{de} + K(WA\Delta P)/2(W - d)$

where:

A = Door area, square feet (m^2).

d = Distance from door handle to latch edge of door, feet (m).

F = Total door opening force, pounds (N).

F_{dc} = Force required to overcome closing device, pounds (N).

K = Coefficient 5.2 (1.0).

W = Door width, feet (m).

ΔP = Design pressure difference, inches (Pa) water gage.

[F] 512.6.3 Pressurized stairways and elevator hoistways. Where stairways or elevator hoistways are pressurized, such pressurization systems shall comply with Section 512 as smoke control systems, in addition to the requirements of Sections 909.20 of the *Building Code of New York State* and Section 909.21 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.7 Airflow design method. Where *approved* by the code official, smoke migration through openings fixed in a permanently open position, which are located between smoke control zones by the use of the airflow method, shall be permitted. The design airflows shall be in accordance with this section. Airflow shall be directed to limit smoke migration from the fire zone. The geometry of openings shall be considered to prevent flow reversal from turbulent effects. Smoke control systems using the airflow method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

[F] 512.7.1 Prohibited conditions. This method shall not be employed where either the quantity of air or the velocity of the airflow will adversely affect other portions of the smoke control system, unduly intensify the fire, disrupt plume dynamics or interfere with exiting. Airflow toward the fire shall not exceed 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s). Where the calculated airflow exceeds this limit, the airflow method shall not be used.

[F] 512.8 Exhaust method. Where *approved* by the building official, mechanical smoke control for large enclosed volumes, such as in atriums or malls, shall be permitted to utilize the exhaust method. Smoke control systems using the exhaust method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

[F] 512.8.1 Exhaust rate. The height of the lowest horizontal surface of the accumulating smoke layer shall be maintained not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above any walking surface that forms a portion of a required egress system within the smoke zone.

[F] 512.9 Design fire. The design fire shall be based on a rational analysis performed by the *registered design professional* and *approved* by the code official. The design fire shall be based on the analysis in accordance with Section 512.4 and this section.

[F] 512.9.1 Factors considered. The engineering analysis shall include the characteristics of the fuel, fuel load, effects included by the fire and whether the fire is likely to be steady or unsteady.

[F] 512.9.2 Design fire fuel. Determination of the design fire shall include consideration of the type of fuel, fuel spacing and configuration.

[F] 512.9.3 Heat-release assumptions. The analysis shall make use of the best available data from *approved* sources and shall not be based on excessively stringent limitations of combustible material.

[F] 512.9.4 Sprinkler effectiveness assumptions. A documented engineering analysis shall be provided for conditions that assume fire growth is halted at the time of sprinkler activation.

[F] 512.10 Equipment. *Equipment* such as, but not limited to, fans, ducts, automatic dampers and balance dampers shall be suitable for their intended use, suitable for the probable exposure temperatures that the rational analysis indicates, and as *approved* by the code official.

[F] 512.10.1 Exhaust fans. Components of exhaust fans shall be rated and certified by the manufacturer for the probable temperature rise to which the components will be exposed. This temperature rise shall be computed by:

Equation 5-3 $T_s = (Q_c/mc) + (T_a)$

where:

c = Specific heat of smoke at smoke-layer temperature, Btu/lb°F (kJ/kg × K).

m = Exhaust rate, pounds per second (kg/s).

Q_c = Convective heat output of fire, Btu/s (kW).

T_a = Ambient temperature, °F (K).

T_s = Smoke temperature, °F (K).

Exception: Reduced T_s as calculated based on the assurance of adequate dilution air.

[F] 512.10.2 Ducts. Duct materials and joints shall be capable of withstanding the probable temperatures and pressures to which they are exposed as determined in accordance with Section 512.10.1. Ducts shall be constructed and supported in accordance with Chapter 6. Ducts shall be leak tested to 1.5 times the maximum design pressure in accordance with nationally accepted practices. Measured leakage shall not exceed 5 percent of design flow. Results of such testing shall be a part of the documentation procedure. Ducts shall be supported directly from fire-resistance-rated structural elements of the *building* by substantial, noncombustible supports.

Exception: Flexible connections, for the purpose of vibration isolation, that are constructed of *approved* fire-resistance-rated materials.

[F] 512.10.3 Equipment, inlets and outlets. *Equipment* shall be located so as to not expose uninvolved portions of the *building* to an additional fire hazard. Outdoor air inlets shall be located so as to minimize the potential for introducing smoke or flame into the *building*. Exhaust outlets shall be so located as to minimize reintroduction of smoke into the *building* and to limit exposure of the *building* or adjacent *buildings* to an additional fire hazard.

[F] 512.10.4 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers, regardless of the purpose for which they are installed within the smoke control system, shall be *listed* and conform to the requirements of *approved* recognized standards.

[F] 512.10.5 Fans. In addition to other requirements, belt-driven fans shall have 1.5 times the number of belts required for the design duty with the minimum number of belts being two. Fans shall be selected for stable performance based on normal temperature and, where applicable, elevated temperature. Calculations and manufacturer's fan curves shall be part of the documentation procedures. Fans shall be supported and restrained by noncombustible devices in accordance with the structural design requirements of the *Building Code of New York State*. Motors driving fans shall not be operating beyond their nameplate horsepower (kilowatts) as determined from measurement of actual current draw. Motors driving fans shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.

[F] 512.11 Standby power. The smoke control system shall be supplied with standby power in accordance with Section 2702 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.11.1 Equipment room. The standby power source and its transfer switches shall be in a room separate from the normal power transformers and switch gear and ventilated directly to and from the exterior. The room shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *Building Code of New York State* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *Building Code of New York State*, or both.

[F] 512.11.2 Power sources and power surges. Elements of the smoke management system relying on volatile memories or the like shall be supplied with uninterruptible power sources of sufficient duration to span 15-minute primary power interruption. Elements of the smoke management system susceptible to power surges shall be suitably protected by conditioners, suppressors or other *approved* means.

[F] 512.12 Detection and control systems. Fire detection systems providing control input or output signals to mechanical smoke control systems or elements thereof shall comply with the requirements of Section 907 of the *Building Code of New York State*. Such systems shall be equipped with a control unit complying with UL 864 and *listed* as smoke control *equipment*.

[F] 512.12.1 Verification. Control systems for mechanical smoke control systems shall include provisions for verification. Verification shall include positive confirmation of actuation, testing, manual override and the presence of power downstream of all disconnects. A preprogrammed weekly test sequence shall report abnormal conditions audibly, visually and by printed report. The preprogrammed weekly test shall operate all devices, *equipment* and components used for smoke control.

Exception: Where verification of individual components tested through the preprogrammed weekly testing sequence will interfere with, and produce unwanted effects to, normal *building* operation, such individual components are permitted to be bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly testing, where *approved* by the building official and in accordance with both of the following:

1. Where the operation of components is bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test, presence of power downstream of all disconnects shall be verified weekly by a *listed* control unit.

2. Testing of all components bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test shall be in accordance with Section 909.20.6 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.12.2 Wiring. In addition to meeting the requirements of NFPA 70, all wiring, regardless of voltage, shall be fully enclosed within continuous raceways.

[F] 512.12.3 Activation. Smoke control systems shall be activated in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State* or the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.12.4 Automatic control. Where complete automatic control is required or used, the automatic control sequences shall be initiated from an appropriately zoned automatic sprinkler system complying with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *Fire Code of New York State*, from manual controls provided with *ready access* for the fire department, and any smoke detectors required by engineering analysis.

[F] 512.13 Control-air tubing. Control-air tubing shall be of sufficient size to meet the required response times. Tubing shall be flushed clean and dry prior to final connections. Tubing shall be adequately supported and protected from damage. Tubing passing through concrete or masonry shall be sleeved and protected from abrasion and electrolytic action.

[F] 512.13.1 Materials. Control-air tubing shall be hard-drawn copper, Type L, ACR in accordance with ASTM B42, ASTM B43, ASTM B68, ASTM B88, ASTM B251 and ASTM B280. Fittings shall be wrought copper or copper alloy, solder type in accordance with ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22. Changes in direction shall be made with appropriate tool bends. Copper-alloy compression-type fittings shall be used at final connection to devices; other joints shall be brazed using a BCuP5 brazing alloy with solidus above 1,100°F (593°C) and liquidus below 1,500°F (816°C). Brazing flux shall be used on copper-to-copper alloy joints only.

Exception: Nonmetallic tubing used within control panels and at the final connection to devices provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Tubing shall comply with the requirements of Section 602.3.5.
2. Tubing and connected device shall be completely enclosed within a galvanized or paint-grade steel enclosure having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage). Entry to the enclosure shall be by copper tubing with a protective grommet of Neoprene or Teflon or by suitable brass compression to male barbed adapter.
3. Tubing shall be identified by appropriately documented coding.
4. Tubing shall be neatly tied and supported within the enclosure. Tubing bridging cabinets and doors or movable devices shall be of sufficient length to avoid tension and excessive stress. Tubing shall be protected against abrasion. Tubing connected to devices on doors shall be fastened along hinges.

[F] 512.13.2 Isolation from other functions. Control tubing serving other than smoke control functions shall be isolated by automatic isolation valves or shall be an independent system.

[F] 512.13.3 Testing. Control-air tubing shall be tested at three times the operating pressure for not less than 30 minutes without any noticeable loss in gauge pressure prior to final connection to devices.

[F] 512.14 Marking and identification. The detection and control systems shall be clearly marked at all junctions, accesses and terminations.

[F] 512.15 Control diagrams. Identical control diagrams shall be provided and maintained as required by the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.16 Fire fighter's smoke control panel. A fire fighter's smoke control panel for fire department emergency response purposes only shall be provided in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.17 System response time. Smoke control system activation shall comply with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.18 Acceptance testing. Devices, *equipment*, components and sequences shall be tested in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[F] 512.19 System acceptance. Acceptance of the smoke control system shall be in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

SECTION 513—ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEMS

513.1 General. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall be installed in accordance with this section. Where required for purposes of energy conservation, energy recovery ventilation systems shall comply with the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*. Ducted heat recovery ventilators shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1812. Nonducted heat recovery ventilators shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1815.

513.2 Prohibited applications. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall not be used in the following systems:

1. Hazardous exhaust systems covered in Section 509.
2. Dust, stock and refuse systems that convey explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dust.
3. Smoke control systems covered in Section 512.
4. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems serving Type I hoods.
5. Clothes dryer exhaust systems covered in Section 504.

Exception: The application of ERV *equipment* that recovers sensible heat only utilizing coil-type heat exchangers shall not be limited by this section.

513.3 Access. A means of *access* shall be provided to the heat exchanger and other components of the system as required for service, maintenance, repair or replacement.

513.4 Recirculated air. Air conveyed within energy recovery systems shall not be considered as recirculated air where the energy recovery ventilation system is constructed to limit cross-leakage between air streams to less than 10 percent of the total airflow design capacity.

CHAPTER

6 DUCT SYSTEMS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 6 addresses duct systems used in HVAC systems and some exhaust systems. Some exhaust system ducts are addressed in Chapter 5, such as kitchen exhaust ducts and clothes dryer exhaust ducts. This chapter addresses air plenums such as above-ceiling and below-floor plenums. Section 607 covers fire and smoke dampers, consistent with the requirements of the Building Code of New York State.*

SECTION 601—GENERAL

601.1 Scope. Duct systems used for the movement of air in air-conditioning, heating, ventilating and exhaust systems shall conform to the provisions of this chapter except as otherwise specified in Chapters 5 and 7.

Exception: Ducts discharging combustible material directly into any *combustion* chamber shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 82.

[BE] 601.2 Air movement in egress elements. Corridors shall not serve as supply, return, exhaust, relief or *ventilation air* ducts.

Exceptions:

1. Use of a corridor as a source of *makeup air* for exhaust systems in rooms that open directly onto such corridors, including toilet rooms, bathrooms, dressing rooms, smoking lounges and janitor closets, shall be permitted, provided that each such corridor is directly supplied with outdoor air at a rate greater than the rate of *makeup air* taken from the corridor.
2. Where located within a *dwelling unit*, the use of corridors for conveying return air shall not be prohibited.
3. Where located within tenant spaces of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) or less in area, use of corridors for conveying return air is permitted.
4. Transfer air movement required to maintain pressurization difference within health care facilities in accordance with ASHRAE 170.

[BE] 601.2.1 Corridor ceiling. Use of the space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above as a return air *plenum* is permitted for one or more of the following conditions:

1. The corridor is not required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. The corridor is separated from the *plenum* by fire-resistance-rated construction.
3. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon activation of the air-handling unit smoke detectors required by this code.
4. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon detection of sprinkler waterflow where the *building* is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.
5. The space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above the corridor is used as a component of an *approved* engineered smoke control system.

[BE] 601.3 Exits. *Equipment* and ductwork for exit enclosure ventilation shall comply with one of the following items:

1. Such *equipment* and ductwork shall be located exterior to the *building* and shall be directly connected to the exit enclosure by ductwork enclosed in construction as required by the *Building Code of New York State* for shafts.
2. Where such *equipment* and ductwork are located within the exit enclosure, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the *exhaust air* shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or such air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required by the *Building Code of New York State* for shafts.
3. Where located within the *building*, such *equipment* and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the *building*, including other mechanical *equipment*, with construction as required by the *Building Code of New York State* for shafts.

In each case, openings into fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by self-closing fire-resistance-rated devices in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State* for enclosure wall opening protectives. Exit enclosure ventilation systems shall be independent of other *building* ventilation systems.

601.4 Contamination prevention. Exhaust ducts under positive pressure, *chimneys* and vents shall not extend into or pass through ducts or *plenums*.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust systems located in ceiling return air *plenums* over spaces that are permitted to have 10 percent recirculation in accordance with Section 403.2.1, Item 4. The exhaust duct joints, seams and connections shall comply with Section 603.9.
2. This section shall not apply to *chimneys* and vents that pass through *plenums* where such venting systems comply with one of the following requirements:
   2.1. The venting system shall be *listed* for positive pressure applications and shall be sealed in accordance with the vent manufacturer's instructions.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2.2. The venting system shall be installed such that fittings and joints between sections are not installed in the above ceiling space.

2.3. The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with sealed joints separating the interior of the conduit or enclosure from the ceiling space.

601.5 Return air openings. Return air openings for heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems shall comply with all of the following:

1. Openings shall not be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) measured in any direction from an open combustion chamber or draft hood of another *appliance* located in the same room or space.
2. Return air for heating or air-conditioning systems shall not be taken from a hazardous or insanitary location or a refrigeration room as defined in this code.
3. The amount of return air taken from any room or space shall be not greater than the flow rate of supply air delivered to such room or space.
4. Return and transfer openings shall be sized in accordance with the *appliance* or *equipment* manufacturer's installation instructions, ACCA Manual D or the design of the *registered design professional*.
5. Return air taken from one *dwelling unit* shall not be discharged into another *dwelling unit*.
6. Taking return air from a crawl space shall not be accomplished through a direct connection to the return side of a forced air furnace. Transfer openings in the crawl space enclosure shall not be prohibited.
7. Return air for heating or air-conditioning systems shall not be taken from a bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, boiler room, furnace room or unconditioned attic.
8. Return air from a closet shall serve only the closet and shall not require a dedicated closet supply duct.
9. Return air taken from a closet smaller than 30 square feet (2.8 m^2) shall require the closet door be undercut not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) or have either a louvered door or an air transfer grille, each with a net free area of not less than 30 square inches (19 355 mm^2).
10. Return air for heating or air-conditioning systems shall not be taken from indoor swimming pool enclosures and associated deck areas.

    Exceptions:

    1. Where the air from such spaces is dehumidified in accordance with Section 403.2.1, Item 2.
    2. Dedicated HVAC systems serving only such spaces.

Exceptions:

1. Taking return air for heating or air-conditioning systems from a kitchen is not prohibited where such return air openings serve the kitchen and are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the cooking *appliances*.
2. Taking return air for heating or air-conditioning systems from a kitchen is not prohibited in a *dwelling unit* where the kitchen and living spaces are in a single room and the cooking *appliance* is electric and located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in any direction from the return air intake opening.
3. Dedicated forced air systems serving only the garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.

SECTION 602—PLENUMS

602.1 General. Supply, return, exhaust, relief and *ventilation air plenums* shall be in accordance with this section. Fuel-fired *appliances* shall not be installed within a *plenum*.

602.1.1 Locations limited. *Plenums* shall be limited to uninhabited crawl spaces, above a ceiling or below the floor, attic spaces, mechanical equipment rooms and the framing cavities addressed in Section 602.2.

602.1.2 Limited to a fire area. *Plenums* shall be limited to one fire area. Air systems shall be ducted directly from the boundary of the fire area served to the air-handling equipment.

602.1.3 Fuel-fired appliances. Fuel-fired *appliances* shall not be installed within a *plenum*.

602.2 Construction of plenums. *Plenum* enclosure construction materials that are exposed to the airflow shall comply with the requirements of Section 703.3 of the *Building Code of New York State* or such materials shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

The use of gypsum boards to form *plenums* shall be limited to systems where the air temperatures do not exceed 125°F (52°C) and the building and mechanical system design conditions are such that the gypsum board surface temperature will be maintained above the airstream dew-point temperature. Supply air *plenums* formed by gypsum boards shall not be incorporated in air-handling systems utilizing *direct evaporative cooling* systems.

602.2.1 Stud cavity and joist space plenums. Stud wall cavities and the spaces between solid floor joists to be utilized as air *plenums* shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Such cavities or spaces shall not be utilized as a *plenum* for supply air.
2. Such cavities or spaces shall not be part of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. Stud wall cavities shall not convey air from more than one floor level.

4. Stud wall cavities and joist space *plenums* shall comply with the floor penetration protection requirements of the *Building Code of New York State*.
5. Stud wall cavities and joist space *plenums* shall be isolated from adjacent concealed spaces by *approved* fireblocking as required in the *Building Code of New York State*.
6. Stud wall cavities in the outside walls of *building* envelope assemblies shall not be utilized as air *plenums*.

602.3 Materials within plenums. Materials within *plenums* shall be noncombustible or shall be in compliance with the applicable requirements in Sections 602.3.1 through 602.3.10.

Exceptions:

1. Materials exposed within *plenums* in one- and two-family *dwellings*.
2. Combustible materials fully enclosed within one of the following:
   - 2.1. Continuous noncombustible raceways or enclosures.
   - 2.2. *Approved* gypsum board assemblies.
   - 2.3. Materials *listed* and *labeled* for installation within a *plenum* and *listed* for the application.
3. Materials in Group H, Division 5 fabrication areas and the areas above and below the fabrication area that share a common air recirculation path with the fabrication area.

602.3.1 Ducts, connectors, duct coverings, linings and tape. Rigid and flexible ducts and connectors shall conform to Section 603. Duct coverings, linings, tape and connectors shall conform to Sections 603 and 604.

602.3.2 Smoke detectors. Smoke detectors shall be *listed* and *labeled*.

602.3.3 Wiring. Combustible electrical wires and cables and optical fiber cables exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with NFPA 262, or shall be installed in metal raceways or metal sheathed cable. Combustible optical fiber and communication raceways exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.5, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 2024. Only *plenum*-rated wires and cables shall be installed in *plenum*-rated raceways.

602.3.4 Fire sprinkler piping. Plastic fire sprinkler piping exposed within a *plenum* shall be used only in wet pipe systems and shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 1887.

602.3.5 Pneumatic tubing. Combustible pneumatic tubing exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 1820.

602.3.6 Discrete electrical, plumbing and mechanical products in plenums. Where discrete electrical, plumbing and mechanical products and appurtenances are located in a *plenum* and have exposed combustible material, they shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 2043.

Exception: Electrical equipment with metallic enclosures exposed within a *plenum*

602.3.7 Foam plastic in plenums as interior finish or interior trim. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim shall exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, and shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 286 and meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1 of the *Building Code of New York State*. As an alternative to testing to NFPA 286, the foam plastic shall be *approved* based on tests conducted in accordance with Section 2603.9 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

Exceptions:

1. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by a thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4 of the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm).
3. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by not less than a 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.

602.3.8 Plastic plumbing piping and tubing. Plastic piping and tubing used in plumbing systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a flame spread index not greater than 25 and a smoke-developed index not greater than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

Exception: Plastic water distribution piping and tubing *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2846 as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), and installed in accordance with its listing.

602.3.9 Pipe and duct insulation within plenums. Pipe and duct insulation contained within *plenums*, including insulation adhesives, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231. Pipe and duct insulation shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Pipe and duct insulation shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Pipe and duct insulation shall not be used to reduce the maximum flame spread and smoke-developed indices except where the pipe or duct and its related insulation, coatings, and adhesives are tested as a composite assembly in accordance with Section 602.3.8.

602.3.10 Other combustible materials. Other combustible materials not covered by Section 602.3 shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

[BS] 602.4 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, *plenum* spaces shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be designed and constructed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the *plenum* spaces during floods up to such elevation. If the *plenum* spaces are located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant equipment, they shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

SECTION 603—DUCT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

603.1 General. An air distribution system shall be designed and installed to supply the required distribution of air. The installation of an air distribution system shall not affect the fire protection requirements specified in the *Building Code of New York State*. Ducts shall be constructed, braced, reinforced and installed to provide structural strength and durability.

603.2 Duct sizing. Ducts installed within a single *dwelling unit* shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual D, the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions or other *approved* methods. Ducts installed within all other *buildings* shall be sized in accordance with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* or other equivalent computation procedure.

603.3 Duct classification. Ducts shall be classified based on the maximum operating pressure of the duct at pressures of positive or negative 0.5, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 6.0 or 10.0 inches (1 inch w.c. = 248.7 Pa) of water column. The pressure classification of ducts shall equal or exceed the design pressure of the air distribution in which the ducts are utilized.

603.4 Metallic ducts. Metallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in the SMACNA 006: *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*.

Exception: Ducts installed within single *dwelling units* shall have a minimum thickness as specified in Table 603.4.

TABLE 603.4—DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS[a]

ROUND DUCT DIAMETER (inches)	STATIC PRESSURE			
	1/2-inch water gauge		1-inch water gauge	
	Thickness (inches)		Thickness (inches)	
	Galvanized	Aluminum	Galvanized	Aluminum
< 12	0.013	0.018	0.013	0.018
12 to14	0.013	0.018	0.016	0.023
15 to 17	0.016	0.023	0.019	0.027
18	0.016	0.023	0.024	0.034
19 to 20	0.019	0.027	0.024	0.034

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 603.4—DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS[a]—continued

RECTANGULAR DUCT DIMENSION (inches)	STATIC PRESSURE			
	½-inch water gauge		1-inch water gauge	
	Thickness (inches)		Thickness (inches)	
	Galvanized	Aluminum	Galvanized	Aluminum
≤ 8	0.013	0.018	0.013	0.018
9 to 10	0.013	0.018	0.016	0.023
11 to 12	0.016	0.023	0.019	0.027
13 to 16	0.019	0.027	0.019	0.027
17 to 18	0.019	0.027	0.024	0.034
19 to 20	0.024	0.034	0.024	0.034

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1-inch water gauge = 249 Pa.

a. Ductwork that exceeds 20 inches by dimension or exceeds a pressure of 1-inch water gauge shall be constructed in accordance with SMACNA 006: *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*.

603.4.1 Minimum fasteners. Round metallic ducts shall be mechanically fastened by means of not less than three sheet metal screws or rivets spaced equally around the joint.

Exception: Where a duct connection is made that is partially inaccessible, three screws or rivets shall be equally spaced on the exposed portion so as to prevent a hinge effect.

603.4.2 Duct lap. Crimp joints for round and oval metal ducts shall be lapped not less than 1 inch (25 mm) and the male end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct in the direction of airflow.

603.5 Nonmetallic ducts. Nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed with Class 0 or Class 1 duct material and shall comply with UL 181. Fibrous duct construction shall conform to the SMACNA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards* or NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*. The air temperature within nonmetallic ducts shall not exceed 250°F (121°C).

603.5.1 Gypsum ducts. The use of gypsum boards to form air shafts (ducts) shall be limited to return air systems where the air temperatures do not exceed 125°F (52°C) and the gypsum board surface temperature is maintained above the airstream dew-point temperature. Supply air ducts formed by gypsum boards shall not be incorporated in air-handling systems utilizing *direct evaporative cooling* systems.

603.5.2 Phenolic ducts. Nonmetallic phenolic ducts shall be constructed and installed in accordance with the SMACNA *Phenolic Duct Construction Standards.*

603.6 Flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors. Flexible air ducts, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall comply with Sections 603.6.1, 603.6.1.1, 603.6.3 and 603.6.4. Flexible air connectors, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall comply with Sections 603.6.2 through 603.6.4.

603.6.1 Flexible air ducts. Flexible air ducts, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall be tested in accordance with UL 181. Such ducts shall be *listed* and *labeled* as Class 0 or Class 1 flexible air ducts and shall be installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

603.6.1.1 Duct length. Flexible air ducts shall not be limited in length.

603.6.2 Flexible air connectors. Flexible air connectors, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall be tested in accordance with UL 181. Such connectors shall be *listed* and *labeled* as Class 0 or Class 1 flexible air connectors and shall be installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

603.6.2.1 Connector length. Flexible air connectors shall be limited in length to 14 feet (4267 mm).

603.6.2.2 Connector penetration limitations. Flexible air connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling.

603.6.3 Air temperature. The design temperature of air to be conveyed in flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall be less than 250°F (121°C).

603.6.4 Flexible air duct and air connector clearance. Flexible air ducts and air connectors shall be installed with a minimum *clearance* to an *appliance* as specified in the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

603.7 Rigid duct penetrations. Duct system penetrations of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs and air transfer openings in such *building* components shall be protected as required by Section 607. Ducts in a private garage that penetrate a wall or ceiling that separates a *dwelling* from a private garage shall be continuous, shall be constructed of sheet steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) and shall not have openings into the garage. Fire and *smoke dampers* are not required in such ducts passing through the wall or ceiling separating a *dwelling* from a private garage except where required by Chapter 7 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

603.8 Underground ducts. Ducts shall be *approved* for underground installation. Metallic ducts not having an *approved* protective coating shall be completely encased in not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete.

603.8.1 Slope. Ducts shall have a minimum slope of ⅛ inch per foot (10.4 mm/m) to allow drainage to a point provided with *access*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

603.8.2 Sealing. Ducts shall be sealed, secured and tested prior to concrete encasement or direct burial. Ducts shall be leak tested as required by Section C403 of the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*.

603.8.3 Plastic ducts and fittings. Plastic ducts shall be constructed of PVC having a minimum pipe stiffness of 8 psi (55 kPa) at 5 percent deflection when tested in accordance with ASTM D2412. Plastic duct fittings shall be constructed of either PVC or high-density polyethylene. Plastic duct and fittings shall be utilized in underground installations only. The maximum design temperature for systems utilizing plastic duct and fittings shall be 150°F (66°C).

603.9 Joints, seams and connections. Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections in metallic and nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in SMACNA 006: *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible* and NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*. Joints, longitudinal and transverse seams and connections in ductwork shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastic-plus-embedded-fabric systems, liquid sealants or tapes. Tapes and mastics used to seal fibrous glass ductwork shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 181A and shall be marked "181 A-P" for pressure-sensitive tape, "181 A-M" for mastic or "181 A-H" for heat-sensitive tape. Tapes and mastics used to seal metallic and flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181 B-FX" for pressure-sensitive tape or "181 B-M" for mastic. Duct connections to flanges of air distribution system *equipment* shall be sealed and mechanically fastened. Mechanical fasteners for use with flexible nonmetallic air ducts shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181 B-C." Closure systems used to seal all ductwork shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Exception: For ducts having a static pressure classification of less than 2 inches of water column (500 Pa), additional closure systems shall not be required for continuously welded joints and seams and locking-type joints and seams. This exception shall not apply to snaplock and button-lock type joints and seams located outside of conditioned spaces.

603.10 Supports. Ducts shall be supported in accordance with SMACNA 006: HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible. Flexible and other factory-made ducts shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

603.11 Furnace connections. Ducts connecting to a furnace shall have a *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions.

603.12 Condensation. Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of any duct.

[BS] 603.13 Flood hazard areas. For structures in flood hazard areas, ducts shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be designed and constructed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the ducts during floods up to such elevation. If the ducts are located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant equipment, the ducts shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

603.14 Location. Ducts shall not be installed in or within 4 inches (102 mm) of the earth, except where such ducts comply with Section 603.8.

603.15 Mechanical protection. Ducts installed in locations where they are exposed to mechanical damage by vehicles or from other causes shall be protected by *approved* barriers.

603.16 Weather protection. Ducts including linings, coverings and vibration isolation connectors installed on the exterior of the *building* shall be protected against the elements.

603.17 Air dispersion systems. Air dispersion systems shall:

1. Be installed entirely in exposed locations.
2. Be utilized in systems under positive pressure.
3. Not pass through or penetrate fire-resistant-rated construction.
4. Be *listed* and *labeled* in compliance with UL 2518.

603.18 Registers, grilles and diffusers. Duct registers, grilles and diffusers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Volume dampers or other means of supply air adjustment shall be provided in the branch ducts or at each individual duct register, grille or diffuser. Each volume damper or other means of supply air adjustment used in balancing shall be provided with *access*.

603.18.1 Floor registers. Floor registers shall resist, without structural failure, a 200-pound (90.8 kg) concentrated load on a 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) disc applied to the most critical area of the exposed face.

603.18.2 Prohibited locations. Diffusers, registers and grilles shall be prohibited in the floor or its upward extension within toilet and bathing rooms required by the *Building Code of New York State* to have smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surfaces.

Exception: *Dwelling units*.

SECTION 604—INSULATION

604.1 General. Duct insulation shall conform to the requirements of Sections 604.2 through 604.13 and the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*.

604.2 Surface temperature. Ducts that operate at temperatures exceeding 120°F (49°C) shall have sufficient thermal insulation to limit the exposed surface temperature to 120°F (49°C).

604.3 Coverings and linings. Duct coverings and linings, including adhesives where used, shall have a flame spread index not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index not more than 50, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231. Duct coverings and linings shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Coverings and linings shall be *listed* and *labeled*.

Exceptions:

1. Polyurethane foam insulation that is spray applied to the exterior of ducts in attics and crawl spaces shall be subject to all of the following requirements:
    1.1. The foam plastic insulation shall have a flame spread index not greater than 25 and a smoke-developed index not greater than 450, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231.
    1.2. The foam plastic insulation shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C).
    1.3. The foam plastic insulation complies with the requirements of Section 2603 of the *Building Code of New York State*.
    1.4. The foam plastic insulation is protected against ignition in accordance with the requirements of Section 2603.4.1.6 of the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. Duct coverings added to the outside of ducts and not contained in *plenums*, including adhesives where used, shall have a flame spread index not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index not more than 450, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231. Duct coverings and linings shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Coverings shall be *listed* and *labeled*.

604.4 Foam plastic insulation. Foam plastic used as duct coverings and linings shall conform to the requirements of Section 604.

604.5 Appliance insulation. *Listed* and *labeled appliances* that are internally insulated shall be considered as conforming to the requirements of Section 604.

604.6 Penetration of assemblies. Duct coverings shall not penetrate a wall or floor required to have a fire-resistance rating or required to be fireblocked.

604.7 Identification. °External duct insulation, except spray polyurethane foam, and factory-insulated flexible duct shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the thermal resistance *R*-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed indices of the composite materials. Duct insulation product *R*-values shall be based on insulation only, excluding air films, vapor retarders or other duct components, and shall be based on tested *C*-values at 75°F (24°C) mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with recognized industry procedures. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its *R*-value shall be determined as follows:

1. For duct board, duct liner and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.
2. For duct wrap, the installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.
3. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.
4. For spray polyurethane foam, the aged *R*-value per inch (mm), measured in accordance with recognized industry standards, shall be provided to the customer in writing at the time of foam application.

604.8 Lining installation. Linings shall be interrupted at the area of operation of a fire damper and at not less than 6 inches (152 mm) upstream of and 6 inches (152 mm) downstream of electric-resistance and fuel-burning heaters in a duct system. Metal nosings or sleeves shall be installed over exposed duct liner edges that face opposite the direction of airflow.

604.9 Thermal continuity. Where a duct liner has been interrupted, a duct covering of equal thermal performance shall be installed.

604.10 Service openings. Service openings shall not be concealed by duct coverings unless the exact location of the opening is properly identified.

604.11 Vapor retarders. Where ducts used for cooling are externally insulated, the insulation shall be covered with a vapor retarder having a maximum permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(Pa × s × m^2)] or aluminum foil having a minimum thickness of 2 mils (0.051 mm). Insulations having a permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(Pa × s × m^2)] or less shall not be required to be covered. Joints and seams shall be sealed to maintain the continuity of the vapor retarder.

Exception: A vapor retarder is not required for spray polyurethane foam insulation having a water vapor permeance of not greater than 3 perms per inch [1722 ng/(s × m^2 × Pa)] at the installed thickness.

604.12 Weatherproof barriers. Insulated exterior ducts shall be protected with an *approved* weatherproof barrier.

604.13 Internal insulation. Materials used as internal insulation and exposed to the airstream in ducts shall be shown to be durable when tested in accordance with UL 181. Exposed internal insulation that is not impermeable to water shall not be used to line ducts or *plenums* from the exit of a cooling coil to the downstream end of the drain pan.

SECTION 605—AIR FILTERS

605.1 General. Heating and air-conditioning systems shall be provided with *approved* air filters. Filters shall be installed such that all return air, outdoor air and *makeup air* is filtered upstream from any heat exchanger or coil. Filters shall be installed in an *approved* convenient location. Liquid adhesive coatings used on filters shall have a flash point not lower than 325°F (163°C).

[NY] 605.1.1 Clean air delivery capability. In Groups A, B, E, M, and I *occupancies*, each mechanical system shall meet the requirements in Section 605.1.1.1.

Exception: *Occupiable spaces* where 100% of the *supply air* meets High-efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filtration. Air Filters shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ISO 29463, MIL-STD-282, IEST-RP-CC00, or IEST-RP-CC007.

[NY] 605.1.1.1 Airflow for increased filtration. Mechanical systems shall be sized to accommodate a design airflow at a total static pressure drop which assumes the utilization of a *supply air* filter with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of no less than 13. Air Filters shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.

605.2 Approval. Media-type and electrostatic-type air filters shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Media-type air filters shall comply with UL 900. High-efficiency particulate air filters shall comply with UL 586. Electrostatic-type air filters shall comply with UL 867. Air filters utilized within *dwelling units* shall be designed for the intended application and shall not be required to be *listed* and *labeled*.

605.3 Airflow over the filter. Ducts shall be constructed to allow an even distribution of air over the entire filter.

SECTION 606—SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS CONTROL

606.1 Controls required. Air distribution systems shall be equipped with smoke detectors *listed* and *labeled* for installation in air distribution systems, as required by this section. Duct smoke detectors shall comply with UL 268A. Other smoke detectors shall comply with UL 268.

606.2 Where required. Smoke detectors shall be installed where indicated in Sections 606.2.1 through 606.2.3.

Exception: Smoke detectors shall not be required where air distribution systems are incapable of spreading smoke beyond the enclosing walls, floors and ceilings of the room or space in which the smoke is generated.

606.2.1 Return air systems. Smoke detectors shall be installed in return air systems with a design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s), in the return air duct or *plenum* upstream of any filters, *exhaust air* connections, outdoor air connections, or decontamination *equipment* and *appliances*.

Exception: Smoke detectors are not required in the return air system where all portions of the *building* served by the air distribution system are protected by area smoke detectors connected to a fire alarm system in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*. The area smoke detection system shall comply with Section 606.4.

606.2.2 Common supply and return air systems. Where multiple air-handling systems share common supply or return air ducts or *plenums* with a combined design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s), the return air system shall be provided with smoke detectors in accordance with Section 606.2.1.

Exception: Individual smoke detectors shall not be required for each fan-powered terminal unit, provided that such units do not have an individual design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s) and will be shut down by activation of one of the following:

1. Smoke detectors required by Sections 606.2.1 and 606.2.3.
2. An *approved* area smoke detector system located in the return air *plenum* serving such units.
3. An area smoke detector system as prescribed in the exception to Section 606.2.1.

In all cases, the smoke detectors shall comply with Sections 606.4 and 606.4.1.

606.2.3 Return air risers. Where return air risers serve two or more stories and serve any portion of a return air system having a design capacity greater than 15,000 cfm (7.1 m^3/s), smoke detectors shall be installed at each story. Such smoke detectors shall be located upstream of the connection between the return air riser and any air ducts or *plenums*.

[F] 606.3 Installation. Smoke detectors required by this section shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 72. The required smoke detectors shall be installed to monitor the entire airflow conveyed by the system including return air and exhaust or relief air. *Access* shall be provided to smoke detectors for inspection and maintenance.

[F] 606.4 Controls operation. Upon activation, the smoke detectors shall shut down all operational capabilities of the air distribution system in accordance with the listing and labeling of *appliances* used in the system. Air distribution systems that are part of a smoke control system shall switch to the smoke control mode upon activation of a detector.

[F] 606.4.1 Supervision. The duct smoke detectors shall be connected to a fire alarm system where a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2 of the *Fire Code of New York State*. The actuation of a duct smoke detector shall activate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location. In facilities that are required to be monitored by a supervising station, duct smoke detectors shall report only as a supervisory signal, not as a fire alarm.

Exceptions:

1. The supervisory signal at a constantly attended location is not required where the duct smoke detector activates the *building*'s alarm-indicating *appliances*.

2. In *occupancies* not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and audible signal in an *approved* location. Duct smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an *approved* location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

SECTION 607—DUCT AND TRANSFER OPENINGS

[BF] 607.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the protection of duct penetrations and air transfer openings in assemblies required to be protected.

[BF] 607.1.1 Ducts between shafts. Ducts transitioning horizontally between shafts shall not require a shaft enclosure provided that the duct penetration into each associated shaft is protected with dampers complying with this section.

[BF] 607.1.2 Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies without dampers. Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated walls and are not required by this section to have dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.3 through 714.4.3 of the *Building Code of New York State*. Ducts that penetrate horizontal assemblies not required to be contained within a shaft and not required by this section to have *fire dampers* shall comply with the requirements of Section 714.5 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[BF] 607.1.2.1 Ducts that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated assemblies. The space around a duct penetrating a nonfire-resistance-rated floor assembly shall comply with Section 717.6.3 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[BF] 607.2 Installation. *Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and ceiling radiation dampers* located within air distribution and smoke control systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the dampers' listing and Sections 607.2.1 through 607.2.3.

[BF] 607.2.1 Smoke control system. Where the installation of a *fire damper* will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 of the *Building Code of New York State*, *approved* alternative protection shall be used. Where mechanical systems including ducts and dampers used for normal *building* ventilation serve as part of the smoke control system, the expected performance of these systems in smoke control mode shall be addressed in the rational analysis required by Section 909.4 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

607.2.2 Hazardous exhaust ducts. *Fire dampers* for hazardous exhaust duct systems shall comply with Section 509.

[BF] 607.2.3 Static dampers. Fire dampers and *ceiling radiation dampers* that are *listed* for use in static systems shall be installed only in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems that are automatically shut down in the event of a fire.

[BF] 607.2.4 Mechanical, electrical and plumbing controls. Mechanical, electrical and plumbing controls shall not be installed in air duct systems.

Exception: Controls shall be permitted to be installed in air duct systems only if the wiring is directly associated with the air distribution system. The wiring shall comply with the requirements of Section 602 and the total length of such wiring shall not exceed 4 feet (1.2 m).

[BF] 607.2.4.1 Controls not permitted to be installed through dampers. Mechanical, electrical and plumbing controls shall not be installed through fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers or ceiling radiation dampers unless otherwise permitted by the manufacturer and the listing.

[BF] 607.3 Damper testing, ratings and actuation. Damper testing, ratings and actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.1 through 607.3.3.5.

[BF] 607.3.1 Damper testing. *Dampers* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with the standards in this section. *Fire dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555. *Smoke dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555S. *Combination fire/smoke dampers* shall comply with the requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555C or shall be tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Corridor dampers shall comply with requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. Corridor dampers shall demonstrate acceptable closure performance when subjected to 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) velocity across the face of the damper using the UL 555 fire exposure test.

[BF] 607.3.2 Damper rating. Damper ratings shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.2.1 through 607.3.2.4.

[BF] 607.3.2.1 Fire damper ratings. Fire dampers shall have the minimum rating specified in Table 607.3.2.1.

[BF] TABLE 607.3.2.1—FIRE DAMPER RATING

TYPE OF PENETRATION	MINIMUM DAMPER RATING (hour)
Less than 3-hour fire-resistance-rated assemblies	$1^1/_2$
3-hour or greater fire-resistance-rated assemblies	3

[BF] 607.3.2.2 Smoke damper ratings. *Smoke damper* leakage ratings shall be Class I or II. Elevated temperature ratings shall be not less than 250°F (121°C).

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BF] 607.3.2.3 Combination fire/smoke damper ratings. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall have the minimum fire protection rating specified for fire dampers in Table 607.3.2.1 and shall have the minimum rating specified for smoke dampers in Section 607.3.2.2.

[BF] 607.3.2.4 Corridor damper ratings. Corridor dampers shall have the following minimum ratings:

1. One-hour fire-resistance rating.
2. Class I or II leakage rating as specified in Section 607.3.2.2.

[BF] 607.3.3 Damper actuation. Damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 through 607.3.3.5 as applicable.

[BF] 607.3.3.1 Fire damper actuation. Primary heat-responsive devices used to actuate fire dampers shall meet one of the following requirements:

1. The operating temperature shall be approximately 50°F (28°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).
2. The operating temperature shall be not more than 350°F (177°C) where located in a smoke control system complying with Section 909 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[BF] 607.3.3.2 Smoke damper actuation. The *smoke damper* shall close upon actuation of a *listed* smoke detector or detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 of the *Building Code of New York State* and one of the following methods, as applicable:

1. Where a *smoke damper* is installed within a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes within the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the damper. The detector shall be *listed* for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.
2. Where a *smoke damper* is installed above smoke barrier doors in a smoke barrier, a spot-type detector shall be installed on either side of the smoke barrier door opening. The detector shall be *listed* for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.
3. Where a *smoke damper* is installed within an unducted opening in a wall, a spot-type detector shall be installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the damper. The detector shall be *listed* for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.
4. Where a *smoke damper* is installed in a corridor wall or ceiling, the damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed in the corridor.
5. Where a smoke detection system is installed in all areas served by the duct in which the damper will be located, the smoke dampers shall be permitted to be controlled by the smoke detection system.

[BF] 607.3.3.3 Combination fire/smoke damper actuation. *Combination fire/smoke damper* actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 and 607.3.3.2. Combination fire/*smoke dampers* installed in smoke control system shaft penetrations shall not be activated by local area smoke detection unless it is secondary to the smoke management system controls.

[BF] 607.3.3.4 Ceiling radiation damper actuation. The operating temperature of a *ceiling radiation damper* actuation device shall be 50°F (28°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).

[BF] 607.3.3.5 Corridor damper actuation. Corridor damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 and 607.3.3.2.

[BF] 607.4 Access and identification. *Access* and identification of fire and *smoke dampers* shall comply with Sections 607.4.1 through 607.4.2.

[BF] 607.4.1 Access. Fire and *smoke dampers* shall be provided with an *approved* means of *access* that is large enough to permit inspection and maintenance of the damper and its operating parts. Dampers equipped with fusible links, internal operators or both shall be provided with an access door that is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) square or provided with a removable duct section.

[BF] 607.4.1.1 Fire-resistance rating. The *access* shall not affect the integrity of fire-resistance-rated assemblies. The access openings shall not reduce the fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Access doors in ducts shall be tight fitting and suitable for the required duct construction.

[BF] 607.4.1.2 Restricted access. Where space constraints or physical barriers restrict *access* to a damper for periodic inspection and testing, the damper shall be a single- or multi-blade damper and shall comply with the remote inspection requirements of NFPA 80 or NFPA 105.

[BF] 607.4.2 Identification. *Access* points shall be permanently identified on the exterior by a label having letters not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) in height reading: FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER, SMOKE DAMPER or FIRE DAMPER.

[BF] 607.5 Where required. Fire dampers, *smoke dampers*, combination fire/*smoke dampers*, *ceiling radiation dampers* and corridor dampers shall be provided at the locations prescribed in Sections 607.5.1 through 607.5.7. Where an assembly is required to have both fire dampers and *smoke dampers*, combination fire/*smoke dampers* or a fire damper and *smoke damper* shall be provided.

[BF] 607.5.1 Fire walls. Ducts and air transfer openings permitted in fire walls in accordance with Section 706.11 of the *Building Code of New York State* shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

[BF] 607.5.1.1 Horizontal exits. A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a *fire wall* that serves as a horizontal *exit.*

[BF] 607.5.2 Fire barriers. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire barriers shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways except as permitted by Sections 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively, of the *Building Code of New York State*.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of fire barriers where any of the following apply:

1. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 512 and where the fire damper would interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
3. Such walls are penetrated by fully ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *Building Code of New York State*. For the purposes of this exception, a fully ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than 26 gage [0.0217 inch (0.55 mm)] thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling *appliance* or *equipment* to the air outlet and inlet terminals. Flexible air connectors shall be permitted in a fully ducted system, limited to the following installations:
    3.1. Nonmetallic flexible connections that connect a duct to an air handling unit or *equipment* located within a mechanical room in accordance with Section 603.9.
    3.2. Nonmetallic flexible air connectors in accordance with Section 603.6.2 that connect an overhead metal duct to a ceiling diffuser where the metal duct and ceiling diffuser are located within the same room.

[BF] 607.5.2.1 Horizontal exits. A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a *fire barrier* that serves as a horizontal *exit*.

[BF] 607.5.3 Fire partitions. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire partitions shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exception: In *occupancies* other than Group H, fire dampers are not required where any of the following apply:

1. Corridor walls in *buildings* equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *Building Code of New York State* and the duct is protected as a through penetration in accordance with Section 714 of the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. The partitions are tenant partitions in covered and open mall *buildings* where the walls are not required by provisions elsewhere in the *Building Code of New York State* to extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above.
3. The duct system is constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 and the duct penetrating the wall complies with all of the following requirements:
    3.1. The duct shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.06 m^2).
    3.2. The duct shall be constructed of steel not less than 0.0217 inch (0.55 mm) in thickness.
    3.3. The duct shall not have openings that communicate the corridor with adjacent spaces or rooms.
    3.4. The duct shall be installed above a ceiling.
    3.5. The duct shall not terminate at a wall register in the fire-resistance-rated wall.
    3.6. A minimum 12-inch-long (305 mm) by 0.060-inch-thick (1.52 mm) steel sleeve shall be centered in each duct opening. The sleeve shall be secured to both sides of the wall and all four sides of the sleeve with minimum $1^1/_2$-inch by $1^1/_2$-inch by 0.060-inch (38 mm by 38 mm by 1.52 mm) steel retaining angles. The retaining angles shall be secured to the sleeve and the wall with No. 10 (M5) screws. The annular space between the steel sleeve and the wall opening shall be filled with rock (mineral) wool batting on all sides.
4. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, and are in areas of other than Group H and are in *buildings* equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *Building Code of New York State*. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or *exhaust air* as part of the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than 26 gage in thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling *appliance* or *equipment* to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

[BF] 607.5.4 Corridors/smoke barriers. A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a smoke barrier wall or a corridor enclosure required to have smoke and draft control doors in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

A corridor damper shall be provided where corridor ceilings, constructed as required for the corridor walls as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 3, of the *Building Code of New York State*, are penetrated.

A *ceiling radiation damper* shall be provided where the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly, constructed as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 2, of the *Building Code of New York State*, is penetrated.

Smoke dampers and *smoke damper* actuation methods shall comply with Section 607.5.4.1.

Exceptions:

1. *Smoke dampers* are not required in corridor penetrations where the *building* is equipped throughout with an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 512 and *smoke dampers* are not necessary for the operation and control of the system.
2. *Smoke dampers* are not required in smoke barrier penetrations where the openings in ducts are limited to a single smoke compartment and the ducts are constructed of steel.
3. *Smoke dampers* are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and there are no openings serving the corridor.
4. *Smoke dampers* are not required in smoke barriers required by Section 407.5 of the *Building Code of New York State* for Group I-2, Condition 2 where the HVAC system is fully ducted in accordance with Section 603 and where *buildings* are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *Building Code of New York State* and equipped with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[BF] 607.5.4.1 Smoke damper. *Smoke dampers* shall close as required by Section 607.3.3.2.

[BF] 607.5.5 Shaft enclosures. Shaft enclosures that are permitted to be penetrated by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected with *listed* fire and *smoke dampers* installed in accordance with their listing.

Exceptions:

1. Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where any of the following apply:
   1.1. Steel exhaust subducts having a wall thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically in exhaust shafts and an exhaust fan is installed at the upper terminus of the shaft that is powered continuously, in accordance with Section 909.11 of the *Building Code of New York State*, so as to maintain a continuous airflow upward to the outdoors.
   1.2. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.
   1.3. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 of the *Building Code of New York State*, and where the fire damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
   1.4. The penetrations are in parking garage exhaust or supply shafts that are separated from other *building* shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. In Group B and R *occupancies* equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *Building Code of New York State*, *smoke dampers* are not required at penetrations of shafts where kitchen, clothes dryer, bathroom and toilet room exhaust openings with steel exhaust subducts, having a wall thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm), extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically and the exhaust fan at the upper terminus is powered continuously in accordance with the provisions of Section 909.11 of the *Building Code of New York State*, and maintains airflow upward to the outdoors.
3. *Smoke dampers* are not required at penetrations of exhaust or supply shafts in parking garages that are separated from other *building* shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
4. *Smoke dampers* are not required at penetrations of shafts where ducts are used as part of an *approved* mechanical smoke control system designed in accordance with Section 909 of the *Building Code of New York State* and where the *smoke damper* will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
5. Fire dampers and combination fire/*smoke dampers* are not required in kitchen and clothes dryer exhaust systems where dampers are prohibited by this code.

[BF] 607.5.5.1 Continuous upward flow. Fire dampers and *smoke dampers* shall not be installed in shafts that are required to maintain continuous airflow upward where closure of the damper would result in the loss of airflow.

[BF] 607.5.5.2 Enclosure at the bottom. Shaft enclosures that do not extend to the bottom of the *building* or structure shall be protected in accordance with Section 713.11 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

[BF] 607.5.6 Exterior walls. Ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated exterior walls required to have protected openings in accordance with Section 705.11 of the *Building Code of New York State* shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

[BF] 607.5.7 Smoke partitions. A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point where an air transfer opening penetrates a smoke partition. *Smoke dampers* and *smoke damper* actuation methods shall comply with Section 607.3.3.2.

Exception: Where the installation of a *smoke damper* will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 512, *approved* alternative protection shall be used.

[BF] 607.6 Horizontal assemblies. Penetrations by air ducts of a floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected by a shaft enclosure that complies with Section 713 and Sections 717.6.1 through 717.6.3 of the *Building Code of New York State* or shall comply with Sections 607.6.1 through 607.6.3.

[BF] 607.6.1 Through penetrations. A duct constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 that penetrates a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assembly that connects not more than two stories is permitted without shaft enclosure protection provided that a *listed* fire damper is installed at the floor line or the duct is protected in accordance with Section 714.5 of the *Building Code of New York State*. For air transfer openings, see Item 6, Section 712.1.9 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

Exception: In occupancies other than Groups I-2 and I-3, a duct is permitted to penetrate three floors or less without a fire damper at each floor provided that it meets all of the following requirements:

1. The duct shall be contained and located within the cavity of a wall and shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage).
2. The duct shall open into only one *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* and the duct system shall be continuous from the unit to the exterior of the *building*.
3. The duct shall not exceed a 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter and the total area of such ducts shall not exceed 100 square inches for any 100 square feet (64 516 mm^2 per 9.3 m^2) of the floor area.
4. The annular space around the duct is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.
5. Grille openings located in a ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with a *listed ceiling radiation damper* installed in accordance with Section 607.6.2.1.

[BF] 607.6.2 Membrane penetrations. Ducts and air transfer openings constructed of *approved* materials, in accordance with Section 603, that penetrate the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with one of the following:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713 of the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. A *listed ceiling radiation damper* installed at the ceiling line where a duct penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

   Exception:

   1. A fire-resistance-rated assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 showing that ceiling radiation dampers are not required in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
   2. Where exhaust duct or outdoor air duct penetrations are protected in accordance with Section 714.5.1.2 of the *Building Code of New York State*, are located within the cavity of a wall and do not pass through another *dwelling unit* or tenant space.
   3. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet penetration system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
3. A *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a diffuser with no duct attached penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

   Exceptions:

   1. A fire-resistance-rated assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 showing that ceiling radiation dampers are not required in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
   2. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet penetration system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

[BF] 607.6.2.1 Ceiling radiation dampers testing and installation. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be tested in accordance with Section 607.3.1. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be installed in accordance with the details listed in the fire-resistance-rated assembly and the manufacturer's installation instructions and the listing.

[BF] 607.6.2.1.1 Dynamic systems. *Ceiling radiation dampers* installed in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems designed to operate with fans on during a fire shall be labeled for use in dynamic systems.

[BF] 607.6.2.1.2 Static systems. Static *ceiling radiation dampers* shall be installed only in systems that are not designed to operate during a fire.

Exceptions:

1. Where a static *ceiling radiation damper* is installed at the opening of a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes within the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the damper. The detector shall be *listed* for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.

2. Where a static *ceiling radiation damper* is installed in a ceiling, the *ceiling radiation damper* shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed within the same room or area as the *ceiling radiation damper*.
3. A static *ceiling radiation damper* shall be permitted to be installed within a room where an occupant sensor is provided within the room that will shut down the system.

[BF] 607.6.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies. Duct systems constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies shall be protected by any of the following methods:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713 of the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. The duct connects not more than two stories, and the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an *approved* noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of *combustion*.
3. In floor assemblies composed of noncombustible materials, a shaft shall not be required where the duct connects not more than three stories, and the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an *approved* noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of *combustion* and a fire damper is installed at each floor line.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required in ducts within individual residential *dwelling units*.

[BF] 607.7 Flexible ducts and air connectors. Flexible ducts and air connectors shall not pass through any fire-resistance-rated assembly.

SECTION 608—BALANCING

608.1 Balancing. Air distribution, ventilation and exhaust systems shall be provided with means to adjust the system to achieve the design airflow rates and shall be balanced by an *approved* method. *Ventilation air* distribution shall be balanced by an *approved* method and such balancing shall verify that the air distribution system is capable of supplying and exhausting the airflow rates required by Chapter 4.

CHAPTER

7

COMBUSTION AIR

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 7 defers to the Fuel Gas Code of New York State for combustion air provisions for gas-fired appliances. This code addresses oil-fired and solid-fuel-fired appliances; therefore, Chapter 7 is brief, referring to the manufacturer for solid-fuel appliances and NFPA 31 for oil-fired appliances. Combustion air must be provided to appliances to prevent poor combustion that can create multiple health and safety hazards.*

SECTION 701—GENERAL

701.1 Scope. Solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with NFPA 31. The methods of providing *combustion air* in this chapter do not apply to fireplaces, fireplace stoves and direct-vent *appliances*. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired *appliances* shall be in accordance with the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*.

701.2 Dampered openings. Where *combustion air* openings are provided with volume, smoke or fire dampers, the dampers shall be interlocked with the firing cycle of the *appliances* served, so as to prevent operation of any *appliance* that draws *combustion air* from the room or space when any of the dampers are closed. Manual dampers shall not be installed in *combustion air* ducts. Ducts not provided with dampers and that pass through rated construction shall be enclosed in a shaft in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

8 CHIMNEYS AND VENTS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 8 addresses venting means for fuel-fired appliances other than gas-fired. The Fuel Gas Code of New York State addresses gas-fired appliances. Chimneys include masonry and factory built; vents include Type L and pellet vents.*

SECTION 801—GENERAL

801.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built *chimneys*, *chimney* liners, vents and connectors. This chapter shall govern the utilization of masonry *chimneys*. Gas-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*.

801.2 General. Every fuel-burning *appliance* shall discharge the products of *combustion* to a vent, factory-built *chimney* or masonry *chimney*, except for *appliances* vented in accordance with Section 804. The *chimney* or vent shall be designed for the type of *appliance* being vented.

Exception: Commercial cooking *appliances* vented by a Type I hood installed in accordance with Section 507.

801.2.1 Oil-fired appliances. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with this code and NFPA 31.

801.3 Masonry chimneys. Masonry *chimneys* shall be constructed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

801.4 Positive flow. Venting systems shall be designed and constructed so as to develop a positive flow adequate to convey all *combustion products* to the outside atmosphere.

801.5 Design. Venting systems shall be designed in accordance with this chapter or shall be *approved* engineered systems.

801.6 Minimum size of chimney or vent. Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, the size of the *chimney* or vent, serving a single *appliance*, except engineered systems, shall have a minimum area equal to the area of the *appliance* connection.

801.7 Solid fuel appliance flues. The cross-sectional area of a flue serving a solid-fuel-burning *appliance* shall be not greater than three times the cross-sectional area of the *appliance* flue collar or flue outlet.

801.8 Abandoned inlet openings. Abandoned inlet openings in *chimneys* and vents shall be closed by an *approved* method.

801.9 Positive pressure. Where an *appliance* equipped with a forced or induced draft system creates a positive pressure in the venting system, the venting system shall be designed and *listed* for positive pressure applications.

801.10 Connection to fireplace. Connection of *appliances* to *chimney* flues serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Sections 801.10.1 through 801.10.3.

801.10.1 Closure and access. A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for *access* to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

801.10.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue. An *appliance* shall not be connected to a flue serving a factory-built fireplace unless the *appliance* is specifically *listed* for such installation. The connection shall be made in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

801.10.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue. A connector shall extend from the *appliance* to the flue serving a masonry fireplace such that the flue gases are exhausted directly into the flue. The connector shall be provided with access or shall be removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. *Listed* direct connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

801.11 Multiple solid fuel prohibited. A solid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace shall not connect to a *chimney* passageway venting another *appliance*.

801.12 Chimney entrance. Connectors shall connect to a *chimney* flue at a point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lowest portion of the interior of the *chimney* flue.

801.13 Cleanouts. Masonry chimney flues shall be provided with a cleanout opening having a minimum height of 6 inches (152 mm). The upper edge of the opening shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest *chimney* inlet opening. The cleanout shall be provided with a tight-fitting, noncombustible cover.

Exception: Cleanouts shall not be required for *chimney* flues serving masonry fireplaces, if such flues are provided with access through the fireplace opening.

801.14 Connections to exhauster. *Appliance* connections to a *chimney* or vent equipped with a power exhauster shall be made on the inlet side of the exhauster. Joints and piping on the positive pressure side of the exhauster shall be *listed* for positive pressure applications as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the exhauster.

801.15 Fuel-fired appliances. Masonry *chimneys* utilized to vent fuel-fired *appliances* shall be located, constructed and sized as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions for the *appliances* being vented.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102166

801.16 Flue lining. Masonry *chimneys* shall be lined. The lining material shall be compatible with the type of *appliance* connected, in accordance with the *appliance* listing and manufacturer's installation instructions. *Listed* materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

801.16.1 Residential and low-heat appliances (general). Flue lining systems for use with residential-type and low-heat *appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315 or equivalent. Clay flue lining shall be installed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.
2. *Listed* and *labeled chimney* lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Other *approved* materials that will resist, without cracking, softening or corrosion, flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

801.17 Space around lining. The space surrounding a flue lining system or other vent installed within a *masonry chimney* shall not be used to vent any other *appliance*. This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code.

801.18 Existing chimneys and vents. Where an *appliance* is permanently disconnected from an existing *chimney* or vent, or where an *appliance* is connected to an existing *chimney* or vent during the process of a new installation, the *chimney* or vent shall comply with Sections 801.18.1 through 801.18.4.

801.18.1 Size. The *chimney* or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the *chimney* or vent and to provide the *appliance* or *appliances* served with the required draft. For the venting of oil-fired *appliances* to masonry *chimneys*, the resizing shall be in accordance with NFPA 31.

801.18.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free from obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace. The flue liner, *chimney* inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and shall be free from cracks, gaps, perforations or other damage or deterioration that would allow the escape of *combustion products*, including gases, moisture and creosote. Where an oil-fired *appliance* is connected to an existing masonry *chimney*, such *chimney* flue shall be repaired or relined in accordance with NFPA 31.

801.18.3 Cleanout. Masonry *chimneys* shall be provided with a cleanout opening complying with Section 801.13.

801.18.4 Clearances. *Chimneys* and vents shall have airspace *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State* and the *chimney* or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Masonry *chimneys* without the required airspace *clearances* shall be permitted to be used if lined or relined with a *chimney* lining system *listed* for use in *chimneys* with reduced *clearances* in accordance with UL 1777. The *chimney clearance* shall be not less than permitted by the terms of the *chimney* liner listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

801.18.4.1 Fireblocking. Noncombustible fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

801.19 Multistory prohibited. Common venting systems for *appliances* located on more than one floor level shall be prohibited, except where all of the *appliances* served by the common vent are located in rooms or spaces that are accessed only from the outdoors. The *appliance* enclosures shall not communicate with the occupiable areas of the building.

801.20 Plastic vent joints. Plastic pipe and fittings used to vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

801.21 Blocked vent switch. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be equipped with a device that will stop burner operation in the event that the venting system is obstructed. Such device shall have a manual reset and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 802—VENTS

802.1 General. Vent systems shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Type L vents and pellet vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 641.

802.2 Vent application. The application of vents shall be in accordance with Table 802.2.

TABLE 802.2—VENT APPLICATION

VENT TYPES	APPLIANCE TYPES
Type L oil vents	Oil-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type L vents; gas appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type B vents.
Pellet vents	Pellet fuel-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with pellet vents.

802.3 Installation. Vent systems shall be sized, installed and terminated in accordance with the vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.4 Vent termination caps required. Type L vents shall terminate with a *listed* and *labeled* cap in accordance with the vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.5 Type L vent terminations. Type L vents shall terminate not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point of the roof penetration and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm).

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

802.6 Minimum vent heights. Vents shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance* flue collar.

Exceptions:

1. Venting systems of direct vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* and the vent manufacturer's instructions.
2. *Appliances listed* for outdoor installations incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Pellet vents shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* and the vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.7 Support of vents. All portions of vents shall be adequately supported for the design and weight of the materials employed.

802.8 Insulation shield. Where vents pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of not less than No. 26 gage sheet metal shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the vent and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall be not less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the vent manufacturer's installation instructions. Where vents pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed* vent system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.9 Door swing. *Appliance* and *equipment* vent terminals shall be located such that doors cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally of the vent terminals. Doorstops or closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

SECTION 803—CONNECTORS

803.1 Connectors required. Connectors shall be used to connect *appliances* to the vertical *chimney* or vent, except where the *chimney* or vent is attached directly to the *appliance*.

803.2 Location. Connectors shall be located entirely within the room in which the connecting *appliance* is located, except as provided for in Section 803.10.4. Where passing through an unheated space, a connector shall not be constructed of single-wall pipe.

803.3 Size. The connector shall not be smaller than the size of the flue collar supplied by the manufacturer of the *appliance*. Where the *appliance* has more than one flue outlet, and in the absence of the manufacturer's specific instructions, the connector area shall be not less than the combined area of the flue outlets for which it acts as a common connector.

803.4 Branch connections. Branch connections to the vent connector shall be made in accordance with the vent manufacturer's instructions.

803.5 Manual dampers. Manual dampers shall not be installed in connectors except in *chimney* connectors serving solid fuel-burning *appliances*.

803.6 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 17 for oil-fired heating *appliances*. The dampers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. An automatic vent damper device shall not be installed on an existing *appliance* unless the *appliance* is *listed* and *labeled* and the device is installed in accordance with the terms of its listing. The name of the installer and date of installation shall be marked on a label affixed to the damper device.

803.7 Connectors serving two or more appliances. Where two or more connectors enter a common vent or *chimney*, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with available headroom or *clearance* to combustible material.

803.8 Vent connector construction. Vent connectors shall be constructed of metal. The minimum thickness of the connector shall be 0.0136 inch (0.345 mm) (No. 28 gage) for galvanized steel, 0.022 inch (0.6 mm) (No. 26 B & S gage) for copper, and 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 24 B & S gage) for aluminum.

803.9 Chimney connector construction. *Chimney* connectors for low-heat *appliances* shall be of sheet steel pipe having resistance to corrosion and heat not less than that of galvanized steel specified in Table 803.9(1). Connectors for medium-heat *appliances* and high-heat *appliances* shall be of sheet steel not less than the thickness specified in Table 803.9(2).

TABLE 803.9(1)—MINIMUM CHIMNEY CONNECTOR THICKNESS FOR LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS (galvanized) (inches)
5 and smaller	0.022 (No. 26 gage)
Larger than 5 and up to 10	0.028 (No. 24 gage)
Larger than 10 and up to 16	0.034 (No. 22 gage)
Larger than 16	0.064 (No. 16 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 803.9(2)—MINIMUM CHIMNEY CONNECTOR THICKNESS FOR MEDIUM- AND HIGH-HEAT APPLIANCES		
AREA (square inches)	**EQUIVALENT ROUND DIAMETER (inches)**	**MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)**
0–154	0–14	0.0575 (No. 16 gage)
155–201	15–16	0.075 (No. 14 gage)
202–254	17–18	0.0994 (No. 12 gage)
Greater than 254	Greater than 18	0.1292 (No. 10 gage)
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.		

803.10 Installation. Connectors shall be installed in accordance with Sections 803.10.1 through 803.10.6.

803.10.1 Supports and joints. Connectors shall be supported in an *approved* manner, and joints shall be fastened with sheet metal screws, rivets or other *approved* means.

803.10.2 Length. The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the *chimney* or vent.

803.10.3 Connection. The connector shall extend to the inner face of the *chimney* or vent liner, but not beyond. A connector entering a *masonry chimney* shall be cemented to masonry in an *approved* manner. Where thimbles are installed to facilitate removal of the connector from the *masonry chimney*, the thimble shall be permanently cemented in place with high-temperature cement.

803.10.4 Connector pass-through. *Chimney* connectors shall not pass through any floor or ceiling, nor through a fire-resistance-rated wall assembly. *Chimney* connectors for domestic-type *appliances* shall not pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material to reach a masonry *chimney* except where one of the following applies:

1. The connector is *labeled* for wall pass-through and is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. The connector is put through a device *labeled* for wall pass-through.
3. The connector has a diameter not larger than 10 inches (254 mm) and is installed in accordance with one of the methods in Table 803.10.4. Concealed metal parts of the pass-through system in contact with flue gases shall be of stainless steel or equivalent material that resists corrosion, softening or cracking up to 1,800°F (980°C).

TABLE 803.10.4—CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS AND CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLE WALL MATERIALSFOR DOMESTIC HEATING APPLIANCES[a, b, c, d]	
System A (12-inch clearance)	A 3.5-inch-thick brick wall shall be framed into the combustible wall. An 0.625-inch-thick fire-clay liner (ASTM C315 or equivalent)[e] shall be firmly cemented in the center of the brick wall maintaining a 12-inch clearance to combustibles. The clay liner shall run from the outer surface of the bricks to the inner surface of the chimney liner.
System B (9-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) the same inside diameter as the connector shall be utilized. Sheet steel supports cut to maintain a 9-inch clearance to combustibles shall be fastened to the wall surface and to the chimney section. Fasteners shall not penetrate the chimney flue liner. The chimney length shall be flush with the masonry chimney liner and sealed to the masonry with water-insoluble refractory cement. Chimney manufacturers' parts shall be utilized to securely fasten the chimney connector to the chimney section.
System C (6-inch clearance)	A steel ventilated thimble having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage) having two 1-inch air channels shall be installed with a steel chimney connector. Steel supports shall be cut to maintain a 6-inch clearance between the thimble and combustibles. The chimney connector and steel supports shall have a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage). One side of the support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides. Glass-fiber insulation shall fill the 6-inch space between the thimble and the supports.
System D (2-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) with a diameter 2 inches larger than the chimney connector shall be installed with a steel chimney connector having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage). Sheet steel supports shall be positioned to maintain a 2-inch clearance to combustibles and to hold the chimney connector to ensure that a 1-inch airspace surrounds the chimney connector through the chimney section. The steel support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides and the chimney section shall be fastened to the supports. Fasteners shall not penetrate the liner of the chimney section.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1.0 Btu × in/ft^2 × h × °F = 0.144 W/m^2 × K.

a. Insulation material that is part of the wall pass-through system shall be noncombustible and shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu × in/ft^2 × h × °F or less.
b. All clearances and thicknesses are minimums.
c. Materials utilized to seal penetrations for the connector shall be noncombustible.
d. Connectors for all systems except System B shall extend through the wall pass-through system to the inner face of the flue liner.
e. ASTM C315.

803.10.5 Pitch. Connectors shall rise vertically to the *chimney* or vent with a minimum pitch equal to $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2 percent slope).

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

803.10.6 Clearances. Connectors shall have a minimum *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Table 803.10.6. The *clearances* specified in Table 803.10.6 apply, except where the *listing* and *labeling* of an *appliance* specifies a different *clearance*, in which case the *labeled clearance* shall apply. The *clearance* to combustibles for connectors shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308.

TABLE 803.10.6—CONNECTOR CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLES

TYPE OF APPLIANCE	MINIMUM CLEARANCE (inches)
Domestic-type appliances	
Chimney and vent connectors	
Electric and oil incinerators	18
Oil and solid-fuel appliances	18
Oil appliances labeled for venting with Type L vents	9
Commercial, industrial-type appliances	
Low-heat appliances	
Chimney connectors	
Oil and solid-fuel boilers, furnace and water heaters	18
Oil unit heaters	18
Other low-heat industrial appliances	18
Medium-heat appliances	
Chimney connectors	
All oil and solid-fuel appliances	36
High-heat appliances	(As determined by the code official)
Masonry or metal connectors	
All oil and solid-fuel appliances	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION 804—DIRECT-VENT, INTEGRAL VENT AND MECHANICAL DRAFT SYSTEMS

804.1 Direct-vent terminations. Vent terminals for *direct-vent appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

804.2 Appliances with integral vents. *Appliances* incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

804.2.1 Terminal clearances. *Appliances* designed for natural draft venting and incorporating integral venting means shall be located so that a minimum *clearance* of 9 inches (229 mm) is maintained between vent terminals and from any openings through which *combustion products* enter the building. *Appliances* using forced draft venting shall be located so that a minimum *clearance* of 12 inches (305 mm) is maintained between vent terminals and from any openings through which *combustion products* enter the building.

804.3 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 378 and shall comply with Sections 804.3.1 through 804.3.8.

804.3.1 Forced draft systems. Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to be gas tight to prevent leakage of *combustion products* into a building.

804.3.2 Automatic shutoff. Power exhausters serving automatically fired *appliances* shall be electrically connected to each *appliance* to prevent operation of the *appliance* when the power exhauster is not in operation.

804.3.3 Termination. The termination of *chimneys* or vents equipped with power exhausters shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the lot line or from adjacent buildings. The exhaust shall be directed away from the building.

804.3.4 Horizontal terminations. Horizontal terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. The vent system shall terminate not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet into the building.
4. The vent termination point shall not be located closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an interior corner formed by two walls perpendicular to each other.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

5. The vent termination shall not be mounted directly above or within 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from an oil tank vent or gas meter.
6. The bottom of the vent termination shall be located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

804.3.5 Vertical terminations. Vertical terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally.
3. Where the vent termination is located below an adjacent roof structure, the termination point shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from such structure.
4. The vent shall terminate not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet for the building.
5. A vent cap shall be installed to prevent rain from entering the vent system.
6. The vent termination shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from any portion of the roof structure.

804.3.6 Exhauster connections. An *appliance* vented by natural draft shall not be connected into a vent, *chimney* or vent connector on the discharge side of a mechanical flue exhauster.

804.3.7 Exhauster sizing. Mechanical flue exhausters and the vent system served shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

804.3.8 Mechanical draft systems for manually fired appliances and fireplaces. A mechanical draft system shall be permitted to be used with manually fired *appliances* and fireplaces where such system complies with all of the following requirements:

1. The mechanical draft device shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 378, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. A device shall be installed that produces visible and audible warning upon failure of the mechanical draft device or loss of electrical power, at any time that the mechanical draft device is turned on. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.
3. A smoke detector shall be installed in the room with the *appliance* or fireplace. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.

SECTION 805—FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

805.1 Listing. Factory-built *chimneys* shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

805.2 Solid fuel appliances. Factory-built *chimneys* installed in *dwelling units* with solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall comply with the Type HT requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Type HT" and "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney*."

Exception: *Chimneys* for use with open *combustion* chamber fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney*."

Chimneys for use with open *combustion* chamber *appliances* installed in buildings other than *dwelling units* shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Building Heating *Appliance Chimney*" or "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney*."

805.3 Factory-built fireplaces. *Chimneys* for use with factory-built fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 127.

805.4 Factory-built chimney offsets. Where a factory-built *chimney* assembly incorporates offsets, no part of the *chimney* shall be at an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical at any point in the assembly and the *chimney* assembly shall not include more than four elbows.

805.5 Support. Where factory-built *chimneys* are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, such members shall be designed to support the additional load.

805.6 Medium-heat appliances. Factory-built *chimneys* for medium-heat *appliances* producing flue gases having a temperature above 1,000°F (538°C) measured at the entrance to the *chimney* shall comply with UL 959.

805.7 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built *chimneys* except where such shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific *factory-built chimney* system and are installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

805.8 Insulation shield. Where factory-built *chimneys* pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the *chimney* and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall be not less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the *chimney* manufacturer's installation instructions. Where *chimneys* pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed chimney* system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 806—METAL CHIMNEYS

806.1 General. Metal *chimneys* shall be constructed and installed in accordance with NFPA 211.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

9

SPECIFIC APPLIANCES, FIREPLACES AND SOLID FUEL-BURNING EQUIPMENT

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 9 focuses on specific types of appliances and fireplaces. It also addresses heat-rejection equipment, combustion engines, gas turbines, kilns, fuel cells, evaporative coolers, radiant heating systems and hydrogen systems.*

SECTION 901—GENERAL

901.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of the *appliances* and *equipment* specifically identified herein and factory-built fireplaces. The approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of gas-fired *appliances* shall be regulated by the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*.

901.2 General. The requirements of this chapter shall apply to the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* regulated by this chapter, in addition to the other requirements of this code.

901.3 Hazardous locations. Fireplaces and solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall not be installed in *hazardous locations*.

901.4 Solid fuel-burning fireplaces and appliances in Group I-2, Condition 2. In Group I-2, Condition 2 *occupancies*, solid fuel-burning fireplaces and *appliances* are prohibited.

[NY] 901.5 Solid fuel-burning heating appliances, chimneys and flues. Building permits, inspection requirements, and compliance certificates for the installation, inspection, and subsequent use of solid fuel-burning heating *appliances*, chimneys and flues shall be in accordance with Chapter 1.

SECTION 902—MASONRY FIREPLACES

902.1 General. Masonry fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

902.2 Fireplace accessories. *Listed* and *labeled* fireplace accessories shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Fireplace accessories shall comply with UL 907.

SECTION 903—FACTORY-BUILT FIREPLACES

903.1 General. Factory-built fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing. Factory-built fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 127.

903.2 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions of *approved* factory-built fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. *Listed* and *labeled* hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

903.3 Unvented gas log heaters. An unvented gas log heater shall not be installed in a factory-built fireplace unless the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

903.4 Gasketed fireplace doors. A gasketed fireplace door shall not be installed on a factory-built fireplace except where the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

SECTION 904—PELLET FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCES

904.1 General. Pellet fuel-burning *appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ASTM E1509 and shall be installed in accordance with the terms of the listing.

SECTION 905—FIREPLACE STOVES AND ROOM HEATERS

905.1 General. Fireplace stoves and solid-fuel-type room heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing. Fireplace stoves shall be tested in accordance with UL 737. Solid-fuel-type room heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 1482. Fireplace inserts intended for installation in fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with the requirements of UL 1482 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. New wood-burning residential hydronic heaters shall be EPA certified.

905.2 Connection to fireplace. The connection of solid fuel *appliances* to *chimney* flues serving fireplaces shall comply with Sections 801.7 and 801.10.

905.3 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions for fireplace stoves shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace stove. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. *Listed* and *labeled* hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 906—FACTORY-BUILT BARBECUE APPLIANCES

906.1 General. Factory-built barbecue *appliances* shall be of an *approved* type and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, this chapter and Chapters 3, 5, 7 and 8, and the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*.

SECTION 907—INCINERATORS AND CREMATORIES

907.1 General. Factory-built cremation furnaces and commercial direct-fed incinerators shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2790. Factory-built incinerators for domestic applications shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 791. Incinerators and cremation furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 908—COOLING TOWERS, EVAPORATIVE CONDENSERS AND FLUID COOLERS

908.1 General. A cooling tower used in conjunction with an air-conditioning *appliance* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Factory-built cooling towers shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.

908.2 Access. Cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be provided with *ready access*.

908.3 Location. Cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be located to prevent the discharge of vapor plumes from entering occupied spaces. Plume discharges shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above or 20 feet (6096 mm) away from any ventilation inlet to a *building*. Location on the property shall be as required for *buildings* in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

908.4 Support and anchorage. Supports for cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be designed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*. Seismic restraints shall be as required by the *Building Code of New York State*.

908.5 Water supply. Cooling towers, evaporative coolers and fluid coolers shall be provided with an *approved* water supply, sized for peak demand. The quality of water shall be provided in accordance with the *equipment* manufacturer's recommendations. The piping system and protection of the potable water supply system shall be installed as required by the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

908.6 Drainage. Drains, overflows and blowdown provisions shall be indirectly connected to an *approved* disposal location. Discharge of chemical waste shall be *approved* by the appropriate regulatory authority.

908.7 Refrigerants and hazardous fluids. Heat exchange *equipment* that contains a refrigerant and that is part of a closed *refrigeration system* shall comply with Chapter 11. Heat exchange *equipment* containing heat transfer fluids which are flammable, combustible or hazardous shall comply with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

908.8 Cooling towers. Cooling towers, both open circuit and closed circuit type, and evaporative condensers shall comply with Sections 908.8.1 and 908.8.2.

908.8.1 Conductivity or flow-based control of cycles of concentration. Cooling towers and evaporative condensers shall include controls that automate system bleed based on conductivity, fraction of metered makeup volume, metered bleed volume, recirculating pump run time or bleed time.

908.8.2 Drift eliminators. Cooling towers and evaporative condensers shall be equipped with drift eliminators that have a maximum drift rate of 0.005 percent of the circulated water flow rate as established in the *equipment's* design specifications.

SECTION 909—VENTED WALL FURNACES

909.1 General. Vented wall furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 730.

909.2 Location. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so as not to cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. Vented wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

909.3 Door swing. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so that a door cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of an air inlet or air outlet of such furnace measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this *clearance*.

909.4 Ducts prohibited. Ducts shall not be attached to wall furnaces. Casing extension boots shall not be installed unless *listed* as part of the *appliance*.

909.5 Manual shutoff valve. A manual shutoff valve shall be installed ahead of all controls.

909.6 Access. Vented wall furnaces shall be provided with *access* for cleaning of heating surfaces, removal of burners, replacement of sections, motors, controls, filters and other working parts, and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the *building* construction.

SECTION 910—FLOOR FURNACES

910.1 General. Floor furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 729.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

910.2 Placement. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in the floor of any aisle or passageway of any auditorium, public hall, place of assembly, or in any egress element from any such room or space.

With the exception of wall register models, a floor furnace shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the nearest wall, and wall register models shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a corner.

The furnace shall be placed such that a drapery or similar combustible object will not be nearer than 12 inches (305 mm) to any portion of the register of the furnace. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade. The controlling thermostat for a floor furnace shall be located within the same room or space as the floor furnace or shall be located in an adjacent room or space that is permanently open to the room or space containing the floor furnace.

910.3 Bracing. The floor around the furnace shall be braced and headed with a support framework design in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

910.4 Clearance. The lowest portion of the floor furnace shall have not less than a 6-inch (152 mm) *clearance* from the grade level; except where the lower 6-inch (152 mm) portion of the floor furnace is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the minimum *clearance* shall be reduced to not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where these *clearances* are not present, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a pit under the furnace so that the required *clearance* is provided beneath the lowest portion of the furnace. A 12-inch (305 mm) minimum *clearance* shall be provided on all sides except the control side, which shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) minimum *clearance*.

SECTION 911—DUCT FURNACES

911.1 General. Duct furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Electric duct furnaces shall comply with UL 1996.

SECTION 912—INFRARED RADIANT HEATERS

912.1 General. Permanently installed electric space heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2021, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

912.2 Support. Electric space heaters shall be fixed in a position independent of electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be noncombustible material.

912.3 Clearances. Heaters shall be installed with *clearances* from combustible material in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 913—CLOTHES DRYERS

913.1 General. Clothes dryers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Electric residential clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 2158. Electric coin-operated clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 2158. Electric commercial clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 1240.

913.2 Exhaust required. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with Section 504.

913.3 Clearances. Clothes dryers shall be installed with *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 914—SAUNA HEATERS

914.1 Location and protection. Sauna heaters shall be located so as to minimize the possibility of accidental contact by a person in the room.

914.1.1 Guards. Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by an *approved* guard or barrier of material having a low coefficient of thermal conductivity. The guard shall not substantially affect the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

914.2 Installation. Sauna heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 875 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

914.3 Access. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the *building*.

914.4 Heat and time controls. Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a thermostat that will limit room temperature to 194°F (90°C). If the thermostat is not an integral part of the sauna heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling. If the heat-sensing element is a capillary tube and bulb, the assembly shall be attached to the wall or other support, and shall be protected against physical damage.

914.4.1 Timers. A timer, if provided to control main burner operation, shall have a maximum operating time of 1 hour. The control for the timer shall be located outside the sauna room.

914.5 Sauna room. A ventilation opening into the sauna room shall be provided. The opening shall be not less than 4 inches by 8 inches (102 mm by 203 mm) located near the top of the door into the sauna room.

914.5.1 Warning notice. The following permanent notice, constructed of *approved* material, shall be mechanically attached to the sauna room on the outside:

WARNING: DO NOT EXCEED 30 MINUTES IN SAUNA. EXCESSIVE EXPOSURE CAN BE HARMFUL TO HEALTH.
ANY PERSON WITH POOR HEALTH SHOULD CONSULT A PHYSICIAN BEFORE USING SAUNA.

The words shall contrast with the background and the wording shall be in letters not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) high.

Exception: This section shall not apply to one- and two-family *dwellings*.

SECTION 915—ENGINE AND GAS TURBINE-POWERED EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCES

915.1 General. The installation of liquid-fueled stationary internal *combustion* engines and gas turbines, including exhaust, fuel storage and piping, shall meet the requirements of NFPA 37. Stationary engine generator assemblies shall meet the requirements of UL 2200.

915.2 Powered equipment and appliances. Permanently installed *equipment* and *appliances* powered by internal *combustion* engines and turbines shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 37.

SECTION 916—POOL AND SPA HEATERS

916.1 General. Pool and spa heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 726. Electric pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 1261. Pool and spa heat pump water heaters shall comply with UL 1995 or CSA C22.2 No. 236.

Exception: Portable residential spas and portable residential exercise spas shall comply with UL 1563 or CSA C22.2 No. 218.1.

SECTION 917—COOKING APPLIANCES

917.1 Cooking appliances. Cooking *appliances* that are designed for permanent installation, including ranges, ovens, stoves, broilers, grills, fryers, griddles and barbecues, shall be *listed, labeled* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Commercial electric cooking *appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 197. Household electric ranges shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 858. Microwave cooking *appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 923. Oil-burning stoves shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 896. Solid-fuel-fired ovens shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2162.

917.2 Domestic appliances. Cooking *appliances* installed within *dwelling units* and within areas where domestic cooking operations occur shall be *listed* and *labeled* as household-type *appliances* for domestic use.

SECTION 918—FORCED-AIR WARM-AIR FURNACES

918.1 Forced-air furnaces. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 727. Electric furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40. Solid fuel furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 391. Forced-air furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

918.2 Heat pumps. Electric heat pumps shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.

918.3 Dampers. Volume dampers shall not be placed in the air inlet to a furnace in a manner that will reduce the required air to the furnace.

918.4 Circulating air ducts for forced-air warm-air furnaces. Circulating air for fuel-burning, forced-air-type, warm-air furnaces shall be conducted into the blower housing from outside the furnace enclosure by continuous airtight ducts.

918.5 Outdoor and return air openings. Outdoor intake openings shall be located in accordance with Section 401.4. Return air openings shall be located in accordance with Section 601.5.

918.6 Outdoor opening protection. Outdoor air intake openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 401.5.

SECTION 919—CONVERSION BURNERS

919.1 Conversion burners. The installation of conversion burners shall conform to ANSI Z21.8.

SECTION 920—UNIT HEATERS

920.1 General. Unit heaters shall be installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired unit heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 731.

920.2 Support. Suspended-type unit heaters shall be supported by elements that are designed and constructed to accommodate the unit heater weight and dynamic loads. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material. Suspended-type oil-fired unit heaters shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 31.

920.3 Ductwork. A unit heater shall not be attached to a warm-air duct system unless *listed* for such installation.

920.4 Prohibited uses. In Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, suspended-type unit heaters are prohibited in corridors, exit access stairways and ramps, exit stairways and ramps, and patient sleeping areas.

SECTION 921—VENTED ROOM HEATERS

921.1 General. Vented room heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[NY] SECTION 922—KEROSENE AND OIL-FIRED STOVES AND HEATERS

922.1 General. Kerosene and oil-fired stoves shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Kerosene and oil-fired stoves shall comply with NFPA 31 and UL 896.

[NY] 922.2 Approved portable kerosene heater. Unvented portable kerosene-fired heaters *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 647 are approved by the Secretary of State for use in New York State if packaged for sale with all provisions required in New York State Real Property Law Article 7A Section 239-a(7). Unvented portable kerosene-fired heaters shall not be located in, or obtain combustion air from, any of the following rooms or spaces: sleeping rooms, bathrooms, *toilet rooms*, or storage closets. Portable kerosene heaters shall be prohibited in *buildings* of *occupancy* groups A, E, I, R-1, R-2, R-3, R-4 (except for one- and two-family *dwellings* and townhouses), and *ambulatory care facilities*. The use of unvented portable kerosene-fired heaters is further regulated by New York State Real Property Law Article 7A.

SECTION 923—SMALL CERAMIC KILNS

923.1 General. Kilns shall be *listed* and *labeled* unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with Section 104.2.3. Electric kilns shall comply with UL 499. The approval of unlisted *appliances* in accordance with Section 104.2.3 shall be based on *approved* engineering evaluation.

923.1.1 Installation. Kilns shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the provisions of this code.

SECTION 924—STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER SYSTEMS

924.1 General. Stationary fuel cell power systems having a power output not exceeding 10 MW shall be tested in accordance with ANSI/CSA FC 1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, NFPA 853, the *Building Code of New York State* and the *Fire Code of New York State*.

SECTION 925—MASONRY HEATERS

925.1 General. Masonry heaters shall be constructed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

SECTION 926—GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

926.1 Installation. The installation of gaseous hydrogen systems shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of this code, the *Fire Code of New York State*, the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State* and the *Building Code of New York State*.

SECTION 927—RADIANT HEATING SYSTEMS

927.1 General. Electric radiant heating systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall be *listed* for the application.

927.2 Clearances. *Clearances* for radiant heating panels or elements to any wiring, outlet boxes and junction boxes used for installing electrical devices or mounting luminaires shall be in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State* and NFPA 70.

927.3 Installation on wood or steel framing. Radiant panels installed on wood or steel framing shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Heating panels shall be installed parallel to framing members and secured to the surface of framing members or shall be mounted between framing members.
2. Mechanical fasteners shall penetrate only the unheated portions provided for this purpose. Panels shall not be fastened at any point closer than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) to an element. Other methods of attachment of the panels shall be in accordance with the panel installation instructions.
3. Unless *listed* and *labeled* for field cutting, heating panels shall be installed as complete units.

927.4 Installation in concrete or masonry. Radiant heating systems installed in concrete or masonry shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Radiant heating systems shall be identified as being suitable for the installation, and shall be secured in place as specified in the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Radiant heating panels and radiant heating panel sets shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless they are protected from expansion and contraction.

927.5 Finish surfaces. Finish materials installed over radiant heating panels and systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Surfaces shall be secured so that fasteners do not pierce the radiant heating elements.

SECTION 928—EVAPORATIVE COOLING EQUIPMENT

928.1 General. Evaporative cooling *equipment* shall:

1. Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Be installed on level platforms in accordance with Section 304.10.
3. Have openings in exterior walls or roofs flashed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

4. Be provided with an *approved* water supply, sized for peak demand. The quality of water shall be provided in accordance with the *equipment* manufacturer's recommendations. The piping system and protection of the potable water supply system shall be installed as required by the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.
5. Have air intake opening locations in accordance with Section 401.4.

SECTION 929—UNVENTED ALCOHOL FUEL-BURNING DECORATIVE APPLIANCES

929.1 General. *Unvented alcohol fuel-burning decorative appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1370 and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing, manufacturer's installation instructions and Chapter 3.

SECTION 930—LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FANS

930.1 General. Where provided, large-diameter ceiling fans shall be tested and *labeled* in accordance with AMCA 230, *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 507, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 931—STEAM BATH EQUIPMENT

931.1 General. *Steam bath equipment* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 499 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

CHAPTER
10
BOILERS, WATER HEATERS AND PRESSURE VESSELS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 10 addresses boilers, water heaters, expansion tanks and pressure vessels in general, such as compressed air vessels. This chapter includes requirements for components of hydronic HVAC systems, with the focus being on safety, maintenance, testing and safety control devices.*

SECTION 1001—GENERAL

1001.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, *alteration* and repair of boilers, water heaters and pressure vessels.

Exceptions:

1. Pressure vessels used for unheated water supply.
2. Portable unfired pressure vessels and Interstate Commerce Commission containers.
3. Containers for bulk oxygen and medical gas.
4. Unfired pressure vessels having a volume of 5 cubic feet (0.14 m^3) or less operating at pressures not exceeding 250 pounds per square inch (psi) (1724 kPa) and located within *occupancies* of Groups B, F, H, M, R, S and U.
5. Pressure vessels used in *refrigeration systems* that are regulated by Chapter 11 of this code.
6. Pressure tanks used in conjunction with coaxial cables, telephone cables, power cables and other similar humidity control systems.
7. Any boiler or pressure vessel subject to inspection by federal or state inspectors.
8. Pressure vessels used in specific *appliances* and *equipment* that are regulated by Chapter 9 of this code.

SECTION 1002—WATER HEATERS

1002.1 General. Potable water heaters and hot water storage tanks shall be *listed* and *labeled* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the *Plumbing Code of New York State* and this code. Water heaters shall be capable of being removed without first removing a permanent portion of the *building* structure. The potable water connections and relief valves for all water heaters shall conform to the requirements of the *Plumbing Code of New York State*. Domestic electric water heaters shall comply with UL 174 or UL 1453. Commercial electric water heaters shall comply with UL 1453. Oil-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 732. Solid-fuel-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 2523. Solar thermal water heating systems shall comply with Chapter 14 and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1002.2 Water heaters utilized for space heating. Water heaters utilized both to supply potable hot water and provide hot water for space-heating applications shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such applications by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

1002.2.1 Sizing. Water heaters utilized for both potable water heating and space-heating applications shall be sized to prevent the space-heating load from diminishing the required potable water-heating capacity.

1002.2.2 Temperature limitation. Where a combination potable water-heating and space-heating system requires water for space heating at temperatures higher than 140°F (60°C), a temperature-actuated mixing valve that conforms to ASSE 1017 shall be provided to temper the water supplied to the potable hot water distribution system to a temperature of 140°F (60°C) or less.

1002.3 Supplemental water-heating devices. Potable water-heating devices that utilize refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be *approved* and installed in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State* and the manufacturer's instructions.

1002.4 Water heater pan required. Where a storage-type water heater or a hot water storage tank is installed in a location where water leakage from the tank will cause damage, the tank shall be installed in a pan constructed of one of the following:

1. Galvanized steel or aluminum of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6 mm) in thickness.
2. Plastic of not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) in thickness constructed of material having a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
3. Other *approved* materials.

SECTION 1003—PRESSURE VESSELS

1003.1 General. All pressure vessels, unless otherwise *approved*, shall be constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and nationally recognized standards. Directly fired pressure vessels shall meet the requirements of Section 1004.

1003.2 Piping. All piping materials, fittings, joints, connections and devices associated with systems utilized in conjunction with pressure vessels shall be designed for the specific application and shall be *approved*.

1003.3 Welding. Welding on pressure vessels shall be performed by an R-Stamp holder in accordance with the National Board Inspection Code, Part 3 or in accordance with an *approved* standard.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 1004—BOILERS

1004.1 Standards. Boilers shall be designed, constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section I or IV. Controls and safety devices for boilers with fuel input ratings of less than 12,500,000 Btu/h (3,662,500 W) shall meet the requirements of ASME CSD-1. Controls and safety devices for boilers with inputs greater than or equal to 12,500,000 Btu/h (3,662,500 W) shall meet the requirements of NFPA 85. Packaged oil-fired boilers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 726. Packaged electric boilers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 834. Solid-fuel-fired boilers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2523.

[NY] 1004.1.1 Other standards. Low pressure boilers are also regulated by the New York State Department of Labor, 12 NYCRR, Industrial Code Rule 4 and high-pressure boilers are also regulated by the New York State Department of Labor, 12 NYCRR, Industrial Code Rule 14.

1004.2 Installation. In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions. Operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have all controls set, adjusted and tested by the installer. The manufacturer's rating data and the nameplate shall be attached to the boiler.

1004.3 Working clearance. *Clearances* shall be maintained around boilers, generators, heaters, tanks and related *equipment* and *appliances* so as to permit inspection, servicing, repair, replacement and visibility of all gauges. Where boilers are installed or replaced, *clearance* shall be provided to allow *access* for inspection, maintenance and repair. Passageways around all sides of boilers shall have an unobstructed width of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), unless otherwise *approved*.

1004.3.1 Top clearance. *Clearances* from the tops of boilers to the ceiling or other overhead obstruction shall be in accordance with Table 1004.3.1.

TABLE 1004.3.1—BOILER TOP CLEARANCES

BOILER TYPE	MINIMUM CLEARANCES FROM TOP OF BOILER TO CEILING OR OTHER OVERHEAD OBSTRUCTION (feet)
All boilers with manholes on top of the boiler except where a greater clearance is required in this table.	3
All boilers without manholes on top of the boiler except high-pressure steam boilers and where a greater clearance is required in this table.	2
High-pressure steam boilers with steam generating capacity not exceeding 5,000 pounds per hour.	3
High-pressure steam boilers with steam generating capacity exceeding 5,000 pounds per hour.	7
High-pressure steam boilers having heating surface not exceeding 1,000 square feet.	3
High-pressure steam boilers having heating surface in excess of 1,000 square feet.	7
High-pressure steam boilers with input not exceeding 5,000,000 Btu/h.	3
High-pressure steam boilers with input in excess of 5,000,000 Btu/h.	7
Steam-heating boilers and hot water-heating boilers with input exceeding 5,000,000 Btu/h.	3
Steam-heating boilers exceeding 5,000 pounds of steam per hour.	3
Steam-heating boilers and hot water-heating boilers having heating surface exceeding 1,000 square feet.	3

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 pound per hour = 0.4536 kg/h, 1 Btu/h = 0.293 W.

1004.4 Mounting. *Equipment* shall be set or mounted on a level base capable of supporting and distributing the weight contained thereon. Boilers, tanks and *equipment* shall be secured in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1004.5 Floors. Boilers shall be mounted on floors of noncombustible construction, unless *listed* for mounting on combustible flooring.

1004.6 Boiler rooms and enclosures. Boiler rooms and enclosures and *access* thereto shall comply with the *Building Code of New York State* and Chapter 3 of this code. Boiler rooms shall be equipped with a floor drain or other *approved* means for disposing of liquid waste.

1004.7 Operating adjustments and instructions. Hot water and steam boilers shall have all operating and safety controls set and operationally tested by the installing contractor. A complete control diagram and boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer for each installation.

SECTION 1005—BOILER CONNECTIONS

1005.1 Valves. Every boiler or modular boiler shall have a shutoff valve in the supply and return piping. For multiple boiler or multiple modular boiler installations, each boiler or modular boiler shall have individual shutoff valves in the supply and return piping.

Exception: Shutoff valves are not required in a system having a single low-pressure steam boiler.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

1005.2 Potable water supply. The water supply to all boilers shall be connected in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

SECTION 1006—SAFETY AND PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES AND CONTROLS

1006.1 Safety valves for steam boilers. Steam boilers shall be protected with a safety valve.

1006.2 Safety relief valves for hot water boilers. Hot water boilers shall be protected with a safety relief valve.

1006.3 Pressure relief for pressure vessels. Pressure vessels shall be protected with a pressure relief valve or pressure-limiting device as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the pressure vessel.

1006.4 Approval of safety and safety relief valves. Safety and safety relief valves shall be *listed* and *labeled*, and shall have a minimum rated capacity for the *equipment* or *appliances* served. Safety and safety relief valves shall be set at not greater than the nameplate pressure rating of the boiler or pressure vessel.

1006.5 Installation. Safety or relief valves shall be installed directly into the safety or relief valve opening on the boiler or pressure vessel. Valves shall not be located on either side of a safety or relief valve connection. The relief valve shall discharge by gravity.

1006.6 Safety and relief valve discharge. Safety and relief valve discharge pipes shall be of rigid pipe that is *approved* for the temperature of the system. High-pressure-steam safety valves shall be vented to the outside of the structure. The discharge piping serving pressure relief valves, temperature relief valves and combinations of such valves shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge through an air break located in the same room as the *appliance*.
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the air break.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or *equipment*.
5. Discharge to the floor, to the pan serving the boiler or storage tank, to a waste receptor or to the outdoors.
6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.
7. Discharge to a termination point that is readily visible and observable by the building occupants. If the discharge termination point is not readily visible and observable, a leak detection monitoring device with alarm notification (and not automatic shut-off) is required.
8. Not be trapped.
9. Be installed so as to flow by gravity.
10. Terminate not more than 6 inches (152 mm) above the floor or flood level rim of the waste receptor.
11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of such piping.
12. Not have valves or tee fittings.
13. Utilize piping material complying with Section 1202.

1006.7 Boiler safety devices. Boilers shall be equipped with controls and limit devices as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions and the conditions of the listing.

1006.8 Electrical requirements. The power supply to the electrical control system shall be from a two-wire branch circuit that has a grounded conductor, or from an isolation transformer with a two-wire secondary. Where an isolation transformer is provided, one conductor of the secondary winding shall be grounded. Control voltage shall not exceed 150 volts nominal, line to line. Control and limit devices shall interrupt the ungrounded side of the circuit. A means of manually disconnecting the control circuit shall be provided and controls shall be arranged so that when deenergized, the burner shall be inoperative. Such disconnecting means shall be capable of being locked in the off position and shall be provided with *ready access*.

SECTION 1007—BOILER LOW-WATER CUTOFF

1007.1 General. Steam and hot water boilers shall be protected with a low-water cutoff control.

Exception: A low-water cutoff is not required for coil-type and water-tube-type boilers that require forced circulation of water through the boiler and that are protected with a flow sensing control.

1007.2 Operation. Low-water cutoff controls and flow sensing controls required by Section 1007.1 shall automatically stop the *combustion* operation of the *appliance* when the water level drops below the lowest safe water level as established by the manufacturer or when water circulation stops, respectively.

SECTION 1008—BOTTOM BLOWOFF VALVE

1008.1 General. Steam boilers shall be equipped with bottom blowoff valve(s). The valve(s) shall be installed in the opening provided on the boiler. The minimum size of the valve(s) and associated piping shall be the size specified by the boiler manufacturer or the size of the boiler blowoff-valve opening. Where the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler exceeds 100 psig (689 kPa), two bottom blowoff valves shall be provided consisting of either two slow-opening valves in series or one quick-opening valve and one slow-opening valve in series, with the quick-opening valve installed closest to the boiler.

1008.2 Discharge. Blowoff valves shall discharge to a safe place of disposal. Where discharging to the drainage system, the installation shall conform to the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 1009—HOT WATER BOILER EXPANSION TANK

1009.1 Where required. An expansion tank shall be installed in every hot water system. For multiple boiler installations, not less than one expansion tank is required. Expansion tanks shall be of the closed or open type. Tanks shall be rated for the pressure of the hot water system.

Exception: Expansion tanks shall not be required in the collector loop of drain-back systems.

1009.2 Closed-type expansion tanks. Closed-type expansion tanks shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Expansion tanks for systems designed to have an operating pressure in excess of 30 psi (207 kPa) shall be constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*. The size of the tank shall be based on the capacity of the hot-water-heating system. The minimum size of the tank shall be determined in accordance with the following equation where all necessary information is known:

Equation 10-1
$$V_t = \frac{(0.00041T - 0.0466)V_s}{\left(\frac{P_a}{P_f}\right) - \left(\frac{P_a}{P_o}\right)}$$

For SI:
$$V_t = \frac{(0.000738T - 0.03348)V_s}{\left(\frac{P_a}{P_f}\right) - \left(\frac{P_a}{P_o}\right)}$$

where:

V_t = Minimum volume of tanks (gallons) (L).

V_s = Volume of system, not including expansion tanks (gallons) (L).

T = Average operating temperature (°F) (°C).

P_a = Atmospheric pressure (psi) (kPa).

P_f = Fill pressure (psi) (kPa).

P_o = Maximum operating pressure (psi) (kPa).

Where all necessary information is not known, the minimum size of the tank shall be determined from Table 1009.2.

TABLE 1009.2—CLOSED-TYPE EXPANSION TANK SIZING

SYSTEM VOLUME IN GALLONS	TANK CAPACITIES IN GALLONS	
	Pressurized Diaphragm Type	Nonpressurized Type
100	9	15
200	17	30
300	25	45
400	33	60
500	42	75
1,000	83	150
2,000	165	300

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.795 L.

1009.3 Open-type expansion tanks. Open-type expansion tanks shall be located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the highest heating element. The tank shall be adequately sized for the hot water system. An overflow with a minimum diameter of 1 inch (25 mm) shall be installed at the top of the tank. The overflow shall discharge to the drainage system in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

SECTION 1010—GAUGES

1010.1 Hot water boiler gauges. Every hot water boiler shall have a pressure gauge and a temperature gauge, or a combination pressure and temperature gauge. The gauges shall indicate the temperature and pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.

1010.2 Steam boiler gauges. Every steam boiler shall have a water-gauge glass and a pressure gauge. The pressure gauge shall indicate the pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.

1010.2.1 Water-gauge glass. The gauge glass shall be installed so that the midpoint is at the normal boiler water level.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102166

SECTION 1011—TESTS

1011.1 Tests. Upon completion of the assembly and installation of boilers and pressure vessels, acceptance tests shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* or the manufacturer's requirements, and such tests shall be *approved*. A copy of all test documents along with all manufacturer's data reports required by the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* shall be submitted to the code official.

1011.2 Test gauges. An indicating test gauge shall be connected directly to the boiler or pressure vessel where it is visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. The pressure gauge scale shall be graduated over a range of not less than one and one-half times and not greater than four times the maximum test pressure. Gauges utilized for testing shall be calibrated and certified by the test operator.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

11 REFRIGERATION

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 11 provides for the protection of life and property from the potential fire and health hazards associated with refrigerant chemicals and the machinery that contains such chemicals. Some refrigerants are toxic, some are flammable and some are both. This chapter refers to the Fire Code of New York State, ASHRAE 15 and IIAR Standards 2 through 5.*

SECTION 1101—GENERAL

1101.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, installation, construction and repair of *refrigeration systems*. Permanently installed refrigerant storage systems and other components shall be considered as part of the *refrigeration system* to which they are attached.

[NY] 1101.1.1 Refrigerants other than ammonia. *Refrigeration systems* using a refrigerant other than ammonia shall comply with this chapter, the *Fire Code of New York State*, and either ASHRAE 15 or ASHRAE 15.2, as applicable. *Refrigeration systems* containing carbon dioxide as the refrigerant shall also comply with IIAR CO2.

1101.1.2 Ammonia refrigerant. *Refrigeration systems* using ammonia refrigerant shall comply with IIAR 2 for system design, IIAR 3 for valves, IIAR 4 for installation, IIAR 5 for start-up, and IIAR 6 and shall not be required to comply with this chapter.

1101.2 Factory-built equipment and appliances. *Listed* and *labeled* self-contained, factory-built *equipment* and *appliances* shall be tested in accordance with the applicable standards specified in Table 1101.2. Such *equipment* and *appliances* are deemed to meet the design, manufacture and factory test requirements of this code if installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 1101.2—FACTORY-BUILT EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCES

EQUIPMENT	STANDARDS
Air-conditioning equipment	UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Packaged terminal air conditioners and heat pumps	UL 484 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Split-system air conditioners and heat pumps	UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Dehumidifiers	UL 474 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Unit coolers	UL 412 or UL/CSA 60335-2-89
Commercial refrigerators, freezers, beverage coolers and walk-in coolers	UL 471 or UL/CSA 60335-2-89
Refrigerating units and walk-in coolers	UL 427 or UL 60335-2-89
Refrigerant-containing components and accessories	UL 207

1101.2.1 Group A2L, A2, A3 and B1 high-probability equipment. High-probability equipment using Group A2L, A2, A3 or B1 refrigerant shall comply with UL 484, UL/CSA 60335-2-40 or UL/CSA 60335-2-89.

1101.3 Protection. Any portion of a *refrigeration system* that is subject to physical damage shall be protected in an *approved* manner.

1101.4 Water connection. Water supply and discharge connections associated with *refrigeration systems* shall be made in accordance with this code and the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

1101.5 Fuel gas connection. Fuel gas devices, *equipment* and *appliances* used with *refrigeration systems* shall be installed in accordance with the *Fuel Gas Code of New York State*.

1101.6 Maintenance. *Refrigeration systems* shall be maintained in proper operating condition, free from accumulations of oil, dirt, waste, excessive corrosion, other debris and leaks.

1101.7 Changing refrigerant. Changes of refrigerant in an existing system to a refrigerant with a different *refrigerant designation* shall be allowed only where in accordance with the following:

1. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be notified prior to making a change of refrigerant, and the change of refrigerant shall not be made where the owner objects to the change.
2. The change in refrigerant shall be in accordance with one of the following:
   - 2.1. Written instructions of the original equipment manufacturer.
   - 2.2. An evaluation of the system by a *registered design professional* or by an *approved* agency that validates safety and suitability of the replacement refrigerant.
   - 2.3. *Approved* by the code official.
3. Where the replacement refrigerant is classified into the same safety group, requirements that were applicable to the existing system shall continue to apply.
4. Where the replacement refrigerant is classified into a different safety group, the system shall comply with the requirements of this standard for a new installation, and the change of refrigerant shall require code official approval.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[F] 1101.8 Refrigerant discharge. Notification of refrigerant discharge shall be provided in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

1101.9 Locking access port caps. Refrigerant circuit access ports located outdoors shall be fitted with locking-type tamper-resistant caps or shall be otherwise secured to prevent unauthorized access.

Exception: This section shall not apply to refrigerant circuit access ports on *equipment* installed in controlled areas such as on roofs with locked access hatches or doors.

SECTION 1102—SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

1102.1 General. The refrigeration system classification, allowable refrigerants, maximum quantity, enclosure requirements, location limitations, and field pressure test requirements shall be determined as follows:

1. Determine the *refrigeration system's* classification, in accordance with Section 1103.3.
2. Determine the refrigerant classification in accordance with Section 1103.1.
3. Determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in accordance with Section 1104, based on type of refrigerant, refrigeration system classification and *occupancy*.
4. Determine the *refrigeration system* enclosure requirements in accordance with Section 1104.
5. Refrigeration *equipment* and *appliance* location and installation shall be subject to the limitations of Chapter 3.
6. Nonfactory-tested, field-erected *equipment* and *appliances* shall be pressure tested in accordance with Section 1108.

1102.2 Refrigerants. The refrigerant shall be that which the *equipment* or *appliance* was designed to utilize or converted to utilize. Refrigerants not identified in Table 1103.1 shall be *approved* before use.

1102.2.1 Mixing. Refrigerants with different *refrigerant designations* shall only be mixed in a system in accordance with both of the following:

1. The addition of a second refrigerant is allowed by the equipment manufacturer and is in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions.
2. The resulting mixture does not change the refrigerant safety group.

1102.2.2 Purity. Refrigerants used in *refrigeration systems* shall be new, recovered or *reclaimed refrigerants* in accordance with Section 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 or 1102.2.2.3. Where required by the *equipment* or *appliance* owner or the code official, the installer shall furnish a signed declaration that the refrigerant used meets the requirements of Section 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 or 1102.2.2.3.

Exception: The refrigerant used shall meet the purity specifications set by the manufacturer of the *equipment* or *appliance* in which such refrigerant is used where such specifications are different from that specified in Sections 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 and 1102.2.2.3.

1102.2.2.1 New refrigerants. Refrigerants shall be of a purity level specified by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer.

1102.2.2.2 Recovered refrigerants. Refrigerants that are recovered from refrigeration and air-conditioning systems shall not be reused in other than the system from which they were recovered and in other systems of the same owner. *Recovered refrigerants* shall be filtered and dried before reuse. *Recovered refrigerants* that show clear signs of contamination shall not be reused unless reclaimed in accordance with Section 1102.2.2.3.

1102.2.2.3 Reclaimed refrigerants. Used refrigerants shall not be reused in a different owner's *equipment* or *appliances* unless tested and found to meet the purity requirements of AHRI 700. Contaminated refrigerants shall not be used unless reclaimed and found to meet the purity requirements of AHRI 700.

1102.3 Access port protection. Refrigerant access ports shall be protected in accordance with Section 1101.9 whenever refrigerant is added to or recovered from refrigeration or air-conditioning systems.

SECTION 1103—REFRIGERATION SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION

1103.1 Refrigerant classification. Refrigerants shall be classified in accordance with ASHRAE 34 as listed in Table 1103.1.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft^3	ppm	g/m^3	lb/ 1000 ft^3	ppm	g/m^3	ppm	
R-11[c]	CCl_3F	trichlorofluoromethane	A1	0.39	1,100	6.1	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-12[c]	CCl_2F_2	dichlorodifluoromethane	A1	5.6	18,000	90	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13[c]	$CClF_3$	chlorotrifluoromethane	A1	—	—	—	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13B1[c]	$CBrF_3$	bromotrifluoromethane	A1	—	—	—	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13I1	CF_3I	trifluoroiodomethane	A1	1.0	2,000	16	—	—	—	500	—
R-14	CF_4	tetrafluoromethane (carbon tetrafluoride)	A1	25	110,000	400	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-22	$CHClF_2$	chlorodifluoromethane	A1	13	59,000	210	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-23	CHF_3	trifluoromethane (fluoroform)	A1	7.3	41,000	120	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-30	CH_2Cl_2	dichloromethane (methylene chloride)	B1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
R-31	CH_2ClF	chlorofluoromethane	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
R-32	CH_2F_2	difluoromethane (methylene fluoride)	A2L	4.8	36,000	77	19.1	144,000	306	1,000	1-4-0
R-40	CH_3Cl	chloromethane (methyl chloride)	B2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
R-41	CH_3F	fluoromethane (methyl fluoride)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
R-50	CH_4	methane	A3	—	—	—	—	50,000	—	1,000	—
R-113[c]	CCl_2FCClF_2	1,1,2-trichloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane	A1	1.2	2,600	20	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-114[c]	$CClF_2CClF_2$	1,2-dichloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	8.7	20,000	140	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-115	$CClF_2CF_3$	chloropentafluoroethane	A1	47	120,000	760	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-116	CF_3CF_3	hexafluoroethane	A1	34	97,000	550	—	—	—	1,000	1-0-0
R-123	$CHCl_2CF_3$	2,2-dichloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane	B1	3.5	9,100	57	—	—	—	50	2-0-0[b]
R-124	$CHClFCF_3$	2-chloro-1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	3.5	10,000	56	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-125	CHF_2CF_3	pentafluoroethane	A1	23	75,000	370	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-134a	CH_2FCF_3	1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	13	50,000	210	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-141b	CH_3CCl_2F	1,1-dichloro-1-fluoroethane	—	0.78	2,600	12	17.8	60,000	287	500	2-1-0
R-142b	CH_3CClF_2	1-chloro-1, 1-difluoroethane	A2	5.1	20,000	82	20.4	80,000	329	1,000	2-4-0
R-143a	CH_3CF_3	1,1,1-trifluoroethane	A2L	4.4	21,000	70	17.5	82,000	282	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-152a	CH_3CHF_2	1,1-difluoroethane	A2	2.0	12,000	32	8.1	48,000	130	1,000	1-4-0
R-170	CH_3CH_3	ethane	A3	0.54	7,000	8.6	2.4	31,000	38	1,000	2-4-0
R-E170	CH_3OCH_3	Methoxymethane (dimethyl ether)	A3	1.0	8,500	16	4.0	34,000	64	1,000	—
R-218	$CF_3CF_2CF_3$	octafluoropropane	A1	43	90,000	690	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]

102102166

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL—continued

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	ppm	
R-227ea	CF_3CHFCF_3	1,1,1,2,3,3,3-heptafluoropropane	A1	36	84,000	580	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-236fa	$CF_3CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoropropane	A1	21	55,000	340	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-245fa	$CHF_2CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3-pentafluoropropane	B1	12	34,000	190				300	2-0-0[b]
R-290	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane	A3	0.59	5,300	9.5	2.4	21,000	38	1,000	2-4-0
R-C318	$-(CF_2)_4-$	octafluorocyclobutane	A1	41	80,000	650	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-400[c]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (50.0/50.0)	A1	10	28,000	160	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-400[c]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (60.0/40.0)	A1	11	30,000	170	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-401A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (53.0/13.0/34.0)	A1	6.6	27,000	110	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-401B	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (61.0/11.0/28.0)	A1	7.2	30,000	120	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-401C	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (33.0/15.0/52.0)	A1	5.2	20,000	84	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-402A	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (60.0/2.0/38.0)	A1	17	66,000	270	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-402B	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (38.0/2.0/60.0)	A1	15	63,000	240	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-403A	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/75.0/20.0)	A2	7.6	33,000	120	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-403B	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/56.0/39.0)	A1	18	68,000	290	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-404A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a (44.0/52.0/4.0)	A1	31	130,000	500	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-405A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/142b/C318 (45.0/7.0/5.5/42.5)	—	16	57,000	260	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-406A	zeotrope	R-22/600a/142b (55.0/4.0/41.0)	A2	4.7	21,000	75	18.8[g]	82,000[g]	301.9[g]	1,000	—
R-407A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (20.0/40.0/40.0)	A1	19	83,000	300	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (10.0/70.0/20.0)	A1	21	79,000	330	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407C	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (23.0/25.0/52.0)	A1	18	81,000	290	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407D	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (15.0/15.0/70.0)	A1	16	68,000	250	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407E	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (25.0/15.0/60.0)	A1	17	80,000	280	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407F	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (30.0/30.0/40.0)	A1	20	95,000	320	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-407G	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (2.5/2.5/95.0)	A1	13	52,000	210	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-407H	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (32.5/15.0/52.5)	A1	19	92,000	300	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-407I	zeotrope	R-32/125/124a (19.5/8.5/72.0)	A1	16	71,100	250	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-408A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/22 (7.0/46.0/47.0)	A1	21	94,000	330	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-409A	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (60.0/25.0/15.0)	A1	7.1	29,000	110	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-409B	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (65.0/25.0/10.0)	A1	7.3	30,000	120	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-410A	zeotrope	R-32/125 (50.0/50.0)	A1	26	140,000	420	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL—continued

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft^3	ppm	g/m^3	lb/ 1000 ft^3	ppm	g/m^3	ppm	
R-410B	zeotrope	R-32/125 (45.0/55.0)	A1	27	140,000	430	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-411A	zeotrope	R-127/22/152a (1.5/87.5/11.0)	A2	2.9	14,000	46	11.6[f]	55,000[f]	185.6[f]	970	—
R-411B	zeotrope	R-1270/22/152a (3.0/94.0/3.0)	A2	2.8	13,000	45	14.8[f]	70,000[f]	238.3[f]	940	—
R-412A	zeotrope	R-22/218/142b (70.0/5.0/25.0)	A2	5.1	22,000	82	20.5[f]	87,000[f]	328.6[f]	1,000	—
R-413A	zeotrope	R-218/134a/600a (9.0/88.0/3.0)	A2	5.8	22,000	93	23.4[f]	88,000[f]	374.9[f]	1,000	—
R-414A	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (51.0/28.5/4.0/16.5)	A1	6.4	26,000	100	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-414B	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (50.0/39.0/1.5/9.5)	A1	6.0	23,000	96	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-415A	zeotrope	R-22/152a (82.0/18.0)	A2	2.9	14,000	47	11.7[g]	56,000[g]	187.9[g]	1,000	—
R-415B	zeotrope	R-22/152a (25.0/75.0)	A2	2.1	12,000	34	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-416A	zeotrope	R-134a/124/600 (59.0/39.5/1.5)	A1	3.9	14,000	62	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-417A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (46.6/50.0/3.4)	A1	3.5	13,000	55	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-417B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (79.0/18.3/2.7)	A1	4.3	15,000	69	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-417C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (19.5/78.8/1.7)	A1	5.4	21,000	87	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-418A	zeotrope	R-290/22/152a (1.5/96.0/2.5)	A2	4.8	22,000	77	19.2[g]	89,000[g]	308.4[g]	1,000	—
R-419A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (77.0/19.0/4.0)	A2	4.2	15,000	67	16.7[g]	60,000[g]	268.6[g]	1,000	—
R-419B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (48.5/48.0/3.5)	A2	4.6	17,000	74	18.5[g]	69,000[g]	297.3[g]	1,000	—
R-420A	zeotrope	R-134a/142b (88.0/12.0)	A1	12	44,000	180	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-421A	zeotrope	R-125/134a (58.0/42.0)	A1	17	61,000	280	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-421B	zeotrope	R-125/134a (85.0/15.0)	A1	21	69,000	330	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (85.1/11.5/3.4)	A1	18	63,000	290	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (55.0/42.0/3.0)	A1	16	56,000	250	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (82.0/15.0/3.0)	A1	18	62,000	290	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422D	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (65.1/31.5/3.4)	A1	16	58,000	260	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422E	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (58.0/39.3/2.7)	A1	16	57,000	260	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-423A	zeotrope	R-134a/227ea (52.5/47.5)	A1	19	59,000	300	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-424A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/600/601a (50.5/47.0/0.9/1.0/0.6)	A1	6.2	23,000	100	—	—	—	990	2-0-0[b]
R-425A	zoetrope	R-32/134a/227ea (18.5/69.5/12.0)	A1	16	72,000	260	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-426A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/601a (5.1/93.0/1.3/0.6)	A1	5.2	20,000	83	—	—	—	990	—
R-427A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a (15.0/25.0/10.0/50.0)	A1	18	79,000	290	—	—	—	1,000	2-1-0

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL—continued

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft^3	ppm	g/m^3	lb/ 1000 ft^3	ppm	g/m^3	ppm	
R-428A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/290/600a (77.5/20.0/0.6/1.9)	A1	23	84,000	370	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-429A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a/600a (60.0/10.0/30.0)	A3	0.81	6,300	13	3.2	25,000	83.8	1,000	—
R-430A	zeotrope	R-152a/600a (76.0/24.0)	A3	1.3	8,000	21	5.2	32,000	44.0	1,000	—
R-431A	zeotrope	R-290/152a (71.0/29.0)	A3	0.68	5,500	11	2.7	22,000	38.6	1,000	—
R-432A	zeotrope	R-1270/E170 (80.0/20.0)	A3	0.13	1,200	2.1	2.4	22,000	39.2	550	—
R-433A	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (30.0/70.0)	A3	0.34	3,100	5.5	2.4	20,000	32.4	750	—
R-433B	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (5.0-95.0)	A3	0.39	3,500	6.3	2.0	18,000	32.1	950	—
R-433C	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (25.0-75.0)	A3	0.41	3,700	6.5	2.0	18,000	83.8	790	—
R-433D	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (35.0/65.0)	A3	0.3	2,700	4.8	2.5	22,000	39	730	—
R-434A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/600a (63.2/18.0/16.0/2.8)	A1	20	73,000	320	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-435A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a (80.0/20.0)	A3	1.1	8,500	17	4.3	34,000	68.2	1,000	—
R-436A	zeotrope	R-290/600a (56.0/44.0)	A3	0.50	4,000	8.1	2.0	16,000	32.3	1,000	—
R-436B	zeotrope	R-290/600a (52.0/48.0)	A3	0.51	4,000	8.2	2.0	16,000	32.7	1,000	—
R-436C	zeotrope	R-290/600a (95.0/5.0)	A3	0.57	5,000	9.1	2.3	20,000	36.5	1,000	—
R-437A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600/601 (19.5/78.5/1.4/0.6)	A1	5.1	19,000	82	—	—	—	990	—
R-438A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/600/601a (8.5/45.0/44.2/1.7/0.6)	A1	4.9	20,000	79	—	—	—	990	—
R-439A	zeotrope	R-32/125/600a (50.0/47.0/3.0)	A2	4.7	26,000	76	18.9	104,000	303.3	1,000	—
R-440A	zeotrope	R-290/134a/152a (0.6/1.6/97.8)	A2	1.9	12,000	31	7.8[h]	46,000[h]	124.7[h]	1,000	—
R-441A	zeotrope	R-170/290/600a/600 (3.1/54.8/6.0/36.1)	A3	0.39	3,200	6.3	2.0	16,000	31.7	1,000	—
R-442A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/152a/227ea (31.0/31.0/30.0/3.0/5.0)	A1	21	100,000	330	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-443A	zeotrope	R-1270/290/600a (55.0/40.0/5.0)	A3	0.19	1,700	3.1	2.2	20,000	35.6	640	—
R-444A	zeotrope	R-32/152a/1234ze(E) (12.0/5.0/83.0)	A2L	5.0	21,000	80	19.9	82,000	319.4	850	—
R-444B	zeotrope	R-32/152a/1234ze(E) (41.5/10.0/48.5)	A2L	4.3	23,000	70	17.3	93,000	278.1	930	—
R-445A	zeotrope	R-744/134a/1234ze(E) (6.0/9.0/85.0)	A2L	5.4	16,000	87	21.6	63,000	347.4	930	—
R-446A	zeotrope	R-32/1234ze(E)/600 (68.0/29.0/3.0)	A2L	3.7	23,000	59	14.8	93,000	237.7	960	—
R-447A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E) (68.0/3.5/28.5)	A2L	5.2	32,000	83	20.6	128,000	331.4	960	—
R-447B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E) (68.0/8.0/24.0)	A2L	4.8	30,000	78	19.5	121,000	312.7	970	—

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL—continued

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	ppm	
R-448A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a/1234ze(E) (26.0/26.0/20.0/21.0/7.0)	A1	24	110,000	390	—	—	—	860	—
R-449A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (24.3/24.7/25.3/25.7)	A1	23	100,000	370	—	—	—	840	—
R-449B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (25.2/24.3/23.2/27.3)	A1	23	100,000	370	—	—	—	850	—
R-449C	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (20.0/20.0/31.0/29.0)	A1	23	98,000	360	—	—	—	800	—
R-450A	zeotrope	R-134a/1234ze(E) (42.0/58.0)	A1	20	72,000	320	—	—	—	880	—
R-451A	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (89.8/10.2)	A2L	5.3	18,000	81	21.3	74,000	341	530	—
R-451B	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (88.8/11.2)	A2L	5.0	18,000	81	21.3	74,000	341.6	530	—
R-452A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (11.0/59.0/30.0)	A1	27	100,000	440	—	—	—	790	—
R-452B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (67.0/7.0/26.0)	A2L	4.8	30,000	77	19.3	119,000	310.5	870	—
R-452C	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (12.5/61.0/26.5)	A1	27	100,000	430	—	—	—	810	—
R-453A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/227ea/600/601a (20.0/20.0/53.8/5.0/0.6/0.6)	A1	7.8	34,000	120	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-454A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (35.0/65.0)	A2L	4.4	21,000	70	17.5	84,000	281.4	690	—
R-454B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (68.9/31.1)	A2L	4.6	29,000	74	18.5	115,000	296.8	850	—
R-454C	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (21.5/78.5)	A2L	4.6	19,000	73	18.2	77,000	291.7	620	—
R-454D	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (43.0/57.0)	A2L	4.4	22,000	69	17.4	87,500	275	730	
R-455A	zeotrope	R-744/32/1234yf (3.0/21.5/75.5)	A2L	6.8	30,000	108	26.9	118,000	432.1	650	—
R-455B	zeotrope	R-744/32/1234yf (6.0/42.0/752.0)	A2L	5.2	28,000	81	20.6	110,000	324	800	
R-455C	zeotrope	R-744/32/1234yf (3.0/43.0/54.0)	A2L	4.8	25,000	76	19.3	110,000	305	770	
R-456A	zeotrope	R-32/134a/1234ze(E) (6.0/45.0/49.0)	A1	20	77,000	320	—	—	—	900	—
R-457A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a (18.0/70.0/12.0)	A2L	3.4	15,000	54	13.5	60,000	216.3	650	—
R-457B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a (35.0/55.0/10.0)	A2L	3.7	19,000	59	14.9	76,000	239	730	—
R-457C	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a (7.5/78.0/14.5)	A2L	3.4	13,800	54	13.6	55,000	215	610	
R-457D	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a (4.0/82.0/14.0)	A2L	3.6	14,000	58	14.9	57,000	235	580	
R-458A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/227ea/236fa (20.5/4.0/61.4/13.5/0.6)	A1	18	76,000	280	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-459A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/1234ze(E) (68.0/26.0/6.0)	A2L	4.3	27,000	69	17.4	107,000	278.7	870	—
R-459B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/1234ze(E) (21.0/69.0/10.0)	A2L	5.8	25,000	92	23.3	99,000	373.5	640	—

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL—continued

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	ppm	
R-460A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (12.0/52.0/14.0/22.0)	A1	24	92,000	380	—	—	—	950	—
R-460B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (28.0/25.0/20.0/27.0)	A1	25	120,000	400	—	—	—	950	—
R-460C	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (2.5/2.5/46.0/49.0)	A1	20	73,000	310	—	—	—	900	—
R-461A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a/227ea/600a (55.0/5.0/32.0/5.0/3.0)	A1	17	61,000	270	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-462A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a/600 (9.0/42.0/2.0/44.0/3.0)	A2	3.9	16,000	62	16.6[f]	105,000[f]	265.8[f]	1,000	—
R-463A	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/1234yf/134a (6.0/36.0/30.0/14.0/14.0)	A1	19	98,000	300	—	—	—	990	—
R-464A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E)/227ea (27.0/27.0/40.0/6.0)	A1	27	120,000	430	—	—	—	930	—
R-465A	zeotrope	R-32/290/1234yf (21.0/7.9/71.1)	A2	2.5	12,000	40	10.0	98,000	160.9	660	—
R-466A	zeotrope	R-32/125/13I1 (49.0/11.5/39.5)	A1	6.2	30,000	99	—	—	—	860	—
R-467A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/600a (22.0/5.0/72.4/0.6)	A2L	5.7	31,000	92	22.9	125,000	367	1,000	—
R-468A	zeotrope	R-1132a/32/1234yf (3.5/21.5/75.0)	A2L	4.2	18,000	68	16.9	73,000	270	610	—
R-468B	zeotrope	R-1132a/32/1234yf (6.0/13.0/81.0)	A2L	4.3	18,000	70	17.3	72,000	278	570	—
R-468C	zeotrope	R-1132a/32/1234yf (6.0/42.0/52.0)	A2L	4.3	23,000	69	17.2	92,000	276	710	—
R-469A	zeotrope	R-744/R-32/R-125 (35.0/32.5/32.5)	A1	8	53,000	—	—	—	—	1,600	—
R-470A	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/134a/1234ze(E)/227ea (10.0/17.0/19.0/7.0/44.0/3.0)	A1	17	77,000	270	—	—	—	1,100	—
R-470B	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/134a/1234ze(E)/227ea (10.0/17.0/19.0/7.0/44.0/3.0)	A1	16	72,000	270	—	—	—	1,100	—
R-471A	zeotrope	R-1234ze(E)/227ea/1336mzz(E) (78.7/4.3/17.0)	A1	9.7	31,000	160	—	—	—	710	—
R-472A	zeotrope	R-744/32/134a (69.0/12.0/19.0)	A1	4.5	35,000	72	—	—	—	2,700	—
R-472B	zeotrope	R-744/32/134a (58.0/10.0/32.0)	A1	5.0	36,000	80	—	—	—	2,400	—
R-473A	zeotrope	R-1132a/23/744/125 (20.0/10.0/60.0/10.0)	A1	4.8	36,000	77	—	—	—	1,700	—
R-474A	zeotrope	R-1132(E)/1234yf (23.0/77.0)	A2L	3.3	13,000	53	13	53,000	209	440	—
R-474B	zeotrope	R-1132(E)/1234yf (31.5/68.5)	A2L	3.0	13,000	47	12.0	51,000	189	420	—
R-475A	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a/1234ze(E) (45.0/43.0/12.0)	A1	20.0	73,000	320	—	—	—	690	—

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL—continued

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	ppm	
R-475B	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a/1234ze(E) (35.4/10.1/54.5)	A2L	5.9	20,000	93	23.0	80,000	370	670	—
R-476A	zeotrope	R-134a/1234ze(E)/1336mzz(E) (10.0/78.0/12.0)	A1	11	38,000	180	—	—	—	750	—
R-477A	zeotrope	R-1270/600a (84.0/16.0)	A3	0.13	1,100	2.0	2.4	21,000	38	530	—
R-477B	zeotrope	R-1270/600a (38.0/62.0)	A3	0.27	2,100	4.3	2.3	18,000	37	690	—
R-478A	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/134a/152a/1234ze(E)/227ea (7.0/26.0/15.0/15.0/3.0/30.0/4.0)	A2L	4.8	24,000	77	17.1[f]	95,000[f]	270[f]	1,100	—
R-479A	zeotrope	R-1132(E)/32/1234yf (28.0/21.5/50.5)	A2L	3.0	15,000	48	12.0	61,000	193	510	—
R-480A	zeotrope	R-744/1234ze(E)/227ea (5.0/86.0/9.0)	A1	16	59,000	260	—	—	—	900	—
R-481A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1233zd(E)/601a (16.9/6.3/74.4/1.8/0.6)	A1	10	45,000	160	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-482A	zeotrope	R-134a/1234ze(E)/1224yd(Z) (10.0/83.5/6.5)	A1	18	62,000	290	—	—	—	830	—
R-483A	zeotrope	R-290/600 (15.0/85.0)	A3	0.17	1,200	2.8	2.6	18,000	4.1	1,000	—
R-484A	zeotrope	R-1270/600 (12.0/88.0)	A3	0.14	1,000	2.3	2.6	18,000	41	860	—
R-486A	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a/13I1/1234ze(E) (21.9/6.3/38.0/33.8)	A1	2.5	7,300	40	—	—	—	620	—
R-487A	zeotrope	R-170/1270 (20.0/80.0)	A3	0.13	1,300	2.1	2.2	22,000	35	570	—
R-487B	zeotrope	R-170/1270 (17.0/83.0)	A3	0.13	1,300	2.1	2.3	22,000	36	560	—
R-488A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a/1234ze(E) (6.0/50.0/3.0/41.0)	A2L	4.3	16,000	68	17.1	63,000	270	650	—
R-489A	zeotrope	R-50/1150/600 (1.5/22.0/76.5)	A3	0.12	1,000	1.9	2.4	20,000	38	410	—
R-490A	zeotrope	R-1150/1270 (7.9/92.1)	A3	0.1	1,000	1.7	2.4	22,000	37	430	—
R-491A	zeotrope	R-1132(E)/152a (35.0/65.0)	A2	2.0	12,000	30.8	7.8	46,000	123	600	—
R-493A	zeotrope	R-290/600a/600 (9.4/30.9/59.7)	A3	3.9	1,700	3.9	2.2	15,000	35	1000	—
R-493B	zeotrope	R-290/600a/600 (11.8/29.1/59.1)	A3	0.24	1,700	3.9	2.2	15,000	35	1000	—
R-493C	zeotrope	R-290/600a/600 (15.1/28.3/56.6)	A3	0.25	1,800	4.1	2.2	15,000	34	1000	—
R-494A	zeotrope	R-744/152a/1311 (4.0/60.0/36.0)	A2	2.3	11,000	36	19	87,000	301	910	—
R-495A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/134a/1234ze(E) (4.5/76.0/9.0/10.5)	A2L	5.3	19,000	85	22	77,000	340	580	—
R-500[c]	azeotrope	R-12/152a (73.8/26.2)	A1	7.4	29,000	120	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-501[c]	azeotrope	R-22/12 (75.0/25.0)	A1	13	54,000	210	—	—	—	1,000	—

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL—continued

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	ppm	
R-502[c]	azeotrope	R-22/115 (48.8/51.2)	A1	21	73,000	330	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-503[c]	azeotrope	R-23/13 (40.1/59.9)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-504[c]	azeotrope	R-32/115 (48.2/51.8)	—	28	140,000	450	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-507A	azeotrope	R-125/143a (50.0/50.0)	A1	32	130,000	510	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-508A	azeotrope	R-23/116 (39.0/61.0)	A1	14	55,000	220	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-508B	azeotrope	R-23/116 (46.0/54.0)	A1	13	52,000	200	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-509A	azeotrope	R-22/218 (44.0/56.0)	A1	24	75,000	380	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-510A	azeotrope	R-E170/600a (88.0/12.0)	A3	0.87	7,300	14	3.5	29,000	56.1	1,000	—
R-511A	azeotrope	R-290/E170 (95.0/5.0)	A3	0.59	5,300	9.5	2.4	21,000	38.0	1,000	—
R-512A	azeotrope	R-134a/152a (5.0/95.0)	A2	1.9	11,000	31	7.7	45,000	123.9	1,000	—
R-513A	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (56.0/44.0)	A1	20	72,000	320	—	—	—	650	—
R-513B	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (58.5/41.5)	A1	21	74,000	330	—	—	—	640	—
R-514A	azeotrope	R-1336mzz(S)/1130(E) (74.7/25.3)	B1	0.86	2,400	14	—	—	—	320	—
R-515A	azeotrope	R-1234ze(E)/227ea (88.0/12.0)	A1	19	63,000	300	—	—	—	810	—
R-515B	azeotrope	R-1234ze(E)/227ea (91.1/8.9)	A1	18	61,000	290	—	—	—	810	—
R-516A	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a/152a (77.5/8.5/14.0)	A2	3.2	13,000	5 2	13.1	50,000	210.1	590	—
R-600	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	butane	A3	0.15	1,000	2.4	3.0	20,000	48	1,000	1-4-0
R-600a	$CH(CH_3)_2CH_3$	2-methylpropane (isobutane)	A3	0.59	4,000	9.5	2.4	16,000	38	1,000	2-4-0
R-601	$CH_3CH_2CH_2\ CH_2CH_3$	pentane	A3	0.18	1,000	2.9	2.2	12,000	35	600	—
R-601a	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$	2-methylbutane (isopentane)	A3	0.18	1,000	2.9	2.4	13,000	38	600	—
R-610	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$	ethoxyethane (ethyl ether)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	400	—
R-611	$HCOOCH_3$	methyl formate	B2	—	—	—	—	—	—	100	—
R-718	H_2O	water	A1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0-0-0
R-744	CO_2	carbon dioxide	A1	3.4	30,000	54	—	—	—	5,000	2-0-0[b]
R-1130(E)	CHCl=CHCl	trans-1,2-dichloroethene	B2	0.25	1,000	4	16	65,000	258	200	—
R-1132a	$CF_2=CH_2$	1,1-difluoroethene	A2	2.0	13,000	33	8.1	50,000	131	500	—
R-1132(E)	(E)-CFH=CFH	Trans-1,2-difluoroethene	B2	1.8	11,000	28	7.0	43,000	113	350	—
R-1150	$CH_2=CH_2$	ethene (ethylene)	B3	—	—	—	2.2	31,000	36	200	1-4-2
R-1224yd(Z)	$CF_3CF=CHCl$	(Z)-1-chloro-2,3,3,3-tetrafluoroethylene	A1	23	60,000	370	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-1233zd(E)	$CF_3CH=CHCl$	trans-1-chloro-3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propene	A1	5.3	16,000	85	—	—	—	800	—

[NY] TABLE 1103.1—REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL—continued

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULAS	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLENDS	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							(F) DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL[f]			OEL[d]	
				lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	lb/ 1000 ft³	ppm	g/m³	ppm	
R-1234yf	$CF_3CF=CH_2$	2,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1-propene	A2L	4.5	16,000	75	18.0	62,000	289	500	—
R-1234ze(E)	$CF_3CH=CFH$	trans-1,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1 -propene	A2L	4.7	16,000	76	18.8	65,000	303	800	—
R-1270	$CH_3CH=CH_2$	Propene (propylene)	A3	0.11	1,000	1.7	—	—	—	500	1-4-1
R-1336mzz(E)	$CF_3CHCHCF_3$	trans 1,1,1,4,4,4-hexafluoro-2- butene	A1	3.0	7,200	48	—	—	—	400	—
R-1336mzz(Z)	$CF_3CHCHCF_3$	cis-1,1,1,4,4,4-hexaflouro-2-butene	A1	5.2	13,000	84	—	—	—	500	—

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3.

a. Degrees of hazard are for health, fire, and reactivity, respectively, in accordance with NFPA 704.

b. Reduction to 1-0-0 is allowed if analysis satisfactory to the code official shows that the maximum concentration for a rupture or full loss of refrigerant charge would not exceed the IDLH, considering both the refrigerant quantity and room volume.

c. Class I ozone depleting substance; prohibited for new installations.

d. Occupational Exposure Limit based on the OSHA PEL, ACGIH TLV-TWA, the TERA WEEL or consistent value on a time-weighed average (TWA) basis (unless noted C for ceiling) for an 8 hr/d and 40 hr/wk.

[NY] e. LFL is based on the Worst Case of Formulation for Flammability (WCF) @ 73.4°F (23°C) unless otherwise noted.

[NY] f. Worst Case of Fractionation for Flammability (WCFF) LFL @ 140°F (60°C).

[NY] g. WCFF LFL @ 73.4°F (23°C).

[NY] h. WCF LFL @ 212°F (100°C).

1103.2 Occupancy classification. Locations of refrigerating systems are described by *occupancy* classifications that consider the ability of people to respond to potential exposure to refrigerants. Where *equipment* or *appliances*, other than piping, are located outside a *building* and within 20 feet (6096 mm) of any *building* opening, such *equipment* or *appliances* shall be governed by the *occupancy* classification of the *building*. *Occupancy* classifications shall be defined as follows:

1. Institutional *occupancy* is that portion of premises from which occupants cannot readily leave without the assistance of others because they are disabled, debilitated or confined. Institutional *occupancies* include, among others, hospitals, nursing homes, asylums and spaces containing locked cells.
2. Public assembly *occupancy* is that portion of premises where large numbers of people congregate and from which occupants cannot quickly vacate the space. Public assembly *occupancies* include, among others, auditoriums, ballrooms, classrooms, passenger depots, restaurants and theaters.
3. Residential *occupancy* is that portion of premises that provides the occupants with complete independent living facilities, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation. Residential *occupancies* include, among others, dormitories, hotels, multiunit apartments and private residences.
4. Commercial *occupancy* is that portion of premises where people transact business, receive personal service or purchase food and other goods. Commercial *occupancies* include, among others, office and professional *buildings*, markets (but not large mercantile *occupancies*) and work or storage areas that do not qualify as industrial *occupancies*.
5. Large mercantile *occupancy* is that portion of premises where more than 100 persons congregate on levels above or below street level to purchase personal merchandise.
6. Industrial *occupancy* is that portion of premises that is not open to the public, where access by authorized persons is controlled, and that is used to manufacture, process or store goods such as chemicals, food, ice, meat or petroleum.
7. Mixed *occupancy* occurs where two or more *occupancies* are located within the same *building*. Where each *occupancy* is isolated from the rest of the *building* by tight walls, floors and ceilings and by self-closing doors, the requirements for each *occupancy* shall apply to its portion of the *building*. Where the various *occupancies* are not so isolated, the *occupancy* having the most stringent requirements shall be the governing *occupancy*.

1103.3 System classification. *Refrigeration systems* shall be classified according to the degree of probability that refrigerant leaked from a failed connection, seal or component could enter an occupied area. The distinction is based on the basic design or location of the components.

1103.3.1 Low-probability systems. Double-indirect open-spray systems, indirect closed systems and indirect-vented closed systems shall be classified as low-probability systems, provided that all refrigerant-containing piping and fittings are isolated where the quantities in Table 1103.1 are exceeded.

1103.3.2 High-probability systems. Direct systems and indirect open-spray systems shall be classified as high-probability systems.

Exception: An indirect open-spray system shall not be required to be classified as a high-probability system if the pressure of the secondary coolant is at all times (operating and standby) greater than the pressure of the refrigerant.

SECTION 1104—REFRIGERATION SYSTEM APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

1104.1 General. The refrigerant, *occupancy* and system classification cited in this section shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1103.1, 1103.2 and 1103.3, respectively.

1104.2 Machinery room. Except as provided in Sections 1104.2.1 and 1104.2.2, all components containing the refrigerant shall be located either outdoors or in a *machinery room* where the quantity of refrigerant in an independent circuit of a *refrigeration system* exceeds the amounts shown in Table 1103.1. For refrigerant blends not listed in Table 1103.1, the same requirement shall apply where the amount for any blend component exceeds that indicated in Table 1103.1 for that component. This requirement shall also apply where the combined amount of the blend components exceeds a limit of 69,100 parts per million (ppm) by volume. *Machinery rooms* required by this section shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with Section 1105 for Group A1 and B1 refrigerants and in accordance with Sections 1105 and 1106 for Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants.

Exceptions:

1. *Machinery rooms* are not required for *listed equipment* and *appliances* containing not more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant, regardless of the refrigerant's safety classification, where installed in accordance with the *equipment's* or *appliance's* listing and the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Piping in compliance with Section 1107 is allowed in other locations to connect components installed in a *machinery room* with those installed outdoors.

1104.2.1 Institutional occupancies. The amounts shown in Table 1103.1 shall be reduced by 50 percent for all areas of institutional *occupancies* except kitchens, laboratories and mortuaries. The total of all Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not exceed 550 pounds (250 kg) in occupied areas or *machinery rooms*.

1104.2.2 Industrial occupancies and refrigerated rooms. This section applies only to rooms and spaces that: are within industrial *occupancies*; contain a refrigerant evaporator; are maintained at temperatures below 68°F (20°C); and are used for manufacturing, food and beverage preparation, meat cutting, other processes and storage. Where a *machinery room* would otherwise be required by Section 1104.2, a *machinery room* shall not be required where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The space containing the machinery is separated from other *occupancies* by tight construction with tight-fitting doors.
2. Access is restricted to authorized personnel.
3. Refrigerant detectors are installed as required for *machinery rooms* in accordance with Section 1105.3.

   Exception: Refrigerant detectors are not required in unoccupied areas that contain only continuous piping that does not include valves, valve assemblies, *equipment* or *equipment* connections.
4. Surfaces having temperatures exceeding 800°F (427°C) and open flames are not present where any Group A2, B2, A3 or B3 refrigerant is used (see Section 1104.3.4).
5. All electrical *equipment* and *appliances* conform to Class I, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70 where the quantity of any Group A2, B2, A3 or B3 refrigerant in a single independent circuit would exceed 25 percent of the lower flammability limit (LFL) upon release to the space.
6. All refrigerant-containing parts in refrigeration systems with a total connected compressor power exceeding 100 horsepower (hp) (74.6 kW)—except evaporators used for refrigeration or dehumidification, condensers used for heating, control and pressure relief valves for either, low-probability pumps and connecting piping—are located either outdoors or in a *machinery room*.

1104.3 Refrigerant restrictions. Refrigerant applications, maximum quantities and use shall be restricted in accordance with Sections 1104.3.1 through 1104.3.4.

1104.3.1 Air conditioning for human comfort. High-probability systems used for human comfort shall use Group A1 or A2L refrigerant.

Exceptions:

1. Equipment *listed* for and used in residential *occupancies* containing a maximum of 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant.
2. Equipment *listed* for and used in commercial *occupancies* containing a maximum of 22 pounds (10 kg) of refrigerant.
3. Industrial *occupancies*.

1104.3.2 Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants. Group A2 and B2 refrigerants shall not be used in high-probability systems. Group A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not be used except where *approved*.

Exceptions: This section does not apply to:

1. Laboratories where the floor area per occupant is not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).
2. *Listed* self-contained systems having a maximum of 0.331 pounds (150 g) of Group A3 refrigerant.
3. Industrial *occupancies*.
4. *Equipment listed* for and used in residential *occupancies* containing a maximum of 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of Group A2 or B2 refrigerant.
5. *Equipment listed* for and used in commercial occupancies containing a maximum of 22 pounds (10 kg) of Group A2 or B2 refrigerant.

1104.3.3 All occupancies. The total of all Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not exceed 1,100 pounds (499 kg) except where *approved*.

1104.3.4 Protection from refrigerant decomposition. Where any device having an open flame or surface temperature greater than 800°F (427°C) is used in a room containing more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant in a single independent circuit, a hood and exhaust system shall be provided in accordance with Section 509. Such exhaust system shall exhaust *combustion products* to the outdoors.

Exception: A hood and exhaust system shall not be required where any of the following apply:

1. The refrigerant is R-718 (water) or R-744 (carbon dioxide).
2. The *combustion air* is ducted from the outdoors in a manner that prevents leaked refrigerant from being combusted.
3. A refrigerant detector is used to stop the *combustion* in the event of a refrigerant leak (see Sections 1105.3 and 1105.5).

1104.4 Volume calculations. Volume calculations shall be in accordance with Sections 1104.4.1 through 1104.4.3.

1104.4.1 Noncommunicating spaces. Where the refrigerant-containing parts of a system are located in one or more spaces that do not communicate through permanent openings or HVAC ducts, the volume of the smallest, enclosed occupied space shall be used to determine the permissible quantity of refrigerant in the system.

1104.4.2 Communicating spaces. Where an evaporator or condenser is located in an air duct system, the volume of the smallest, enclosed occupied space served by the duct system shall be used to determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in the system.

Exception: If airflow to any enclosed space cannot be reduced below one-quarter of its maximum, the entire space served by the air duct system shall be used to determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in the system.

1104.4.3 Plenums. Where the space above a suspended ceiling is continuous and part of the supply or return air *plenum* system, this space shall be included in calculating the volume of the enclosed space.

SECTION 1105—MACHINERY ROOM, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[BF] 1105.1 Design and construction. *Machinery rooms* shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State* and this section.

1105.2 Openings. Ducts and air handlers in the *machinery room* that operate at a lower pressure than the room shall be sealed to prevent any refrigerant leakage from entering the airstream.

[F] 1105.3 Refrigerant detector. Refrigerant detectors in *machinery rooms* shall be provided as required by Sections 608.9 and 608.18 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

1105.4 Tests. Periodic tests of the mechanical ventilating system shall be performed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and as required by the code official.

1105.5 Fuel-burning appliances. Fuel-burning *appliances* and *equipment* having open flames and that use *combustion air* from the *machinery room* shall not be installed in a *machinery room*.

Exceptions:

1. Where the refrigerant is water (R-718) or carbon dioxide (R-744).
2. Fuel-burning *appliances* shall not be prohibited in the same *machinery room* with refrigerant-containing *equipment* or *appliances* where *combustion air* is ducted from outside the *machinery room* and sealed in such a manner as to prevent any refrigerant leakage from entering the *combustion* chamber, or where a refrigerant vapor detector is employed to automatically shut off the *combustion* process in the event of refrigerant leakage.

1105.6 Ventilation. *Machinery rooms* shall be mechanically ventilated to the outdoors.

Exception: Where a refrigerating system is located outdoors more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any *building* opening and is enclosed by a penthouse, lean-to or other open structure, natural or mechanical ventilation shall be provided. Location of the openings shall be based on the relative density of the refrigerant to air. The free-aperture cross section for the ventilation of the *machinery room* shall be not less than:

Equation 11-1 $F = \sqrt{G}$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

For SI: $F = 0.138\sqrt{G}$

where:

F = The free opening area in square feet (m^2).

G = The mass of refrigerant in pounds (kg) in the largest system, any part of which is located in the *machinery room*.

1105.6.1 Discharge location. The discharge of the air shall be to the outdoors in accordance with Chapter 5. Exhaust from mechanical ventilation systems shall be discharged not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from a property line or openings into *buildings*.

1105.6.1.1 Indoor exhaust opening location. Indoor mechanical exhaust intake openings shall be located where refrigerant leakage is likely to concentrate based on the refrigerant's relative density to air, and the locations of the air current paths and refrigerating machinery.

1105.6.2 Makeup air. Provisions shall be made for *makeup air* to replace that being exhausted. Openings for *makeup air* shall be located to avoid intake of *exhaust air*. Supply and exhaust ducts to the *machinery room* shall not serve any other area, shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 5 and shall be covered with corrosion-resistant screen of not less than $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

1105.6.3 Ventilation rate. Mechanical ventilation systems shall be capable of exhausting the minimum quantity of air both at normal operating and emergency conditions, as required by Sections 1105.6.3.1 and 1105.6.3.2. Multiple fans or multispeed fans shall be allowed to produce the emergency ventilation rate and to obtain a reduced airflow for normal ventilation.

1105.6.3.1 Quantity—normal ventilation. During occupied conditions, the mechanical ventilation system shall exhaust the larger of the following:

1. Not less than 0.5 cfm per square foot (0.0025 $m^3/s \times m^2$) of *machinery room* area or 20 cfm (0.009 m^3/s) per person.
2. A volume required to limit the room temperature rise to 18°F (10°C) taking into account the ambient heating effect of all machinery in the room.

1105.6.3.2 Quantity—emergency conditions. Upon actuation of the refrigerant detector required in Section 1105.3, the mechanical ventilation system shall *exhaust air* from the *machinery room* in the following quantity:

Equation 11-2 $Q = 100 \times \sqrt{G}$

For SI: $Q = 0.07 \times \sqrt{G}$

where:

Q = The airflow in cubic feet per minute (m^3/s).

G = The design mass of refrigerant in pounds (kg) in the largest system, any part of which is located in the *machinery room*.

1105.7 Termination of relief devices. Pressure relief devices, fusible plugs and purge systems located within the *machinery room* shall terminate outside of the structure at a location not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the adjoining grade level and not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any window, ventilation opening or exit.

[F] 1105.8 Emergency pressure control system. Emergency pressure control systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 608.11 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

[BE] 1105.9 Means of egress. *Machinery rooms* larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) shall have not less than two exits or exit access doorways. Where two exit access doorways are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of the room. All portions of *machinery rooms* shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway. An increase in exit access travel distance is permitted in accordance with Section 1017.1 of the *Building Code of New York State*. Exit and exit access doorways shall swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be equipped with panic hardware, regardless of the occupant load served. Exit and exit access doorways shall be tight fitting and self-closing.

SECTION 1106—MACHINERY ROOM, SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

1106.1 General. Where required by Section 1104.2, the *machinery room* shall meet the requirements of this section in addition to the requirements of Section 1105.

1106.2 Elevated temperature. There shall not be an open flame-producing device or continuously operating hot surface over 800°F (427°C) permanently installed in the room.

1106.3 Class 2 and 3 refrigerants. Where refrigerants of Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3 are used, the *machinery room* shall conform to the Class I, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70.

1106.4 Group A2L and B2L refrigerants. *Machinery rooms* for Group A2L and B2L refrigerants shall comply with Sections 1106.4.1 through 1106.4.3.

1106.4.1 Elevated temperatures. Open flame-producing devices or continuously operating hot surfaces over 1290°F (700°C) shall not be permanently installed in the room.

1106.4.2 Refrigerant detector. In addition to the requirements of Section 1105.3, refrigerant detectors shall signal an alarm and activate the ventilation system in accordance with the response time specified in Table 1106.4.2.TABLE 1106.4.2

TABLE 1106.4.2—GROUP A2L and B2L DETECTOR ACTIVATION

ACTIVATION LEVEL	MAXIMUM RESPONSE TIME (seconds)	ASHRAE 15 VENTILATION (seconds)	ALARM RESET	ALARM TYPE
Less than or equal to the OEL in Table 1103.1	300	1	Automatic	Trouble
Less than or equal to the refrigerant concentration level in Table 1103.1	15	2	Manual	Emergency

1106.4.3 Mechanical ventilation. The *machinery room* shall have a mechanical ventilation system complying with ASHRAE 15.

[F] 1106.5 Remote controls. Remote control of the mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* located in the *machinery room* shall comply with Sections 1106.5.1 and 1106.5.2.

[F] 1106.5.1 Refrigeration system emergency shutoff. A clearly identified switch of the break-glass type or with an *approved* tamper-resistant cover shall provide off-only control of refrigerant compressors, refrigerant pumps, and normally closed, automatic refrigerant valves located in the *machinery room*. Additionally, this *equipment* shall be automatically shut off whenever the refrigerant vapor concentration in the *machinery room* exceeds the vapor detector's upper detection limit or 25 percent of the LEL, whichever is lower.

[F] 1106.5.2 Ventilation system. A clearly identified switch of the break-glass type or with an *approved* tamper-resistant cover shall provide on-only control of the *machinery room* ventilation fans.

[F] 1106.6 Emergency signs and labels. Refrigeration units and systems shall be provided with *approved* emergency signs, charts, and labels in accordance with the *Fire Code of New York State*.

SECTION 1107—PIPING MATERIAL

1107.1 Piping. Refrigerant piping material shall conform to the requirements in this section.

1107.2 Used materials. Used pipe, fittings, valves and other materials that are to be reused shall be clean and free from foreign materials and shall be *approved* for reuse.

1107.3 Materials rating. Materials, joints and connections shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the *refrigeration system*. Materials shall be suitable for the type of refrigerant and type of lubricant in the *refrigeration system*. Magnesium alloys shall not be used in contact with any halogenated refrigerants. Aluminum, zinc, magnesium and their alloys shall not be used in contact with R-40 (methyl chloride).

[NY] 1107.4 Piping materials standards. Refrigerant pipe shall conform to one or more of the standards *listed* in Table 1107.4. For *refrigeration systems* used in residential *occupancies* serving only a single *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*, refrigerant piping and tubing shall be limited to aluminum, copper, and copper alloy. The exterior of the pipe shall be protected from corrosion and degradation.

TABLE 1107.4—REFRIGERANT PIPE

PIPING MATERIAL	STANDARD
Aluminum tube	ASTM B210, ASTM B491/B491M
Brass (copper alloy) pipe	ASTM B43
Copper linesets	ASTM B280, ASTM B1003
Copper pipe	ASTM B42, ASTM B302
Copper tube[a]	ASTM B68, ASTM B75, ASTM B88, ASTM B280, ASTM B819
Steel pipe[b]	ASTM A53, ASTM A106, ASTM A333
Steel tube	ASTM A254, ASTM A334

a. Soft annealed copper tubing larger than $1^{3}/_{8}$ inch (35 mm) O.D. shall not be used for field-assembled refrigerant piping unless it is protected from mechanical damage.
b. ASTM A53, Type F steel pipe shall only be permitted for discharge lines in pressure relief systems.

1107.4.1 Steel pipe Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3. The minimum weight of steel pipe for Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants shall be Schedule 80 for sizes $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches or less in diameter.

[NY] 1107.5 Pipe fittings. Refrigerant pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping materials to be installed, and shall conform to one of more of the standards listed in Table 1107.5 or shall be *listed* and *labeled* as complying with UL 207. For *refrigeration systems* used in residential *occupancies* serving only a single *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*, refrigerant fittings shall be limited to aluminum, copper, copper alloys, stainless steel, and steel.

TABLE 1107.5—REFRIGERANT PIPE FITTINGS	
FITTING MATERIAL	**STANDARD**
Aluminum	ASTM B361
Copper and copper alloy (brass)	ASME B16.15, ASME B16.18, ASME B16.22, ASME B16.24, ASME B16.26, ASME B16.50
Steel	ASTM A105, ASTM A181, ASTM A193, ASTM A234, ASTM A420, ASTM A707

1107.5.1 Copper brazed field swaged. The minimum and maximum cup depth of field-fabricated copper brazed swaged fitting connections shall comply with Table 1107.5.1.

TABLE 1107.5.1—COPPER BRAZED SWAGED CUP DEPTHS		
FITTING SIZE (inch)	**MINIMUM DEPTH (inch)**	**MAXIMUM DEPTH (inch)**
1/8	0.15	0.23
3/16	0.16	0.24
1/4	0.17	0.26
3/8	0.20	0.30
1/2	0.22	0.33
5/8	0.24	0.36
3/4	0.25	0.38
1	0.28	0.42
1 1/4	0.31	0.47
1 1/2	0.34	0.51
2	0.40	0.60
2 1/2	0.47	0.71
3	0.53	0.80
3 1/2	0.59	0.89
4	0.64	0.96
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.		

1107.6 Valves. Valves shall be of materials that are compatible with the type of piping material, refrigerants and oils in the *refrigeration system*. Valves shall be *listed* and *labeled* and rated for the temperatures and pressures of the *refrigeration systems* in which the valves are installed.

1107.7 Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration compensators. Flexible connectors and expansion and vibration control devices shall be *listed* and *labeled* for use in *refrigeration systems* and pressures at which the components are installed.

SECTION 1108—JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1108.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be of an *approved* type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the *refrigeration system* when tested in accordance with Section 1110.

1108.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings. Joints between dissimilar metallic piping materials shall be made with a dielectric fitting or a dielectric union conforming to dielectric tests of ASSE 1079. Adapter fittings with threaded ends between different materials shall be joined with thread lubricant in accordance with Section 1108.3.4.

1108.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered, and shall be free from burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1108.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1108.4 through 1108.8, the preparation and installation of brazed, flared, mechanical, press-connect, soldered, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1108.3.1 through 1108.3.5.

1108.3.1 Brazed joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required by the braze filler metal manufacturer. The piping being brazed shall be purged of air to remove the oxygen and filled with one of the following inert gases: oxygen-free nitrogen, helium or argon. The piping system shall be prepurged with an inert gas for a minimum time corresponding

to five volume changes through the piping system prior to brazing. The pre-purge rate shall be at a minimum velocity of 100 feet per minute (0.508 m/s). The inert gas shall be directly connected to the tube system being brazed to prevent the entrainment of ambient air. After the pre-purge, the inert gas supply shall be maintained through the piping during the brazing operation at a minimum pressure of 1.0 psi (6.89 kPa) and a maximum pressure of 3.0 psi (20.67 kPa). The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

1108.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1108.3.2.1 Flared joints. Flared fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The flared fitting shall be used with the tube material specified by the fitting manufacturer. The flared tube end shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

1108.3.2.2 Press-connect joints. *Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1108.3.3 Soldered joints. Joint surfaces to be soldered shall be cleaned and a flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32. Solder joints shall be limited to *refrigeration systems* using Group A1 refrigerant and having a pressure of less than or equal to 200 psi (1378 kPa).

1108.3.4 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.1, ASME B1.13M, ASME B1.20.1 or ASME B1.20.3. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or thread tape shall be applied on the external threads only and shall be *approved* for application on the piping material.

1108.3.5 Welded joints. Joint surfaces to be welded shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. Joints shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1108.4 Aluminum tube. Joints between aluminum tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.5 Copper pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press-connect, soldered, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.6 Copper tube. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, flared, mechanical, press-connect or soldered joints.

1108.7 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints, threaded, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.8 Steel tube. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be flared, mechanical, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

SECTION 1109—REFRIGERANT PIPE INSTALLATION

1109.1 General. Refrigerant piping installations shall comply with the requirements of this section. The design of refrigerant piping shall be in accordance with ASME B31.5.

1109.2 Piping location. Refrigerant piping shall comply with the installation location requirements of Sections 1109.2.1 through 1109.2.7. Refrigerant piping for Groups A2L and B2L shall also comply with the requirements of Section 1109.3. Refrigerant piping for Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3 shall also comply with the requirements of Section 1109.4.

1109.2.1 Minimum height. Exposed refrigerant piping installed in open spaces that afford passage shall be not less than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the finished floor.

1109.2.2 Refrigerant pipe enclosure. Refrigerant piping shall be protected by locating it within the building elements or within protective enclosures.

Exception: Piping protection within the *building* elements or protective enclosure shall not be required in any of the following locations:

1. Where installed without *ready access* or located more than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the finished floor.
2. Where located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the refrigerant unit or *appliance*.
3. Where located in a *machinery room* complying with Section 1105.
4. Outside the *building*:
    - 4.1. Where protected from damage from the weather, including but not limited to hail, ice and snow loads.
    - 4.2. Where protected from damage within the expected foot or traffic path.
    - 4.3. Where installed underground not less than 8 inches (200 mm) below finished grade and protected against corrosion.

1109.2.3 Prohibited locations. Refrigerant piping shall not be installed in any of the following locations:

1. Exposed within a fire-resistance-rated exit access corridor.
2. Exposed within an interior exit stairway.
3. Within an interior exit ramp.
4. Within an exit passageway.
5. Within an elevator, dumbwaiter or other shaft containing a moving object.

1109.2.4 Piping in concrete floors. Refrigerant piping installed in concrete floors shall be encased in pipe, conduit or ducts. The piping shall be protected to prevent damage from vibration, stress and corrosion.

[NY] 1109.2.5 Refrigerant pipe shafts. Refrigerant piping that penetrates two or more floor/ceiling assemblies shall be enclosed in a fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosure. The fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosure shall comply with Section 713 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

Exceptions:

1. *Refrigeration systems* using R-718 refrigerant (water).
2. Piping in a *direct refrigeration system* where the refrigerant quantity does not exceed the limits of Table 1103.1 for the smallest occupied space through which the piping passes.
3. Piping located on the exterior of the *building* where vented to the outdoors.

1109.2.6 Exposed piping surface temperature. Exposed piping having surface temperatures greater than 120°F (49°C) or less than 5°F (-15°C) with *ready access* to nonauthorized personnel shall be protected from contact or shall have thermal insulation that limits the exposed insulation surface temperature to a range of 5°F (-15°C) to 120°F (49°C).

[NY] 1109.2.7 Pipe identification. Refrigerant pipe located in areas other than the room or space where the refrigerating *equipment* is located shall be identified. The pipe identification shall be located at intervals not exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) on the refrigerant piping or pipe insulation. The minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm). The identification shall indicate the *refrigerant designation* and safety group classification of refrigerant used in the piping system. For Group A2L and B2L refrigerants, the identification shall also include the following statement: "WARNING—Risk of Fire. Flammable Refrigerant." For Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants, the identification shall also include the following statement: "DANGER—Risk of Fire or Explosion. Flammable Refrigerant." For any Group B refrigerant, the identification shall also include the following statement: "DANGER—Toxic Refrigerant."

Exception: For *refrigeration systems* used in residential *occupancies* serving only a single *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit,* pipe-identification shall not be required.

1109.3 Installation requirements for Group A2L, A2, A3, B2L, B2 or B3 refrigerant. Piping systems using Group A2L, A2, A3, B2L, B2 or B3 refrigerant shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1109.3.1 and 1109.3.2.

1109.3.1 Protection against physical damage. In addition to the requirements of Section 305.5, aluminum, copper and steel tube used for Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants and located in concealed locations where tubing is installed in studs, joists, rafters or similar member spaces, and located less than $1^{1}/_{4}$ inches (32 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, shall be continuously protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates shall cover the area of the tube plus the area extending not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond both sides of the tube.

1109.3.1.1 Shield plates. Shield plates shall be of steel material having a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.46 mm) (No. 16 gage).

[NY] 1109.3.2 Shaft ventilation. Refrigerant pipe shafts with systems using Group A2L or B2L refrigerant shall be naturally or mechanically ventilated. Refrigerant pipe shafts with one or more systems using any Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant shall be continuously mechanically ventilated and shall include a refrigerant detector. The shaft ventilation exhaust outlet shall comply with Section 501.3.1. Naturally ventilated shafts shall have a pipe, duct or conduit not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter that connects to the lowest point of the shaft and extends to the outdoors. The pipe, duct or conduit shall be level or pitched downward to the outdoors. Mechanically ventilated shafts shall have a minimum airflow velocity in accordance with Table 1109.3.2. The mechanical ventilation shall be continuously operated or activated by a refrigerant detector. Systems utilizing a refrigerant detector shall activate the mechanical ventilation at a maximum refrigerant concentration of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit of the refrigerant. The detector, or a sampling tube that draws air to the detector, shall be located in an area where refrigerant from a leak will concentrate. The shaft shall not be required to be ventilated for double-wall refrigerant pipe where the interstitial space of the double-wall pipe is vented to the outdoors. For *refrigeration systems* used in residential *occupancies* serving only a single *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*, shaft ventilation shall not be required where the pipe or tube is continuous without fittings in the shaft.

TABLE 1109.3.2—SHAFT VENTILATION VELOCITY

CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF SHAFT (square inches)	MINIMUM VENTILATION VELOCITY (feet per minute)
≤ 20	100
> 20 ≤ 250	200
> 250 ≤ 1,250	300
> 1,250	400

For SI: 1 square inch = 645 mm^2, 1 foot per minute = 0.0058 m/s.

1109.4 Refrigerant pipe penetrations. The annular space between the outside of a refrigerant pipe and the inside of a pipe sleeve or opening in a *building* envelope wall, floor or ceiling assembly penetrated by a refrigerant pipe shall be sealed in an *approved*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

manner with caulking material or foam sealant or closed with a gasketing system. The caulking material, foam sealant or gasketing system shall be designed for the conditions at the penetration location and shall be compatible with the pipe, sleeve and *building* materials in contact with the sealing materials. Refrigerant pipes penetrating fire-resistance-rated assemblies or membranes of fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be sealed or closed in accordance with Section 714 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

1109.5 Stress and strain. Refrigerant piping shall be installed so as to prevent strains and stresses that exceed the structural strength of the pipe. Where necessary, provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from vibration, expansion, contraction and structural settlement.

1109.6 Stop valves. Stop valves shall be installed in specified locations in accordance with Sections 1109.6.1 and 1109.6.2. Stop valves shall be supported in accordance with Section 1109.6.3 and identified in accordance with Section 1109.6.4.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that have a refrigerant pumpout function capable of storing the entire refrigerant charge in a receiver or heat exchanger.
2. Systems that are equipped with provisions for pumping out the refrigerant using either portable or permanently installed refrigerant recovery *equipment*.
3. Self-contained *listed* and *labeled* systems.

1109.6.1 Refrigeration systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3.0 kg) of refrigerant. Stop valves shall be installed in the following locations on refrigeration systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3.0 kg) of refrigerant:

1. The suction inlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
2. The discharge outlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
3. The outlet of each liquid receiver.

1109.6.2 Refrigeration systems containing more than 100 pounds (45 kg) of refrigerant. In addition to stop valves required by Section 1109.6.1, refrigeration systems containing more than 100 pounds (45 kg) of refrigerant shall have stop valves installed in the following locations:

1. Each inlet of each liquid receiver.
2. Each inlet and each outlet of each condenser where more than one condenser is used in parallel.

Exceptions:

1. Stop valves shall not be required at the inlet of a receiver in a condensing unit nor at the inlet of a receiver that is an integral part of the condenser.
2. *Refrigeration systems* utilizing nonpositive displacement compressors.

1109.6.3 Stop valve support. Stop valves shall be supported to prevent detrimental stress and strain on the refrigerant piping system. The piping system shall not be utilized to support stop valves on copper tubing or aluminum tubing 1 inch (25.4 mm) outside diameter or larger.

1109.6.4 Identification. Stop valves shall be identified where their intended purpose is not obvious. Where valves are identified by a numbering or lettering system, legend(s) or key(s) for the valve identification shall be located in the room containing the indoor refrigeration *equipment*. The minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

SECTION 1110—REFRIGERATION PIPING SYSTEM TEST

1110.1 General. Refrigerant piping systems that are erected in the field shall be pressure tested for strength and leak tested for tightness, in accordance with the requirements of this section, after installation and before being placed in operation. Tests shall include both the high- and low-pressure sides of each system.

Exception: *Listed* and *labeled equipment*, including compressors, condensers, vessels, evaporators, gas bulk storage tanks, safety devices, pressure gauges and control mechanisms, shall not be required to be tested.

1110.2 Exposure of refrigerant piping system. Refrigerant pipe and joints installed in the field shall be exposed for visual inspection and testing prior to being covered or enclosed.

1110.3 Field test gases. The medium used for field pressure testing the *refrigeration system* shall be one of the following inert gases: oxygen-free nitrogen, helium argon or premixed nonflammable oxygen-free nitrogen with a tracer gas of hydrogen or helium. For R-744 refrigeration systems, carbon dioxide shall be allowed as the test medium. For R-718 *refrigeration systems*, water shall be allowed as the test medium.

1110.3.1 Test gases not permitted. Oxygen, air, refrigerants other than those identified in Section 1110.3, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used as the pressure test medium.

1110.4 Factory test procedure. Factory tests shall be performed with dry nitrogen or other nonflammable, nonreactive, dried gas. Oxygen, air or mixtures containing them shall not be used. The means used to build up the test pressure shall have either a pressure-limiting device or a pressure-reducing device and a gauge on the outlet side. The pressure-relief device shall be set above the test pressure but low enough to prevent permanent deformation of the *refrigeration system's* components.

Exceptions:

1. Mixtures of dry nitrogen, inert gases or a combination of them with Class 1 refrigerant in concentrations of a refrigerant weight fraction (mass fraction) not exceeding 5 percent shall be permitted for tests.

2. Mixtures of dry nitrogen, inert gases or a combination of them with Class 2L, Class 2 and Class 3 refrigerants in concentrations not exceeding the lower of a refrigerant weight fraction (mass fraction) of 5 percent or 25 percent of the LFL shall be permitted for tests.
3. Compressed air without added refrigerants shall be permitted for tests, provided that the *refrigeration system* is subsequently evacuated to less than 1,000 microns (0.1333 kPa) before charging with refrigerant. The required evacuation level is atmospheric pressure for *refrigeration systems* using R-718 (water) or R-744 (carbon dioxide) as the refrigerant.
4. Systems erected on the premises using Group A1 refrigerant and with copper tubing not exceeding 0.62 of an inch (15.7 mm) outside diameter shall be tested by means of the refrigerant charged into the system at the saturated vapor pressure of the refrigerant at not less than 68°F (20°C).

1110.5 Test apparatus. The means used to pressurize the refrigerant piping system shall have on its outlet side a test pressure measuring device and either a pressure-limiting device or a pressure-reducing device. The test pressure measuring device shall have an accuracy of ±3 percent or less of the test pressure and shall have a resolution of 5 percent or less of the test pressure.

1110.6 Piping system strength test. Refrigeration system components and refrigerant piping shall be tested in accordance with ASME B31.5 or this section. Separate tests for isolated portions of the system are permitted, provided that all required portions are tested at least once. Pressurize with test gas for a minimum of 10 minutes to not less than the lower of (a) the lowest design pressure for any system component or (b) the lowest value of set pressure for any pressure relief devices in the system. The design pressures for determination of test pressure shall be the pressure identified on the label nameplate of the condensing unit, compressor, compressor unit, pressure vessel or other system component with a nameplate. A passing test result shall have no rupture or structural failure of any system component or refrigerant piping.

Refrigerant piping and tubing greater than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) in diameter shall be tested in accordance with ASHRAE 15.

1110.7 Contractor or engineer declaration. The installing contractor or *registered design professional* of record shall issue a certificate of test to the code official for all *refrigeration systems* containing 55 pounds (25 kg) or more of refrigerant. The certificate shall give the test date, name of the refrigerant, test medium and the field test pressure applied to the high-pressure side and the low-pressure side of the *refrigeration system*. The certification of test shall be signed by the installing contractor or *registered design professional* and shall be made part of the public record.

[F] SECTION 1111 —PERIODIC TESTING

[F] 1111.1 Testing required. The following emergency devices and systems shall be periodically tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and as required by the code official:

1. Treatment and flaring systems.
2. Valves and appurtenances necessary to the operation of emergency refrigeration control boxes.
3. Fans and associated *equipment* intended to operate emergency ventilation systems.
4. Detection and alarm systems.

CHAPTER
12
HYDRONIC PIPING

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 12 addresses the piping systems used in heating and cooling systems. Such piping typically conveys water, water and antifreeze solutions, steam and condensate. The fluids conveyed are heated or cooled by boilers, chillers and heat pumps, which are all components of HVAC systems.*

SECTION 1201—GENERAL

1201.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of hydronic piping systems. This chapter shall apply to hydronic piping systems that are part of heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems. Such piping systems shall include steam, hot water, radiant heating, radiant cooling, chilled water, steam condensate, ground source heat pump loop systems, and snow- and ice-melting. Potable cold and hot water distribution systems shall be installed in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

1201.2 Sizing. Piping and piping system components for hydronic systems shall be sized for the demand of the system.

1201.3 Standards. As an alternative to the provisions of Sections 1202 and 1203, piping shall be designed, installed, inspected and tested in accordance with ASME B31.9.

SECTION 1202—MATERIAL

1202.1 Piping. Piping material shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

Exception: Embedded piping regulated by Section 1209.

1202.2 Used materials. Reused pipe, fittings, valves or other materials shall be clean and free from foreign materials and shall be *approved* by the code official for reuse.

1202.3 Material rating. Materials shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the hydronic system. Materials shall be suitable for the type of fluid in the hydronic system.

1202.4 Piping materials standards. Hydronic pipe shall conform to the standards listed in Table 1202.4. The exterior of the pipe shall be protected from corrosion and degradation.

TABLE 1202.4—HYDRONIC PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe	ASTM F2806
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC)	ASTM F2855
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tube (Type K, L or M)	ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B135; ASTM B251
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe	ASTM F1281; CSA CAN/CSA-B-137.10
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing	ASTM F876; ASTM F3253; CSA B137.5
Ductile iron pipe	AWWA C115/A21.15; AWWA C151/A21.51
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9
Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe	ASTM F2389
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18
Stainless steel pipe	ASTM A269; ASTM A312; ASTM A778
Stainless steel tubing	ASTM A269; ASTM A312; ASTM A778
Steel pipe	ASTM A53; ASTM A106
Steel tubing	ASTM A254

1202.5 Pipe fittings. Hydronic pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping materials to be installed, and shall conform to the respective pipe standards or to the standards listed in Table 1202.5.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1202.5—HYDRONIC PIPE FITTINGS	
MATERIAL	**STANDARD (see Chapter 15)**
Copper and copper alloys	ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.24; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.51; ASSE 1061; ASTM F1974; ASTM F3226
CPVC	ASSE 1061; ASTM D2846; ASTM F438; ASTM F439
Ductile iron and gray iron	ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10; ASTM A395; ASTM A536; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548; AWWA C153/A21.53
Ductile iron	ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53
Gray iron	ASTM A126
Malleable iron	ASME B16.3
PE-RT fittings	ASSE 1061; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM F2769; ASTM F3347; ASTM F3348; CSA B137.1; CSA B137.18
PEX fittings	ASSE 1061; ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2159; ASTM F3253; ASTM F3347; ASTM F3348
Plastic	ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; ASTM D2846; ASTM F877; ASTM F2389; ASTM F2735
Stainless steel	ASTM A269; ASTM A312; ASTM A778; ASTM F3226
Steel	ASME B16.5; ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28; ASTM A53; ASTM A106; ASTM A234; ASTM A395; ASTM A420; ASTM A536; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548; ASTM F3226

1202.6 Valves. Valves shall be constructed of materials that are compatible with the type of piping material and fluids in the system. Valves shall be rated for the temperatures and pressures of the systems in which the valves are installed.

1202.7 Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration compensators. Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration control devices and fittings shall be of an *approved* type.

SECTION 1203—JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1203.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be of an *approved* type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the hydronic system.

1203.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings.

1203.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered, and shall be free from burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1203.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1203.4 through 1203.12, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, soldered, solvent-cemented, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1203.3.1 through 1203.3.8.2.

1203.3.1 Brazed joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8M/A5.8.

1203.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.3.3 Soldered joints. Solder joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

1203.3.4 Solvent-cemented joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. An *approved* primer shall be applied to CPVC and PVC pipe-joint surfaces. Joints shall be made while the cement is wet. Solvent cement conforming to the following standards shall be applied to all joint surfaces:

1. ASTM D2235 for ABS joints.
2. ASTM F493 for CPVC joints.
3. ASTM D2564 for PVC joints.

CPVC joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2846.

Exception: For CPVC pipe joint connections, a primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is *third-party certified* as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement is yellow or green in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch (51 mm) diameter CPVC pipe and fittings.
4. The CPVC pipe or fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

1203.3.5 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier plastic pipe shall be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only and shall be *approved* for application on the piping material.

1203.3.6 Welded joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. Joints shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1203.3.7 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints. Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1476 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.3.8 Mechanically formed tee fittings. Mechanically extracted outlets shall have a height not less than three times the thickness of the branch tube wall.

1203.3.8.1 Full flow assurance. Branch tubes shall not restrict the flow in the run tube. A dimple/depth stop shall be formed in the branch tube to ensure that penetration into the outlet is of the correct depth. For inspection purposes, a second dimple shall be placed $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) above the first dimple. Dimples shall be aligned with the tube run.

1203.3.8.2 Brazed joints. Mechanically formed tee fittings shall be brazed in accordance with Section 1203.3.1.

1203.4 ABS plastic pipe. Joints between ABS plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.5 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, soldered, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.6 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or soldered joints conforming to Section 1203.3, flared joints conforming to Section 1203.6.1, push-fit joints conforming to Section 1203.6.2 or *press-connect joints* conforming to Section 1203.6.3.

1203.6.1 Flared joints. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

1203.6.2 Push-fit joints. Push-fit joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.6.3 Press-connect joints. *Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.7 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be mechanical, solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.8 CPVC/AL/CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC/AL/CPVC plastic pipes or fittings shall be mechanical, solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.9 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.9.1 through 1203.9.3. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section 1203.3.

1203.9.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.9.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Soldering on the metal portion of the system shall be performed not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from a plastic-to-metal adapter in the same water line.

1203.9.3 Push-fit fittings. Push-fit fittings shall comply with ASSE 1061 and be used with PEX tubing that is rated for use with such fittings by the tubing manufacturer.

1203.10 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.11 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints that are made with an *approved* elastomeric seal, or shall be threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.12 Steel tubing. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.13 Stainless steel pipe. Joints between stainless steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints that are made with an *approved* elastomeric seal, or shall be threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.14 Stainless steel tubing. Joints between stainless steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.15 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 1203.15.1 and 1203.15.2.

1203.15.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electro-fusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

1203.15.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.16 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.16.1 through 1203.16.3. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section 1203.3.

1203.16.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.16.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

1203.16.3 Push-fit fittings. Push-fit fittings shall comply with ASSE 1061 and be used with PE-RT tubing that is rated for use with such fittings by the tubing manufacturer.

1203.17 Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe. Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.17.1 and 1203.17.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1203.3.

1203.17.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.17.2 PE-AL-PE-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-AL-PE pipe.

1203.18 Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections 1203.18.1 and 1203.18.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1203.3.

1203.18.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1203.18.2 PEX-AL-PEX-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PEX-AL-PEX pipe.

SECTION 1204—PIPE INSULATION

1204.1 Insulation characteristics. Pipe insulation installed in *buildings* shall conform to the requirements of the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*, shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231, and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a smoke-developed index not exceeding 450. Insulation installed in an air *plenum* shall comply with Section 602.3.

Exception: The maximum flame spread index and smoke-developed index shall not apply to one- and two-family *dwellings*.

1204.2 Required thickness. Hydronic piping shall be insulated to the thickness required by the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*.

SECTION 1205—VALVES

1205.1 Where required. Shutoff valves shall be installed in hydronic piping systems in the locations indicated in Sections 1205.1.1 through 1205.1.6. *Access* shall be provided to all full-open valves and shutoff valves.

1205.1.1 Heat exchangers. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the supply and return side of a heat exchanger.

Exception: Shutoff valves shall not be required where heat exchangers are integral with a boiler; or are a component of a manufacturer's boiler and heat exchanger packaged unit and are capable of being isolated from the hydronic system by the supply and return valves required by Section 1005.1.

1205.1.2 Central systems. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the *building* supply and return of a central utility system.

1205.1.3 Pressure vessels. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the connection to any pressure vessel.

1205.1.4 Pressure-reducing valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed on both sides of a pressure-reducing valve.

1205.1.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical *equipment* and *appliances*. This requirement does not apply to components of a hydronic system such as pumps, air separators, metering devices and similar *equipment*.

1205.1.6 Expansion tanks. Shutoff valves shall be installed at connections to nondiaphragm-type expansion tanks.

1205.2 Reduced pressure. A pressure relief valve shall be installed on the low-pressure side of a hydronic piping system that has been reduced in pressure. The relief valve shall be set at the maximum pressure of the system design. The valve shall be installed in accordance with Section 1006.

SECTION 1206—PIPING INSTALLATION

1206.1 General. Piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of approval.

1206.2 System drain down. Hydronic piping systems shall be designed and installed to permit the system to be drained. Where the system drains to the plumbing drainage system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

Exception: The buried portions of systems embedded underground or under floors.

1206.3 Protection of potable water. The potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

1206.4 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors or ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry *building* elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be protected in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

1206.5 Clearance to combustibles. A pipe in a hydronic piping system in which the exterior temperature exceeds 250°F (121°C) shall have a minimum *clearance* of 1 inch (25 mm) to combustible materials.

1206.6 Contact with building material. A hydronic piping system shall not be in direct contact with *building* materials that cause the piping material to degrade or corrode, or that interfere with the operation of the system.

1206.7 Water hammer. The flow velocity of the hydronic piping system shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer. Where a quick-closing valve creates water hammer, an *approved* water-hammer arrestor shall be installed. The arrestor shall be located within a range as specified by the manufacturer of the quick-closing valve.

1206.8 Steam piping pitch. Steam piping shall be installed to drain to the boiler or the steam trap. Steam systems shall not have drip pockets that reduce the capacity of the steam piping.

1206.9 Strains and stresses. Piping shall be installed so as to prevent detrimental strains and stresses in the pipe. Provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement. Piping shall be installed so as to avoid structural stresses or strains within *building* components.

1206.9.1 Flood hazard. Piping located in a flood hazard area shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the *design flood elevation*.

1206.10 Pipe support. Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Section 305.

1206.11 Condensation. Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of piping.

SECTION 1207—TRANSFER FLUID

1207.1 Flash point. The flash point of transfer fluid in a hydronic piping system shall be not less than 50°F (28°C) above the maximum system operating temperature.

1207.2 Makeup water. The transfer fluid shall be compatible with the makeup water supplied to the system.

SECTION 1208—TESTS

1208.1 General. Hydronic piping systems shall be tested hydrostatically at one and one-half times the maximum system design pressure, but not less than 100 psi (689 kPa). The duration of each test shall be not less than 15 minutes.

Exception: For PEX piping systems, testing with a compressed gas shall be an alternative to hydrostatic testing where compressed air or other gas pressure testing is specifically authorized by all of the manufacturers' instructions for the PEX pipe and fitting products installed at the time the system is being tested, and compressed air or other gas testing is not otherwise prohibited by applicable codes, laws or regulations outside of this code.

SECTION 1209—EMBEDDED PIPING

1209.1 Materials. Piping for heating panels shall be standard-weight steel pipe, Type L copper tubing or *approved* plastic pipe or tubing rated at 100 psi (689 kPa) at 180°F (82°C).

1209.2 Pressurizing during installation. Piping to be embedded in concrete shall be pressure tested prior to pouring concrete. During pouring, the pipe shall be maintained at the proposed operating pressure.

1209.3 Embedded joints. Joints of pipe or tubing that are embedded in a portion of the *building*, such as concrete or plaster, shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1209.3.1 through 1209.3.4.

1209.3.1 Steel pipe joints. Steel pipe shall be welded by electrical arc or oxygen/acetylene method.

1209.3.2 Copper tubing joints. Copper tubing shall be joined by brazing complying with Section 1203.3.1.

1209.3.3 Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) joints. PE-RT tubing shall be installed in continuous lengths or shall be joined by hydronic fittings listed in Table 1202.5.

1209.3.4 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) joints. PEX tubing shall be installed in continuous lengths or shall be joined by hydronic fittings listed in Table 1202.5.

1209.4 Not embedded related piping. Joints of other piping in cavities or running exposed shall be joined by *approved* methods in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and related sections of this code.

1209.5 Insulation and thermal break required. Radiant floor heating systems shall be provided with insulation and a thermal break in accordance with Sections 1209.5.1 and 1209.5.2. Insulation *R*-values for slab-on-grade and suspended floor installation shall be in accordance with the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*.

Exception: Insulation shall not be required in engineered systems where it can be demonstrated that the insulation will decrease the efficiency or have a negative effect on the installation.

1209.5.1 Thermal break required. A thermal break shall be provided consisting of asphalt expansion joint materials or similar insulating materials at a point where a heated slab meets a foundation wall or other conductive slab.

1209.5.2 Insulation material marking. Insulating materials utilized in radiant floor heating systems shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.

1209.6 Radiant tubing placement. Hydronic tubing to be embedded for the purpose of radiant heating or cooling shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and with the tube layout and spacing in accordance with the system design. Individual tubing circuit lengths shall be installed with a variance of not more than ±10 percent from the design.

1209.6.1 Radiant tubing circuit length. The maximum circuit length of radiant tubing from a supply-and-return manifold shall not exceed the lengths specified by the system design or, in the absence of manufacturer's specifications, the lengths specified in Table 1209.6.1.

TABLE 1209.6.1—MAXIMUM CIRCUIT LENGTH OF RADIANT TUBING FROM A SUPPLY-AND-RETURN MANIFOLD ARRANGEMENT

NOMINAL TUBE SIZE	MAXIMUM CIRCUIT LENGTH (feet)
1/4	125
5/16	200
3/8	250
1/2	300
5/8	400
3/4	500
1	750

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

1209.6.2 Radiant tubing circuit tags. Each individual radiant tubing circuit shall have a tag or label securely affixed to each manifold outlet to indicate the length of each circuit and the areas served.

1209.6.3 Radiant tubing drawings. The radiant tubing drawings and design report shall be provided to the *building* owner or the designated representative of the *building* owner.

1209.7 Snow- and ice-melt tubing placement. Hydronic tubing to be embedded for the purpose of snow- and ice-melt systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and with the tube layout and spacing in accordance with the system design.

1209.7.1 Snow- and ice-melt tubing circuit length. The maximum circuit length of snow- and ice-melt tubing from a supply-and-return manifold shall not exceed the lengths specified by the system design or, in the absence of manufacturer's specifications, the lengths specified in Table 1209.7.1. Individual tubing circuit lengths shall be installed with a variance of not more than ±10 percent from the design.

TABLE 1209.7.1—MAXIMUM CIRCUIT LENGTH OF SNOW- AND ICE-MELT TUBING FROM A SUPPLY-AND-RETURN MANIFOLD ARRANGEMENT

NOMINAL TUBE SIZE	MAXIMUM CIRCUIT LENGTH (feet)
1/2	140
5/8	250
3/4	325
1	475

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

1209.7.2 Snow- and ice-melt tubing drawings. The snow- and ice-melt tubing drawings and design report shall be provided to the *building* owner or the designated representative of the *building* owner.

SECTION 1210—PLASTIC PIPE GROUND-SOURCE HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEMS

1210.1 Ground-source heat pump loop water piping. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop piping and tubing material for water-based systems shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

1210.2 Used materials. Reused pipe, fittings, valves, and other materials shall not be permitted in ground-source heat pump loop systems.

1210.3 Material rating. Pipe and tubing shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the ground-source heat pump loop system. Fittings shall be suitable for the pressure applications and recommended by the manufacturer for installation with the pipe and tubing material installed. Where used underground, materials shall be suitable for burial.

1210.4 Piping and tubing materials standards. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop pipe and tubing shall conform to the standards listed in Table 1210.4.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1210.4—GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE	
MATERIAL	**STANDARD (see Chapter 15)**
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F876; ASTM F3253; CSA B137.5; CSA C448; NSF 358-3
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035; ASTM F714; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11; NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18; CSA C448; NSF 358-4

1210.5 Fittings. Ground-source heat pump pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping materials to be installed, shall conform to the standards listed in Table 1210.5 and, if installed underground, shall be suitable for burial.

TABLE 1210.5—GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE FITTINGS	
PIPE MATERIAL	**STANDARD (see Chapter 15)**
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; CSA B137.6
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2434; ASTM F3347; ASTM F3348; CSA B137.5; CSA C448; NSF 358-3
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE)	ASTM F1282; ASTM F2434; CSA B137.9
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11; NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D2464; ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM D3261; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM F2769; ASTM F3347; ASTM F3348; CSA B137.1; CSA B137.18; CSA C448; NSF 358-4

1210.6 Joints. Joints and connections shall be of an *approved* type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the ground-source loop system. Joints used underground shall be of an *approved* type for buried applications.

1210.6.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* transition fittings.

1210.6.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square and be free from burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1210.6.4 through 1210.6.8, the preparation and installation of mechanical and thermoplastic-welded joints shall comply with Sections 1210.6.3.1 and 1210.6.3.2.

1210.6.3.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.3.2 Thermoplastic-welded joints. Joint surfaces for thermoplastic-welded joints shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. Joints shall be welded in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.4 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints complying with Section 1203.3.

1210.6.5 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 1210.6.5.1 and 1210.6.5.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1210.6.3.

1210.6.5.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1210.6.5.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Soldering on the metal portion of the system shall be performed not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from a plastic-to-metal adapter in the same water line.

1210.6.6 Polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing for ground-source heat pump loop systems. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings for ground-source heat pump loop systems shall be heat-fusion joints complying with Section 1210.6.6.1, electrofusion joints complying with Section 1210.6.6.2, or stab-type insertion joints complying with Section 1210.6.6.3.

1210.6.6.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion, saddle-fusion or butt-fusion type, joined in accordance with ASTM D2657. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2683 or ASTM D3261.

1210.6.6.2 Electrofusion joints. Joints shall be of the electrofusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture, and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for the period of time specified by the manufacturer. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1055.

1210.6.6.3 Stab-type insert fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Pipe ends shall be chamfered and inserted into the fittings to full depth. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1924.

1210.6.7 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 1210.6.7.1 and 1210.6.7.2.

1210.6.7.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electrofusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

1210.6.7.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.8 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 1210.6.8.1 and 1210.6.8.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1210.6.3.

1210.6.8.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1210.6.8.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

1210.6.9 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints complying with Section 1203.3.

1210.7 Shutoff valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed in ground-source loop piping systems in the locations indicated in Sections 1210.7.1 through 1210.7.7.

1210.7.1 Heat exchangers. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the supply and return side of a heat exchanger.

Exception: Shutoff valves shall not be required where heat exchangers are integral with a boiler or are a component of a manufacturer's boiler and heat exchanger packaged unit and are capable of being isolated from the hydronic system by the supply and return valves required by Section 1005.1.

1210.7.2 Central systems. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the *building* supply and return of a central utility system.

1210.7.3 Pressure vessels. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the connection to any pressure vessel.

1210.7.4 Pressure-reducing valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed on both sides of a pressure-reducing valve.

1210.7.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical *equipment* and *appliances*. This requirement does not apply to components of a ground-source loop system such as pumps, air separators, metering devices, and similar *equipment*.

1210.7.6 Expansion tanks. Shutoff valves shall be installed at connections to nondiaphragm-type expansion tanks.

1210.7.7 Reduced pressure. A pressure relief valve shall be installed on the low-pressure side of a hydronic piping system that has been reduced in pressure. The relief valve shall be set at the maximum pressure of the system design. The valve shall be installed in accordance with Section 1006.

1210.8 Installation. Piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with ANSI/CSA/IGSHPA C448 and the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.8.1 Protection of potable water. Where ground-source heat pump ground-loop systems have a connection to a potable water supply, the potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

1210.8.2 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors and ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry *building* elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be protected in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

1210.8.3 Clearance from combustibles. A pipe in a ground-source heat pump piping system having an exterior surface temperature exceeding 250°F (121°C) shall have a minimum *clearance* of 1 inch (25 mm) from combustible materials.

1210.8.4 Contact with building material. A ground-source heat pump ground-loop piping system shall not be in direct contact with *building* materials that cause the piping or fitting material to degrade or corrode, or that interfere with the operation of the system.

1210.8.5 Strains and stresses. Piping shall be installed so as to prevent detrimental strains and stresses in the pipe. Provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement. Piping shall be installed so as to avoid structural stresses or strains within *building* components.

1210.8.6 Flood hazard. Piping located in a flood hazard area shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the *design flood elevation*.

1210.8.7 Pipe support. Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Section 305.

1210.8.8 Velocities. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop systems shall be designed so that the flow velocities do not exceed the maximum flow velocity recommended by the pipe and fittings manufacturer and shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer.

1210.8.9 Labeling and marking. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop system piping shall be marked with tape, metal tags or other method where it enters a *building* indicating "GROUND-SOURCE HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEM." The marking shall indicate any antifreeze used in the system by name and concentration.

1210.8.10 Chemical compatibility. Antifreeze and other materials used in the system shall be chemically compatible with the pipe, tubing, fittings and mechanical systems.

1210.9 Makeup water. The transfer fluid shall be compatible with the makeup water supplied to the system.

1210.10 Tests. Before connection header trenches are backfilled, the assembled loop system shall be pressure tested with water at 100 psi (689 kPa) for 15 minutes, in which time there shall not be observed leaks. Flow and pressure loss testing shall be performed and the actual flow rates and pressure drops shall be compared to the calculated design values. If actual flow rate or pressure drop values differ from calculated design values by more than 10 percent, the cause shall be identified and corrective action taken.

1210.11 Embedded piping. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop piping to be embedded in concrete shall be pressure tested prior to pouring concrete. During pouring, the pipe shall be maintained at the proposed operating pressure.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER
13
FUEL OIL PIPING AND STORAGE

User notes

About this chapter: *Chapter 13 is devoted to fuel oil piping and fuel oil storage related to heating appliances, power generators and similar equipment/appliances. The requirements focus on preventing fuel leaks and equipment failures that could result in severe fire hazards.*

SECTION 1301—GENERAL

1301.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, installation, construction and repair of fuel oil storage and piping systems. The storage of fuel oil and flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with Chapters 6 and 57 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

1301.2 Storage and piping systems. Fuel oil storage systems shall comply with Section 605.4 of the *Fire Code of New York State*. Fuel oil piping systems shall comply with the requirements of this code.

1301.3 Fuel type. An *appliance* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which it will be connected. Such *appliance* shall not be converted from the fuel specified on the rating plate for use with a different fuel without securing reapproval from the code official.

1301.4 Fuel tanks, piping, fittings and valves. The tank, piping, fittings and valves for *appliances* burning oil shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter. Where an oil burner is served by a tank, any part of which is above the level of the burner inlet connection and where the fuel supply line is taken from the top of the tank, an *approved* antisiphon valve or other siphon-breaking device shall be installed in lieu of the shutoff valve.

1301.5 Tanks abandoned or removed. All exterior above-grade fill piping shall be removed when tanks are abandoned or removed. Tank abandonment and removal shall be in accordance with Section 5704.2.13 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

SECTION 1302—MATERIAL

1302.1 General. Piping materials shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

1302.2 Rated for system. All materials shall be rated for the operating temperatures and pressures of the system, and shall be compatible with the type of liquid.

1302.3 Pipe standards. Fuel oil pipe shall comply with one of the standards listed in Table 1302.3.

TABLE 1302.3—FUEL OIL PIPING AND FITTINGS

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Copper or copper-alloy pipe and fittings	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302; ASTM F3226
Copper or copper-alloy tubing and fittings (Type K, L or M)	ASME B16.51; ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B280; ASTM F3226
Labeled pipe	(See Section 1302.4)
Nonmetallic pipe	ASTM D2996
Steel and stainless steel pipe and fittings	ASTM A53; ASTM A106; A312/A312M; ASTM F3226
Steel and stainless steel tubing and fittings	ASTM A254; A269/A269M; ASTM A539; ASTM F3226

1302.4 Nonmetallic pipe. Nonmetallic pipe shall be *listed* and *labeled* as being acceptable for the intended application for flammable and combustible liquids. Nonmetallic pipe shall be installed only outdoors, underground.

1302.5 Fittings and valves. Fittings and valves shall be *approved* for the piping systems, and shall be compatible with, or shall be of the same material as, the pipe or tubing.

1302.6 Bending of pipe. Pipe shall be *approved* for bending. Pipe bends shall be made with *approved equipment*. The bend shall not exceed the structural limitations of the pipe.

1302.7 Pumps. Pumps that are not part of an *appliance* shall be of a positive-displacement type. The pump shall automatically shut off the supply when not in operation. Pumps shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 343.

1302.8 Flexible connectors and hoses. Flexible connectors and hoses shall be *listed* and *labeled* as being acceptable for the intended application for flammable and combustible liquids.

1302.9 Piping systems. Above-ground piping systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1369. Underground piping systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 971A.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 1303—JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1303.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be *approved* and of a type *approved* for fuel oil piping systems. Threaded joints and connections shall be made tight with suitable lubricant or pipe compound. Unions requiring gaskets or packings, right or left couplings, and sweat fittings employing solder having a melting point of less than 1,000°F (538°C) shall not be used in oil lines. Cast-iron fittings shall not be used. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure required by test.

1303.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings. Joints between different metallic piping materials shall be made with *approved* dielectric fittings or copper-alloy converter fittings.

1303.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered and be free from all burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1303.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1303.4 through 1303.9, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, threaded, press-connect and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1303.3.1 through 1303.3.5.

1303.3.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joints shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8M/A5.8.

1303.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1303.3.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

1303.3.4 Welded joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. The joint shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1303.3.5 Press-connect joints. *Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 1302.3.

1303.4 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded, press-connect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.5 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or *press-connect joints* complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.6 Nonmetallic pipe. Joints between nonmetallic pipe or fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the *labeled* pipe and fittings.

1303.7 Steel and stainless steel pipe. Joints between steel or stainless steel pipe or fittings shall be threaded, pressconnect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3 or mechanical joints complying with Section 1303.7.1.

1303.7.1 Mechanical joints. Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Mechanical joints shall be installed outdoors, underground, unless otherwise *approved*.

1303.8 Steel and stainless steel tubing. Joints between steel or stainless steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical, press-connect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

1303.9 Piping protection. Proper allowance shall be made for expansion, contraction, jarring and vibration. Piping other than tubing, connected to underground tanks, except straight fill lines and test wells, shall be provided with flexible connectors, or otherwise arranged to permit the tanks to settle without impairing the tightness of the piping connections.

SECTION 1304—PIPING SUPPORT

1304.1 General. Pipe supports shall be in accordance with Section 305.

SECTION 1305—FUEL OIL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

1305.1 Size. The fuel oil system shall be sized for the maximum capacity of fuel oil required. The minimum size of a supply line shall be $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) outside diameter tubing. The minimum size of a return line shall be $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^{5}/_{16}$-inch (7.9 mm) outside diameter tubing. Copper tubing shall have 0.035-inch (0.9 mm) nominal and 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) minimum wall thickness.

1305.2 Protection of pipe, equipment and appliances. Fuel oil pipe, *equipment* and *appliances* shall be protected from physical damage.

1305.2.1 Flood hazard. Fuel oil pipe, *equipment* and *appliances* located in flood hazard areas shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *Building Code of New York State* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

1305.3 Supply piping. Supply piping shall connect to the top of the fuel oil tank. Fuel oil shall be supplied by a transfer pump or automatic pump or by other *approved* means.

Exception: This section shall not apply to inside or above-ground fuel oil tanks.

1305.4 Return piping. Return piping shall connect to the top of the fuel oil tank. Valves shall not be installed on return piping.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

1305.5 System pressure. The system shall be designed for the maximum pressure required by the fuel-oil-burning *appliance*. Air or other gases shall not be used to pressurize tanks.

1305.6 Fill piping. A fill pipe shall terminate outside of a building at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm) from any building opening at the same or lower level. A fill pipe shall terminate in a manner designed to minimize spilling when the filling hose is disconnected. Fill opening shall be equipped with a tight metal cover designed to discourage tampering.

1305.7 Vent piping. Liquid fuel vent pipes shall terminate outside of buildings at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm) measured vertically or horizontally from any building opening. Outer ends of vent pipes shall terminate in a weatherproof vent cap or fitting or be provided with a weatherproof hood. Vent caps shall have a minimum free open area equal to the cross-sectional area of the vent pipe and shall not employ screens finer than No. 4 mesh. Vent pipes shall terminate sufficiently above the ground to avoid being obstructed with snow or ice. Vent pipes from tanks containing heaters shall be extended to a location where oil vapors discharging from the vent will be readily diffused. If the static head with a vent pipe filled with oil exceeds 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa), the tank shall be designed for the maximum static head that will be imposed.

Liquid fuel vent pipes shall not be cross connected with fill pipes, lines from burners or overflow lines from auxiliary tanks.

SECTION 1306—OIL GAUGING

1306.1 Level indication. Tanks in which a constant oil level is not maintained by an automatic pump shall be equipped with a method of determining the oil level.

1306.2 Test wells. Test wells shall not be installed inside buildings. For outdoor service, test wells shall be equipped with a tight metal cover designed to discourage tampering.

1306.3 Inside tanks. The gauging of inside tanks by means of measuring sticks shall not be permitted. An inside tank provided with fill and vent pipes shall be provided with a device to indicate either visually or audibly at the fill point when the oil in the tank has reached a predetermined safe level.

1306.4 Gauging devices. Gauging devices such as liquid level indicators or signals shall be designed and installed so that oil vapor will not be discharged into a building from the liquid fuel supply system. Liquid-level indicating gauges shall comply with UL 180.

1306.5 Gauge glass. A tank used in connection with any oil burner shall not be equipped with a glass gauge or any gauge that, when broken, will permit the escape of oil from the tank.

SECTION 1307—FUEL OIL VALVES

1307.1 Building shutoff. A shutoff valve shall be installed on the fuel oil supply line at the entrance to the building. Inside or aboveground tanks are permitted to have valves installed at the tank. The valve shall be capable of stopping the flow of fuel oil to the building or to the *appliance* served where the valve is installed at a tank inside the building. Valves shall comply with UL 842.

1307.2 Appliance shutoff. A shutoff valve shall be installed at the connection to each *appliance* where more than one fuel-oil-burning *appliance* is installed.

1307.3 Pump relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the pump discharge line where a valve is located downstream of the pump and the pump is capable of exceeding the pressure limitations of the fuel oil system.

1307.4 Fuel-oil heater relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the discharge line of fuel-oil-heating *appliances*.

1307.5 Relief valve operation. The relief valve shall discharge fuel oil when the pressure exceeds the limitations of the system. The discharge line shall connect to the fuel oil tank.

SECTION 1308—TESTING

1308.1 Testing required. Fuel oil piping shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 31.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

14 SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEMS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 14 addresses solar thermal systems, not photovoltaic systems. The provisions are intended to protect property and life from the hazards associated with high-temperature liquids, pressurized systems and toxic fluids. There are also provisions to protect the building structure and the solar thermal system components from damage.*

SECTION 1401—GENERAL

1401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of solar thermal systems, *equipment* and *appliances* intended to utilize solar energy for space heating or cooling, domestic hot water heating, swimming pool heating or process heating.

1401.2 Potable water supply. Potable water supplies to solar systems shall be protected against contamination in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

Exception: Where all solar system piping is a part of the potable water distribution system, in accordance with the requirements of the *Plumbing Code of New York State*, and all components of the piping system are *listed* for potable water use, cross-connection protection measures shall not be required.

1401.3 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers used in domestic water-heating systems shall be *approved* for the intended use. The system shall have adequate protection to ensure that the potability of the water supply and distribution system is properly safeguarded.

1401.4 Solar thermal equipment and appliances. Solar thermal *equipment* and *appliances* shall conform to the requirements of this chapter and ICC 900/SRCC 300. Solar thermal systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1401.4.1 Collectors and panels. Solar thermal collectors and panels shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 901/SRCC 100.

SECTION 1402—DESIGN AND INSTALLATION

1402.1 General. The design and installation of solar thermal systems shall comply with Sections 1402.1 through 1402.8. Solar thermal systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.2 Access. Access shall be provided to solar thermal *equipment* for maintenance. Solar thermal systems and appurtenances shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of any doors, windows or other building components requiring operation or access. Roof-mounted solar thermal *equipment* shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of roof-mounted *equipment*, *appliances*, *chimneys*, roof hatches, smoke vents, skylights and other roof penetrations and openings.

1402.3 Pressure and temperature. Solar thermal system components containing pressurized fluids shall be protected against pressures and temperatures exceeding design limitations with pressure and temperature relief valves or pressure relief valves. System components shall have a working pressure rating of not less than the setting of the pressure relief device.

1402.3.1 Relief device. Each section of the system in which excessive pressures are capable of developing shall have a relief device located so that a section cannot be valved off or otherwise isolated from a relief device. Relief valves shall comply with the requirements of Section 1006.6. For indirect solar systems, pressure relief valves in solar loops shall also comply with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.3.2 Vacuum. System components that might be subjected to a vacuum while in operation or during shutdown shall be designed to withstand such vacuum or shall be protected with vacuum relief valves.

1402.4 Protection from freezing. System components shall be protected from damage by freezing of heat transfer liquids at the lowest ambient temperatures that will be encountered during the operation of the system. Freeze protection shall be provided in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300. Drain-back systems shall be installed in compliance with Section 1402.4.1 and systems utilizing freeze-protection valves shall comply with Section 1402.4.2.

1402.4.1 Drain-back systems. Drain-back systems shall be designed and installed to allow for manual gravity draining of fluids from areas subject to freezing to locations not subject to freezing, and air filling of the components and piping. Such piping and components shall maintain a horizontal slope in the direction of flow of not less than $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2 percent slope). Piping and components subject to manual gravity draining shall permit subsequent air filling upon drainage and air storage or venting upon refilling.

1402.4.2 Freeze-protection valves. Freeze-protection valves shall discharge in a manner that does not create a hazard or structural damage.

1402.5 Protection of potable water. Where a solar thermal system heats potable water to supply a potable hot water distribution or any other type of heating system, the solar thermal system shall be in accordance with Sections 1402.5.1 through 1402.5.3 as applicable.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

1402.5.1 Indirect systems. Water supplies of any type shall not be connected to the solar heating loop of an indirect solar thermal hot water heating system. This requirement shall not prohibit the presence of inlets or outlets on the solar heating loop for the purposes of servicing the fluid in the solar heating loop.

1402.5.2 Direct systems for potable water distribution systems. Where a solar thermal system directly heats potable water for a potable water distribution system, the pipe, fittings, valves and other components that are in contact with the potable water in the system shall comply with the requirements of the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

1402.5.3 Direct systems for other than potable water distribution systems. Where a solar thermal system directly heats water for a system other than a potable water distribution system, a potable water supply connected to such system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*.

1402.6 Protection of equipment. Solar thermal *equipment* exposed to vehicular traffic shall be installed not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the finished floor.

Exception: This section shall not apply where the *equipment* is protected from motor vehicle impact.

1402.7 Protection of structure. In the process of installing or repairing any part of a solar thermal system, the building or structure shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with Sections 302, 1402.7.1 and 1402.7.2.

1402.7.1 Controlling condensation. Where attics or structural spaces are part of a passive solar system, ventilation of such spaces, as required by Section 406, is not required where other *approved* means of controlling condensation are provided.

1402.7.2 Penetrations. Roof and wall penetrations shall be flashed and sealed to prevent entry of water, rodents and insects in accordance with Section 302.

1402.8 Equipment. The solar thermal system shall be equipped in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1402.8.1 through 1402.8.5.3.

1402.8.1 Collectors and panels. Solar collectors and panels shall comply with Sections 1402.8.1.1 through 1402.8.1.4.

1402.8.1.1 Design. Solar thermal collectors and panels shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 901/SRCC 100.

1402.8.1.2 Rooftop-mounted solar thermal collectors and systems. The roof shall be constructed to support the loads imposed by roof-mounted solar collectors. Where mounted on or above the roof covering, the collector array, mounting systems and their attachments to the roof shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood conforming to the *Building Code of New York State* to the extent required for the type of roof construction of the building to which the collectors are accessory.

1402.8.1.3 Collectors as roof covering. Roof-mounted solar collectors that also serve as a roof covering shall conform to the requirements for roof coverings in accordance with the *Building Code of New York State*.

Exception: The use of plastic solar collector covers shall be limited to those *approved* light-transmitting plastics meeting the requirements for plastic roof panels in Section 2609 of the *Building Code of New York State*.

1402.8.1.4 Collector sensors. Collector sensor installation, sensor location and the protection of exposed sensor wires from degradation shall be in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300, NFPA 70 and the collector manufacturer's instructions.

1402.8.2 Ducts. Ducts utilized in solar heating and cooling systems shall be constructed and installed in accordance with Chapter 6.

1402.8.2.1 Filtering. Air transported to occupied spaces through dust-producing materials by means other than natural convection shall be filtered before entering the occupied space in accordance with Section 605.

1402.8.3 Piping. Potable piping shall be installed in accordance with the *Plumbing Code of New York State*. Hydronic piping shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 12 of this code. Mechanical system piping shall be supported in accordance with Section 305.

1402.8.3.1 Piping insulation. Piping shall be insulated in accordance with the requirements of the *Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State*. Exterior insulation shall be protected from degradation. The entire solar loop shall be insulated. Where split-style insulation is used, the seam shall be sealed. Fittings shall be fully insulated. Insulation shall comply with Section 1204.1.

Exceptions:

1. Those portions of the piping that are used to help prevent the system from overheating shall not be required to be insulated.
2. Those portions of piping that are exposed to solar radiation, made of the same material as the solar collector absorber plate and covered in the same manner as the solar collector absorber, or that are used to collect additional solar energy, shall not be required to be insulated.
3. Piping in solar thermal systems using unglazed solar collectors to heat a swimming pool shall not be required to be insulated.

1402.8.4 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers used in domestic water-heating systems shall be *approved* for the intended use. The system shall have adequate protection to ensure that the potability of the water supply and distribution system is properly safeguarded.

1402.8.4.1 Double-wall heat exchangers. Heat exchangers utilizing a nonfood-grade fluid shall be separated from the potable water by double-wall construction. An air gap open to the atmosphere shall be provided between the two walls. The discharge location from the double-wall heat exchanger shall be visible.

1402.8.4.2 Single-wall heat exchangers. Food-grade fluids shall be used as the heat transfer fluid in single-wall heat exchangers.

1402.8.5 Water heaters and hot water storage tanks. Auxiliary water heaters, boilers and water storage tanks associated with solar thermal systems shall comply with Chapter 10 and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.8.5.1 Hot water storage tank insulation. Hot water storage tanks shall be insulated and such insulation shall have an *R*-value of not less than R-12.5.

1402.8.5.2 Outdoor locations. Storage tanks and heating *equipment* installed in outdoor locations shall be designed for outdoor installation.

1402.8.5.3 Storage tank sensors. Storage tank sensors shall comply with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.8.6 Solar loop. Solar loops shall be in accordance with Sections 1402.8.6.1 and 1402.8.6.2.

1402.8.6.1 Solar loop isolation. Valves shall be installed to allow the solar loop to be isolated from the remainder of the system.

1402.8.6.2 Drain and fill valve caps. Drain caps shall be installed on drain and fill valves.

1402.8.7 Expansion tanks. Liquid single-phase solar energy systems shall be equipped with expansion tanks sized in accordance with Section 1009, except that additional expansion tank acceptance volume equal to the total volume of liquid contained in the installed solar collectors and piping above the collectors shall be included.

SECTION 1403—HEAT TRANSFER FLUIDS

1403.1 Flash point. The flash point of the heat transfer fluid utilized in a solar system shall be not less than 50°F (28°C) above the design maximum nonoperating (no-flow) temperature of the fluid attained in the collector.

1403.2 Heat transfer fluids. Heat transfer gases and liquids shall be rated to withstand the system's maximum design temperature under operating conditions without degradation. Heat transfer fluids shall be in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1403.3 Food-grade additives. Any food-grade fluid used as a heat transfer fluid containing additives shall be third-party *listed* by an *approved* agency to the appropriate section of the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts 174–186.

1403.4 Toxicity. The use of toxic fluids shall comply with Title 15 of the Federal Hazardous Substances Act and Chapter 60 of the *Fire Code of New York State*.

1403.5 Flammable gases and liquids. A flammable liquid or gas shall not be utilized as a heat transfer fluid. The flash point of liquids used in *occupancies* classified in Group H or F shall not be lower unless *approved*.

SECTION 1404—LABELING

1404.1 Collectors. Factory-built solar thermal collectors shall bear a label showing the manufacturer's name and serial number or certification number.

1404.2 Water storage tanks. Pressurized water storage tanks shall bear a label showing the manufacturer's name and address, model number, serial number, storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating temperatures, and storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating pressures. The label shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the water storage tanks.

1404.3 Fluid safety labeling. Drain and fill valves shall be labeled with a description and warning that identifies the fluid in that loop as "Potable Water," "Food-Grade Fluid," "Nonfood-Grade Fluid" or "Toxic." Labeling shall also be provided that reads as follows: "Fluid could be discharged at high temperature or pressure or both. Unauthorized *alterations* to this system could result in a health hazard or a hazardous condition."

1404.4 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers shall be labeled to indicate the heat exchanger type with one of the following:

1. "Single-wall without leak protection."
2. "Double-wall without leak protection."
3. "Double-wall with leak protection."

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

15 REFERENCED STANDARDS

User notes:

About this chapter: *This code contains numerous references to standards that are used to provide requirements for materials and methods of construction. This chapter contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the standard. This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document.*

The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.8.

An asterisk (*) denotes a standard that is incorporated by reference into 19 NYCRR Part 1223.

ACCA *Air Conditioning Contractors of America, 2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22206*

*** ANSI/ACCA 1 Manual D—2016: Residential Duct Systems**
601.4, 603.2

ANSI/ACCA 10 Manual SPS—2017: Design for Swimming Pools and Spas
403.2.1

*** ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA 183—2007 (RA 2020): Peak Cooling and Heating Load Calculations in Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings**
312.1

AHRI *Air-Conditioning, Heating & Refrigeration Institute, 2311 Wilson Blvd., Suite 400, Arlington, VA 22201*

700—2019: Specifications for Refrigerants
1102.2.2.3

AISI *American Iron and Steel Institute, 25 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 800, Washington, DC 20001*

*** AISI S220—20: North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Nonstructural Framing**
302.5

*** AISI S240—20: North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing, 2020**
302.5

AMCA *Air Movement and Control Association International, 30 West University Drive, Arlington Heights, IL 60004*

AMCA 550—22: Test Method for High Velocity Wind Driven Rain Resistant Louvers
401.5, 501.3.2

ANSI/AMCA 210—23/ANSI/ASHRAE 51—23: Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
403.2

ANSI/AMCA 230—22: Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Circulating Fans for Rating and Certification
930.1

ANSI *American National Standards Institute, 25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor, New York, NY 10036*

ANSI Z21.1—2018/CSA 1.1—2018: Household Cooking Gas Appliances
505.2

*** Z21.8—94 (R2017): Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners**
919.1

ASHRAE *ASHRAE, 180 Technology Parkway, Peachtree Corners, GA 30092*

*** 15—2022: Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems**
1101.1.1, 1106.4.2, 1106.4.3, 1110.6

*** 15.2—2022: Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems in Residential Applications**
1101.1.1

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

*** 34—2022 w/ Addendum a: Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants**
202, 1102.2.1, 1103.1

*** 62.1—2022: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality**
401.2, 403.3.1.1.2.3.2

*** NYS ASHRAE 90.1—2025: New York State version of the Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings**
401.2

*** 170—2021: Ventilation of Health Care Facilities**
407

*** 180—2018: Standard Practice for Inspection and Maintenance of Commercial Building HVAC Systems**
102.3

ANSI/AMCA 210–ANSI/ASHRAE 51—16: Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
403.3.2.4

*** ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA 183—2007 (RA 2020): Peak Cooling and Heating Load Calculations in Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings**
312.1

*** ASHRAE—2021: ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals**
603.2

ASME *American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990*

A112.4.1—2009 (R2019): Water Heater Relief Valve Drain Tubes
1006.6

B1.1—2024: Unified Inch Screw Threads, UN and UNR Thread Form
1108.3.4

B1.13M—2020: Metric Screw Threads: M Profile
1108.3.4

B1.20.1—2023: Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
1203.3.5, 1303.3.3

B1.20.3—2023: Dryseal Pipe Threads, Inch
1108.3.4

B16.3—2021: Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 & 300
Table 1202.5

B16.5—2024: Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: NPS 1/2 through NPS 24, Metric/Inch Standard
Table 1202.5

B16.9—2023: Factory-made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
Table 1202.5

B16.11—2021: Forged Fittings, Socket-welding and Threaded
Table 1202.5

B16.15—2023: Cast Alloy Threaded Fittings: Classes 125 and 250
Table 1202.5

B16.18—2023: Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
512.13.1, Table 1202.5

B16.22—2023: Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
512.13.1, Table 1202.5

B16.24—2021: Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges, Flanged Fittings, And Valves: Classes 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500
Table 1202.5

B16.26—2023: Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
Table 1202.5

B16.28—1994: Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns
Table 1202.5

B16.50—2018: Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Braze-joint Pressure Fittings
Table 1107.5

B16.51—2018: Copper and Copper Alloy Press-connect Pressure Fittings
Table 1202.5

B31.5—2022: Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components
1107.1

*** B31.9—2023: Building Services Piping**
1201.3

BPVC—2023: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (Sections I, II, IV, V, VI and VIII)
1003.1, 1004.1, 1009.2, 1011.1

CSD-1—2024: Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers
1004.1

ASSE

ASSE International, 18927 Hickory Creek Drive, Suite 220, Mokena, IL 60448

1017—2009: Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Values for Hot Water Distribution Systems
1002.2.2

1061—2020: Performance Requirements for Push-Fit Fittings
Table 1202.5

*** 1079—2012(R2021): Performance Requirements for Dielectric Pipe Unions**
1108.1.1

ASSP

American Society of Safety Professionals, 520 N. Northwest Highway, Park Ridge, IL 60068

*** ANSI/ASSP Z359.1—2020: The Fall Protection Code**
304.11

ASTM

ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428

A53/A53M—2020: Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1302.3

A105/A105M—21: Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications
Table 1107.5

A106/A106M—2019a: Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1302.3

A126—04(2019): Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges and Pipe Fittings
Table 1202.5

A181/A181M—14(2020): Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings, for General-Purpose Piping
Table 1107.5

A193/A193M—20: Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting for High Temperature or High Pressure Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
Table 1107.5

A234/A234M—19: Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service
Table 1202.5

A240/A240M—20a: Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
Table 1302.3

A254/A254M—12(2019): Specification for Copper-Brazed Steel Tubing
Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

A269/A269M—15a (2019): Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
Table 1302.3

A312/A312M—21: Specification for Seamless, Welded and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes
Table 1302.3

A333/A333M—2018: Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Steel Pipe for Low-Temperature Service and Other Applications with Required Notch Toughness
1107.4

A334/A334M—04a(2021): Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Carbon and Alloy-Steel Tubes for Low-Temperature Service
Table 1107.4

A395/A395M—99(2018): Standard Specification for Ferritic Ductile Iron Pressure-Retaining Castings for Use at Elevated Temperatures
Table 1202.5, Table 1302.3

A420/A420M—20: Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Low-Temperature Service
Table 1202.5

A536—84(2019)e1: Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
Table 1202.5

A539—99: Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines
Table 1302.3

A707/A707M—19: Standard Specification for Forged Carbon and Alloy Steel Flanges for Low-Temperature Service
Table 1107.5

A778/A778M—16(2021): Standard Specification for Welded, Unannealed Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubular Products
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5

B32—20: Specification for Solder Metal
1203.3.3

B42—20: Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
512.13.1, Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B43—20: Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes
512.13.1, Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B68/B68M—19: Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed
512.13.1

B75/B75M—20: Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
Table 1302.3

B88—20: Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
512.13.1, Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B135/B135M—17: Specification for Seamless Brass Tube
Table 1202.4

B210/B210M—19a: Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes
Table 1107.4

B251/B251M—2017: Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-Alloy Tube
512.13.1, Table 1202.4

B280—20: Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service
512.13.1, Table 1107.4, Table 1302.3

B302—17: Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B361—16: Standard Specification for Factory-Made Wrought Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Welding Fittings
Table 1107.5

B491/B491M—15: Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Round Tubes for General-Purpose Applications
Table 1107.4

B813—2016: Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
1203.3.3

B819—2019: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems
Table 1107.4

*** B828—2016: Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings**
1203.3.3

B1003—16: Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Linesets
Table 1107.4

C315—2007(2021): Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots
801.16.1, Table 803.10.4

C411—19: Test Method for Hot-Surface Performance of High-Temperature Thermal Insulation
604.3

D56—21a: Test Method for Flash Point by Tag Closed Cup Tester
202

D93—20: Test Methods for Flash Point by Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Tester
202

D1527—99(2005): Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
Table 1202.4

D1693—21: Test Method for Environmental Stress-Cracking of Ethylene Plastics
Table 1202.4

D1785—21a: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

D2235—2021: Specification for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
1203.3.4

D2241—21: Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR-Series)
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

D2282—99(2005): Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
Table 1202.4

D2412—21: Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-Plate Loading
603.8.3

D2464—15: Standard Specification for Threaded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1210.5

D2466—21: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

D2467—20: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

D2564—20: Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
1203.3.4

*** D2657—2007(2015): Standard Practice for Heat Fusion Joining of Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings**
Table 1210.5

D2683—20: Standard Specification for Socket-Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.1

D2737—21: Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing
Table 1210.4

D2846/D2846M—19a: Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, 1203.3.4, Table 1210.4

D2996—2017: Specification for Filament-Wound Fiberglass (Glass Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe
Table 1302.3

D3035—21: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter
Table 1210.4

D3261—2016: Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing
Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.1

D3278—21: Test Methods for Flash Point of Liquids by Small Scale Closed-Cup Apparatus
202

D3309—96a(2002): Specification for Polybutylene (PB) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4

E84—21a: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
202, 509.8, 602.2, 602.3, 602.3.7, 602.3.8, 604.3, 1204.1

E119—20: Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
607.2.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.5, 607.6.1

E136—2022: Standard Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C
202

E814—2013A(2017): Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
506.3.11.2, 506.3.11.3

E1509—2012(2017): Specification for Room Heaters, Pellet Fuel-Burning Type
904.1

E2231—21: Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics
604.3, 1204.1

E2336—20: Standard Test Methods for Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Systems
506.3.6, 506.3.11.2

F437—21: Standard Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1210.5

F438—2017: Specification for Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F439—19: Standard Specification for Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F441/F441M—20: Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

F442/F442M—20: Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

F493—20: Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
1203.3.4

F714—21a: Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter
Table 1210.4

F876—20b: Specification for Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.

F877—20: Specification for Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4

F1055—2016A: Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene and Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe and Tubing
Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.2

F1281—2017(2021)e1: Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.4

F1282—2017: Standard Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

F1476—07(2019): Standard Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications
Table 1202.5, 1203.3.7

F1548—2001(2018): Standard Specification for the Performance of Fittings for Use with Gasketed Mechanical Couplings Used in Piping Applications
Table 1202.5

F1807—19b: Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring, or Alternate Stainless Steel Clamps, for SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F1924—19: Standard Specification for Plastic Mechanical Fittings for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing
1210.6.6.3

F1960—21: Standard Specification for Cold-Expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1202.5

F1974—09(2020): Specification for Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Cross-Linked Poly ethylene/Aluminum/Cross-Linked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.5

F2080—19: Specification for Cold-Expansion Fittings with Metal Compression-Sleeves for Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe
Table 1202.5

F2098—2018: Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Clamps for Securing SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing to Metal Insert and Plastic Insert Fittings
Table 1202.5

F2159—21: Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F2389—21: Standard Specification for Pressure-Rated Polypropylene Piping Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, 1203.17.1, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5, 1210.6.7.1

F2434—19: Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Tubing
Table 1210.5

F2623—22: Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Systems for Non-Potable Water Applications
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

F2735—21: Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1202.5

F2769—18: Standard Specification for Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Tubing and Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.5

F2806—20: Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (Metric SDR-PR)
Table 1202.4

F2855—19: Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride)/Aluminum/Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC-AL-CPVC) Composite Pressure Tubing
Table 1202.4

F3226/F3226M—19: Standard Specification for Metallic Press-Connect Fittings for Piping and Tubing Systems
Table 1302.3

F3253—19: Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing with Oxygen Barrier for Hot- and Cold-Water Hydronic Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4

F3347—20a: Standard Specification for Metal Press Insert Fittings with Factory Assembled Stainless Steel Press Sleeve for SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1210.5

F3348—20b: Standard Specification for Plastic Press Insert Fittings with Factory Assembled Stainless Steel Press Sleeve for SDR9 Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1210.5

AWS *American Welding Society, 8669 NW 36 Street, #130, Miami, FL 33166*

A5.8M/A5.8—2019: Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding
1203.3.1, 1303.3.1

AWWA *American Water Work Association, 6666 West Quincy Avenue, Denver, CO 80235*

C110/A21.10—21: Standard for Ductile Iron & Gray Iron Fittings
Table 1202.5

C115/A21.15—20: Standard for Flanged Ductile-iron Pipe with Ductile Iron or Grey-iron Threaded Flanges
Table 1202.4

C151/A21.51—17: Ductile-iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast
Table 1202.4

C153/A21.53—19: Ductile-iron Compact Fittings
Table 1202.5

C901—20: Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Tubing, $^{3}/_{4}$ in. (19 mm) through 3 in. (76 mm) for Water Service
Table 1210.4

CPSC *Consumer Product Safety Commission, 4330 East West Highway, Bethesda, MD 20814*

CPSC (2011): Title 15 of the Federal Hazardous Substance Act
202, 1009.1

CSA *CSA Group, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5516*

ANSI/CSA/IGSHPA C448 Series—16(R2021): Design and Installation of Ground Source Heat Pump Systems for Commercial and Residential Buildings
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

B137.1—23: Polyethylene (PE) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Cold-water Pressure Services
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

B137.2—23: Polyvinylchloride (PVC) Injection-moulded Gasketed Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.5

B137.3—23: Rigid Polyvinylchloride (PVC) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.5

B137.5—23: Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

B137.6—23: Chlorinated Polyvinylchloride (CPVC) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table 1210.5,

B137.9—23: Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure-pipe Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

B137.10—23: Crosslinked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Composite Pressure-pipe Systems
Table 1202.4

B137.11—23: Polypropylene (PP-R & PP-RCT) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

B137.18—23: Polyethylene of Raised Temperature Resistance (PE-RT) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

C22.2 No. 218.1—13(R2017): Spas, Hot Tubs and Associated Equipment
916.1

C22.2 No. 236—15: Heating and Cooling Equipment
916.1

CSA/ANSI FC 1—21/CSA C22.2 No. 62282-2-100—21: Fuel Cell Technologies—Part 3-100: Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems—Safety
924.1

*** CSA/ANSI FC 1—21/CSA C22.2 No. 62282-3-100—21: Fuel Cell Technologies—Part 3-100: Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems—Safety**
924.1

DOL *U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration, c/o Superintendent of Documents U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325*

29 CFR Part 1910.1000 (2015): Air Contaminants
502.6

29 CFR Part 1910.1025 (2015): Toxic and Hazardous Substances
502.19

FDA *U.S. Food and Drug Administration, 10903 New Hampshire Avenue, Silver Springs, MD 20993*

FDA Title 15: Federal Hazardous Substances Act
1403.4

FDA Title 21: Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts 174–186 (revised as of April 1, 2015)
1403.3

FS *Federal Specifications* General Services Administration, 7th & D Streets Specification Section, Room 6039, Washington, DC 20407*

WW-P-325B (1976): Pipe, Bends, Traps, Caps and Plugs; Lead (for Industrial Pressure and Soil and Waste Applications) *Standards are available from the Supt. of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325
Table 1202.4

ICC *International Code Council, Inc., 200 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Suite 250, Washington, DC 20001*

*** BCNYS—25: Building Code of New York State**

201.3, 202, 301.15, 301.16, 301.17, 301.18, 302.1, 302.2, 304.8, 304.11, 308.4.2.2, 308.4.2.4, 401.4, 401.5, 406.1, 501.3.1, 501.3.2, 502.10, 502.10.1, 504.2, 504.11, 505.3, 506.3.3, 506.3.10, 506.4.1, 507.2.11, 509.5, 509.5.2, 509.5.3, 509.6, 509.6.1.1, 509.6.2, 509.6.3, 509.7, 510.1.5, 512.1, 512.2, 512.3, 512.4.3, 512.5, 512.5.2, 512.5.3, 512.5.3.2, 512.6.2, 512.10.5, 512.11.1, 512.12, 512.12.2, 601.3, 602.2, 602.2.1, 602.4, 603.1, 603.10, 603.13, 603.18.2, 607.1.1, 607.1.2, 607.3.2.1, 607.5.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.3, 607.5.4, 607.5.4.1, 607.5.5, 607.5.5.2, 607.5.6, 607.6, 607.6.1, 607.6.2, 607.6.2.1, 607.6.3, 701.2, 801.3, 801.16.1, 801.18.4, 801.18.4.1, 902.1, 908.3, 908.4, 910.3, 924.1, 925.1, 926.1, 927.2, 928.1, 1004.6, 1105.1, 1206.4, 1210.8.2, 1305.2.1, 1402.4, 1402.4.1

ICC 900/SRCC Standard 300—2020: Solar Thermal System Standard

1002.1, 1401.4, 1401.4.1, 1402.1, 1402.3.1, 1402.4, 1402.8.1.1, 1402.8.1.4, 1402.8.5, 1402.8.5.3, 1403.2

ICC 901/SRCC Standard 100—20: Solar Thermal Collector Standard

1401.4.1, 1402.8.1.1

*** ECCCNYS—25: Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State**

301.2, 303.3, 312.1, 401.2, 513.1, 604.1, 1204.1, 1204.2

*** FCNYS—25: Fire Code of New York State**

201.3, 310.1, 311.1, 502.4, 502.5, 502.7.2, 502.8.1, 502.9.1, 502.9.5, 502.9.5.2, 502.9.5.3, 502.9.8.2, 502.9.8.3, 502.9.8.5, 502.9.8.6, 502.9.11, 502.10, 502.10.3, 502.16.2, 507.2.11, 509.2.1, 509.2.2, 509.4, 510.1.1, 512.1, 512.2, 512.6.3, 512.12.1, 512.12.3, 512.12, 512.15, 512.16, 512.17, 512.18, 512.19, 606.2.1, 606.4.1, 908.7, 924.1, 926.1, 1101.8, 1105.3, 1105.8, 1106.4, 1106.5, 1301.1, 1301.2, 1301.5

*** FGCNYS—25: Fuel Gas Code of New York State**

101.2, 201.3, 301.6, 701.1, 801.1, 901.1, 906.1, 926.1, 1101.5

*** PCNYS—25: Plumbing Code of New York State**

201.3, 301.11, 307.2.2, 511.2, 908.5, 928.1, 1002.1, 1002.2, 1002.3, 1005.2, 1006.6, 1008.2, 1009.3, 1101.4, 1201.1, 1206.2, 1206.3, 1210.8.1, 1401.2

*** RCNYS—25: Residential Code of New York State**

101.2

IIAR *International Institute of Ammonia Refrigeration, 1001 N. Fairfax Street, Suite 503, Arlington, VA 22314*

ANSI/IIAR 2—2021: Safe Design of Closed-circuit Ammonia Refrigeration Systems

1101.6, 1105.6.3

ANSI/IIAR 3—2017: Ammonia Refrigeration Valves

1101.6

ANSI/IIAR 4—2020: Installation of Closed-circuit Ammonia Refrigeration Systems

1101.6

ANSI/IIAR 5—2019: Startup of Closed-circuit Ammonia Refrigeration Systems

1101.6

*** ANSI/IIAR 6—2019: Standard for Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Closed-Circuit Ammonia Refrigeration Systems**

1101.1.2

ANSI/IIAR CO2—2021: Safety Standard for Closed-Circuit Carbon Dioxide Refrigeration Systems

1101.1.1

MSS *Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc., 127 Park Street, NE, Vienna, VA 22180*

*** SP 58—2023: Pipe Hangers and Supports—Materials Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application and Installation**

305.4

NAIMA *North American Insulation Manufacturers Association, 11 Canal Center Plaza, Suite 103, Alexandria, VA 22314*

AH 116—09: Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards, Fifth Edition

603.5, 603.9

NBBI *National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, OH 43229-1183*

NBIC—2023: National Board Inspection Code, Part 3 (ANSI/NB23)

1003.3

NFPA *National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471*

*** 2—23: Hydrogen Technologies Code**
502.16.1

*** 30A—24: Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages**
304.6

*** 31—20: Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment**
701.1, 801.2.1, 801.18.1, 801.18.2, 920.2, 922.1, 1308.1

*** 37—21: Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines**
915.1, 915.2

*** 58—23: Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code**
502.9.10

*** 69—19: Standard on Explosion Prevention Systems**
509.8.3

*** 70—23: National Electrical Code**
301.7, 306.3.1, 306.4.1, 510.1.1, 512.11, 512.12.2, 602.3.3, 927.2, 1104.2.2, 1106.3, 1402.8.1.4

*** 72—22: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code**
606.3

*** 80—22: Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives**
607.4.1.2

*** 82—19: Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment**
601.1

*** 85—23: Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code**
1004.1

*** 91—20: Standard for Exhaust Systems for Air Conveying of Vapors, Gases, Mists, and Particulate Solids**
502.9.5.1, 502.17

*** 92—21: Standard for Smoke Control Systems**
512.7, 512.8

*** 96—24: Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations**
507.1

*** 99—24: Health Care Facilities Code**
407.1

*** 105—22: Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives**
607.4.1.2

*** 211—22: Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances**
806.1

*** 262—23: Standard Method of Test for Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables for Use in Air-Handling Spaces**
602.3.3

*** 286—23: Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth**
602.3.7

*** 704—22: Standard System for the Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response**
502.8.4, 509.1, Table 1103.1

*** 853—20: Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems**
924.1

NSF *NSF International, 789 N. Dixboro Road P.O. Box 130140, Ann Arbor, MI 48105*

NSF/ANSI 14—2020: Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials
301.4

NSF/ANSI 358-1—2021: Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

NSF/ANSI 358-2—2017: Polypropylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

NSF/ANSI 358-3—2021: Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source (Geothermal) Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

NSF/ANSI 358-4—2018: Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source (Geothermal) Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

SMACNA

Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association, Inc., 4201 Lafayette Center Drive, Chantilly, VA 20151-1219

*** ANSI/SMACNA 2nd Edition 2011: Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards (ANSI/SMACNA 002—2011)**
509.8.1

*** ANSI/SMACNA 3rd Edition 2013: Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards (ANSI/SMACNA 005—2013)**
509.8.1

*** ANSI/SMACNA—4th Edition, 2020: HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible (ANSI/SMACNA 006—2020)**
603.4, Table 603.4, 603.9, 603.10

ANSI/SMACNA 022 1st Edition 2015: Phenolic Duct Construction Standards (ANSI/SMACNA 022—2015)
603.5.2

*** SMACNA—2021: Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards, 8th Edition**
603.5, 603.9

UL

UL LLC, 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

17—2008: Vent or Chimney Connector Dampers for Oil-fired Appliances—with Revisions through September 2013
803.6

103—2010: Factory-built Chimneys, Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances—with Revisions through September 2021
805.2

109—1997: Tube Fittings for Flammable and Combustible Fluids, Refrigeration Service and Marine Use—with Revisions through May 2020
Table 1101.2

127—2011: Factory-built Fireplaces—with Revisions through February 2020
903.1, 903.3, 903.4

174—2004: Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters—with Revisions through October 2021
1002.1

180—2019: Liquid-level Indicating Gauges for Oil Burner Fuels and Other Combustible Liquids—with Revisions through August 2021
1306.4

181—2013: Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors
511.2, 603.5, 603.6.1, 603.6.2, 603.9, 604.13

181A—2013: Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with Revisions through March 2017
603.9

181B—2013: Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with Revisions through March 2017
603.9

197—2010: Commercial Electric Cooking Appliances—with Revisions through January 2018
917.1

207—2009: Refrigerant-containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical—with Revisions through January 2020
1101.2

263—2011: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials—with Revisions through August 2021
607.5.2, 607.5.5, 607.6.1, 607.6.2.1

268—2016: Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems—with Revisions through October 2019
606.1

268A—2008: Smoke Detectors for Duct Application—with Revisions through August 2020
606.1

343—2008: Pumps for Oil-burning Appliances—with Revisions through December 2017
1302.7

378—2006: Draft Equipment—with Revisions through September 2013
804.3, 804.3.8

391—2010: Solid-fuel and Combination-fuel Central and Supplementary Furnaces—with Revisions through August 2019
918.1

412—2011: Refrigeration Unit Coolers—with Revisions through August 2018
1101.2

427—2011: Standard for Refrigerating Units—with Revisions through February 2014
Table 1101.2

471—2010: Commercial Refrigerators and Freezers—with Revisions through September 2019
1101.2

474—2015: Standard for Dehumidifiers
Table 1101.2

484—2014: Room Air Conditioners—with Revisions through May 2019
Table 1101.2

499—2014: Standard for Electric Heating Appliances—with Revisions through February 2017
912.1, 923.1

507—2017: Electric Fans—with Revisions through May 2020
505.2

508—2018: Industrial Control Equipment—with Revisions through July 2021
307.2.3

536—2021: Flexible Metallic Hose
1302.8

555—2006: Fire Dampers—with Revisions through October 2020
607.3.1

555C—2014: Ceiling Dampers—with Revisions through January 2021
607.3.1

555S—2014: Smoke Dampers—with Revisions through October 2020
607.3.1

586—2009: High-efficiency, Particulate, Air Filter Units—with Revisions through December 2017
605.2

641—2010: Type L Low-temperature Venting Systems—with Revisions through April 2018
802.1

705—2017: Power Ventilators—with Revisions through August 2021
504.5

710—2012: Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment—with Revisions through February 2021
507.1

710B—2011: Recirculating Systems—with Revisions through February 2019
507.1, 507.2

723—2018: Standard for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
509.8, 602.2, 602.3, 602.3.7, 602.3.8, 604.3, 1204.1

726—1995: Oil-fired Boiler Assemblies—with Revisions through October 2013
916.1, 1004.1

727—2018: Oil-fired Central Furnaces
918.1

729—2003: Oil-fired Floor Furnaces—with Revisions through November 2016
910.1,

730—2003: Oil-fired Wall Furnaces—with Revisions through November 2016
909.1

731—2018: Oil-fired Unit Heaters
920.1

732—2018: Oil-fired Storage Tank Water Heaters—with Revisions through August 2018
1002.1

737—2011: Fireplace Stoves
905.1

762—2013: Outline of Investigation for Power Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Appliances
506.5.1

791—2006: Residential Incinerators—with Revisions through February 2021
907.1

834—2004: Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers—Electric—with Revisions through July 2019
1004.1

842—2019: Valves for Flammable Fluids
1307.1

858—2014: Household Electric Ranges—with Revisions through September 2019
917.1

864—2014: Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems—with Revisions through May 2020
512.12

867—2011: Electrostatic Air Cleaners—with Revisions through August 2021
605.2

875—2009: Electric Dry-Bath Heaters—with Revisions through January 2021
914.2

896—1993: Oil-burning Stoves—with Revisions through November 2016
917.1, 922.1

900—2015: Air Filter Units
605.2

907—2016: Fireplace Accessories
902.2

921—2020: Standard for Commercial Dishwashers
507.1

923—2013: Microwave Cooking Appliances—with Revisions through August 2020
917.1

959—2010: Medium Heat Appliance Factory-built Chimneys—with Revisions through August 2019
805.6

971A—2006: Outline of Investigation for Metallic Underground Fuel Pipe
1302.9,

1046—2010: Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts—with Revisions through April 2017
507.2.8

1240—2005: Electric Commercial Clothes-Drying Equipment—with Revisions through September 2021
913.1

1261—2016: Electric Water Heaters for Pools and Tubs—with Revisions through September 2017
916.1

1369—2018: Aboveground Piping for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—with Revisions through August 2020
1302.9

1370—2011: Unvented Alcohol Fuel Burning Decorative Appliances—with Revisions through March 2016
929.1,

1453—2016: Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters—with Revisions through May 2018
1002.1,

1479—2015: Fire Tests of Penetration Firestops—with Revisions through May 2021
506.3.11.2, 506.3.11.3

1482—2011: Solid-fuel Type Room Heaters—with Revisions through February 2020
905.1

1563—2009: Electric Spas, Equipment Assemblies, and Associated Equipment—with Revisions through September 2020
916.1

1618—2015: Wall Protectors, Floor Protectors and Hearth Extensions—with Revisions through January 2018
308.4.1, 903.2, 905.3

1777—2015: Chimney Liners—with Revisions through April 2019
801.16.1, 801.18.4

1812—2013: Ducted Heat Recovery Ventilators—with Revisions through April 2021
513.1

1815—2012: Nonducted Heat Recovery Ventilators—with Revisions through April 2021
513.1

1820—2004: Fire Test of Pneumatic Tubing for Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with Revisions through July 2017
602.3.5

1887—2004: Fire Tests of Plastic Sprinkler Pipe for Visible Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with Revisions through October 2021
602.3.4

1978—2010: Grease Ducts—with Revisions through October 2021
506.3.2, 506.3.6

1995—2015: Heating and Cooling Equipment—with Revisions through August 2018
908.1, 911.1, 918.1, 918.2, 1101.2

1996—2009: Electric Duct Heaters—with Revisions through September 2021
911.1

2021—2015: Fixed and Location-Dedicated Electric Room Heaters—with Revisions through December 2016
912.1

2024—2014: Cable Routing Assemblies and Communications Raceways—with Revisions through August 2015
602.3.3

2043—2013: Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and Their Accessories Installed in Air-handling Spaces—with Revisions through July 2018
602.3.6

2075—2013: Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors—with Revisions through August 2021
404.1

2158—2021: Electric Clothes Dryers
913.1

2158A—2013: Clothes Dryer Transition Duct—with Revisions through October 2021
504.9.3

2162—2014: Commercial Wood-Fired Baking Ovens—Refractory Type—with Revisions through August 2019
917.1

2200—2020: Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies
915.1

2221—2010: Tests of Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Assemblies
506.3.11.3

2518—2016: Air Dispersion Systems—with Revisions through June 2021
603.17

2523—2009: Solid Fuel-fired Hydronic Heating Appliances, Water Heaters, and Boilers—with Revisions through March 2018
1002.1, 1004.1

2790—2010: Standard for Commercial Incinerators—with Revisions through June 2019
907.1

2846—2014: Fire Test of Plastic Water Distribution Plumbing Pipe for Visible Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with Revisions through January 2021
602.3.8

8782—2017: Outline of Investigation for Pollution Control Units for Commercial Cooking Operations
506.5.2

UL/CSA 60335-2-40—2022: Household and Similar Electrical Appliances—Safety—Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers
908.1, 916.1, 918.1, 918.2

UL/CSA 60335-2-89—2021: Household and Similar Electrical Appliances—Safety—Part 2-89: Particular Requirements for Commercial Refrigerating Appliances with an Incorporated or Remote Refrigerant Unit or Compressor
Table 1101.2

APPENDIX

A

CHIMNEY CONNECTOR PASS-THROUGHS

The provisions contained in this appendix are informative and are not part of the code.

User notes:

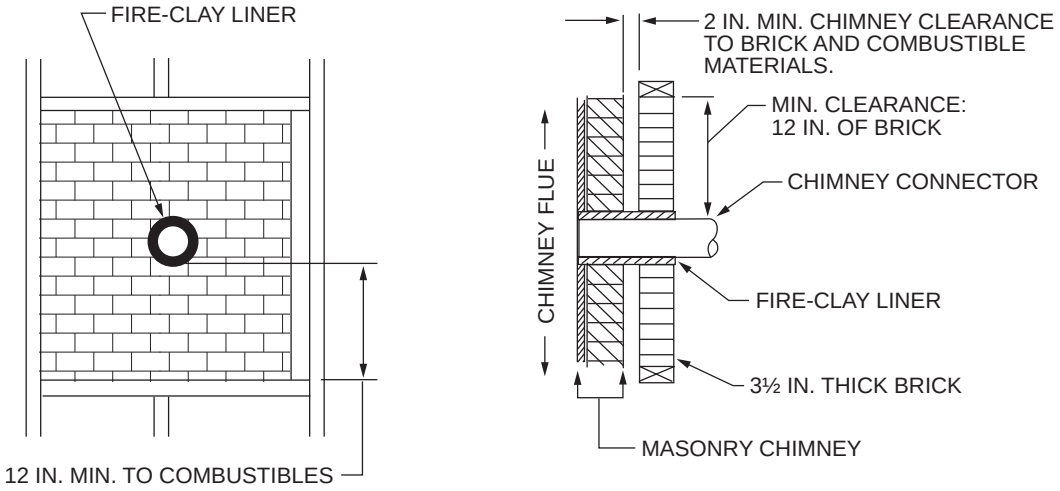
About this appendix: *Appendix A is a depiction of what is prescribed in Table 803.10.4. See Section 803.10.4.*

SECTION A101—CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

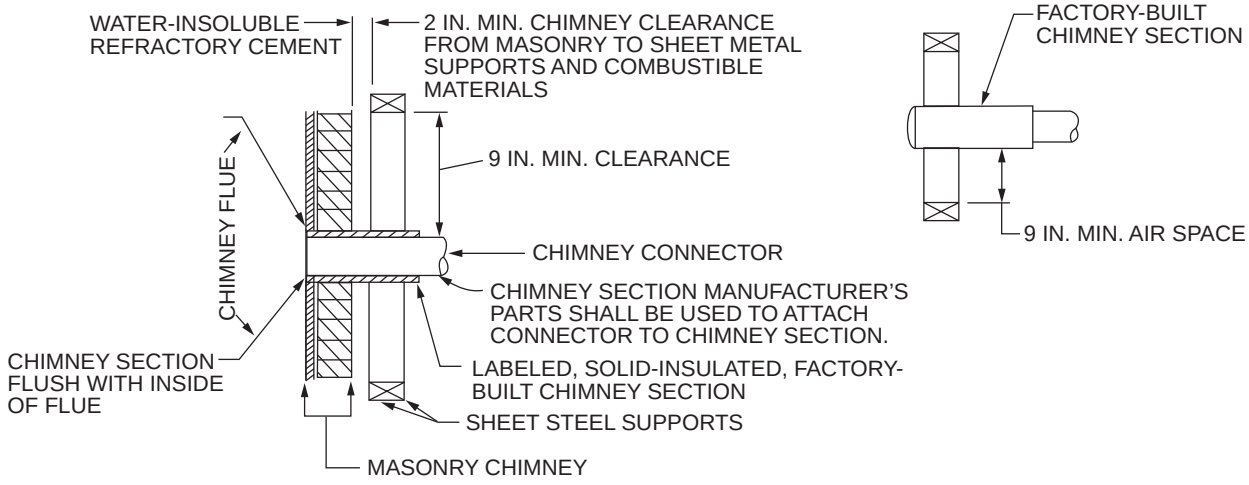
A101.1 General. See Figures A101.1(1) and A101.1(2) for illustrations of *chimney* connector systems.

FIGURE A101.1(1)—CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

SYSTEM A



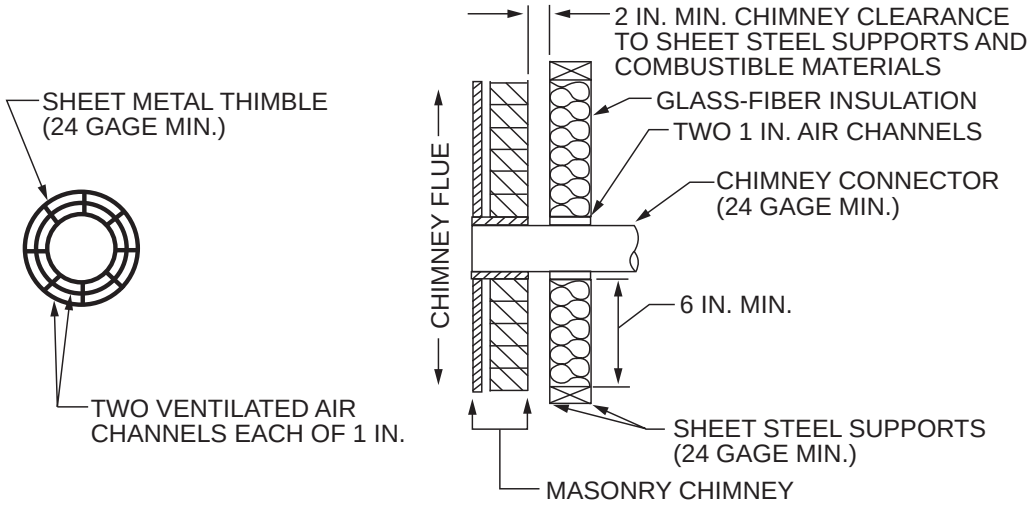
SYSTEM B


WATER-INSOLUBLE REFRACTORY CEMENT
2 IN. MIN. CHIMNEY CLEARANCE FROM MASONRY TO SHEET METAL SUPPORTS AND COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS
9 IN. MIN. CLEARANCE
CHIMNEY FLUE
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR
CHIMNEY SECTION MANUFACTURER'S PARTS SHALL BE USED TO ATTACH CONNECTOR TO CHIMNEY SECTION.
CHIMNEY SECTION FLUSH WITH INSIDE OF FLUE
LABELED, SOLID-INSULATED, FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEY SECTION
SHEET STEEL SUPPORTS
MASONRY CHIMNEY
FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEY SECTION
9 IN. MIN. AIR SPACE

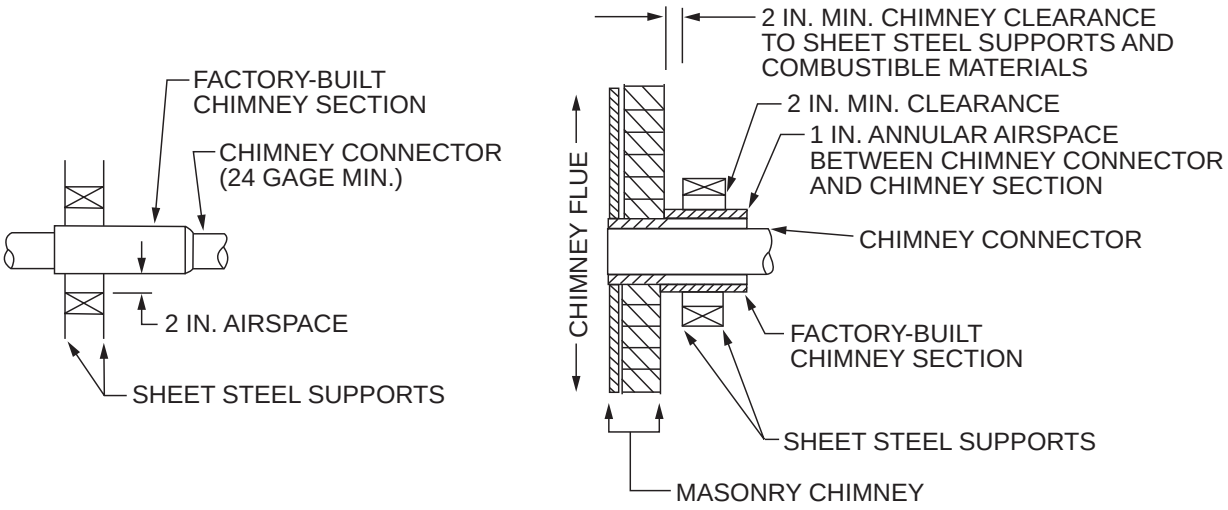
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

FIGURE A101.1(2)—CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

SYSTEM C



SYSTEM D



INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

APPENDIX

B

[NY] RESERVED

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[A] APPENDIX

C

[NY] RESERVED

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

APPENDIX

D

[NY] RESERVED

APPENDIX

E

[NY] RESERVED

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INDEX

Access (To) 202, 303.3, 306.5, 504.11, 505.5, 506.3.7.1, 506.3.10, 801.10.1
Air
- Combustion Chapter 7
- Dispersion systems 603.17
- Distribution systems Chapter 6
- Filters 605
- Recirculation 403.2.1
- Supply Chapter 4
- Transfer 403.2.2
- Ventilation Chapter 4

Air Distribution System 202, 603.1, 606.1
Air-Conditioning System 202, 301.2, 405.1, 601.5, 605.1, 607.2.3, 607.6.2.1.1, 1102.2.2.2, 1102.3, 1201.1
Alteration 202
Ambulatory Care Facility 202
Appliances
- Access 306
- Cooking 917
- Hazardous location 303.2
- Installation Chapters 3, 9
- Outdoors 303.6
- Prohibited locations 303.3

Applicability of Code 102
Approval 105
Approved 202, 301.12
Approved Agency 202
Attic Ventilation 406
Automatic Fire Suppression, Kitchen 509
Automatic Vent Dampers 803.6

Balanced Ventilation 202
Balancing, Ventilation System 608.1
Barbecue Appliances 906
Bathroom 202, 601.5, 607.5.5
Bathroom Ventilation 402, 403
Blocked Vent Switch 801.21
Blowoff Valve, Steam 1008
Boiler Room 202
Boilers
- Approval 1004.1
- Controls 1006
- Definition 202
- Gauges 1010
- General 1001
- Low-water cutoff 1007
- Rooms 304.7, 1004.6
- Tests 1011

Burner, Conversion 919

Canopy Hoods 507.1.6, 507.2.10
Ceiling Dampers 607
Chilled Water Piping Chapter 12
Chimneys and Vents 908.2, 1402.8.1.2
- Connectors 803
- Dampers 803.5, 803.6
- Direct vents 804.1
- Exhausters 804.3
- Existing 801.18
- Factory built 802, 805
- General 801
- Insulation shield 805.8
- Liners 801.16, 801.17, 801.18
- Masonry, general 801
- Offsets 805.5
- Vents 802

Cleanouts
- Clothes dryer exhaust 504.3
- Kitchen exhaust 506.3.8, 506.3.9, 506.3.12
- Masonry chimneys 801.13

Clearances
- Appliance in garages 304.3, 304.6, 304.7
- Chimney and vent 801.18.4
- Connectors 803.10.6
- Kitchen exhaust 506.3.6
- Reduction 308
- Specific appliances Chapter 9

Clothes Dryer
- Appliance 913
- Exhaust 504

Coal-Burning Appliances Chapter 9
Code Official 104, 202
Collectors, Solar 1402.8.1, 1404.1
Combination Fire/Smoke Damper 607
Combustible Liquid Storage Tank 1301
Combustible Material 202
Combustibles, Reduced Clearance 308
Combustion Air Chapter 7
Combustion Chamber 202
Commercial Cooking Appliances 202, 507, 917
Commercial Cooking Recirculating System 507
Commercial Kitchen Exhaust 506
- Hoods 507

Commercial Kitchen Hoods 202
Condensate 202
Condensate Disposal 307
Condensation
- Ducts 603.12
- Piping 1107.4

Condenser 202
Condensing Unit 202
Conflicts 102.8.1, 102.8.2
Connectors, Chimney or Vent 803
Construction Documents 202
Contaminants, Ventilation Air 401.4, 401.6
Conversion Burners 919
Conveyor Systems 510
Cooking Appliances 507, 917
Cooling Towers 908
Cooling Water Piping Chapter 12
Covering, Duct 604.3
Crawl Space, Ventilation 406
Crawl Space Plenums 602
Crematories 907
Cutting, Notching, Boring 302

Dampers
- Chimney or vent 803.5, 803.6
- Fire 607
- Smoke 607

Definitions Chapter 2
Design Flood Elevation 202
Detectors, Duct Smoke 606
Direct Solar System 202
Direct-Vent Appliances 202
Documents 106.1
Draftstop 202
Dry Cleaning Systems 202

Dryer, Clothes
- Exhaust 504
- General 913

Duct
- Clothes dryer exhaust 504
- Construction 603
- Covering 604.3
- Detectors, smoke 606
- Diffusers 603.18
- Enclosure 506.3.11, 509.4
- Exhaust 501.5
- Fire damper 607
- Flexible 603.6
- Hangers and supports 603.10
- Hazardous exhaust 509
- Installation 603
- Insulation 604
- Joints, seams and connections 603.9
- Kitchen exhaust 506
- Lining 604.3
- Penetrations 607
- Phenolic 603.5.2
- Plastic 603.8.3
- Private garage 603.7
- Sealing 603.8.2, 603.9
- Sizing 603.2
- Smoke damper 607
- Systems Chapter 6
- Underground 603.8
- Underground grease 506.3.10

Dust, Stock and Refuse Conveyor Systems 510

Electric Heating Appliance 202
Electric Installation 301.10
Energy Efficiency 301.2
Energy Recovery Systems 513
Engine/Turbine Equipment 915
Environmental Air 501.2, 501.3.1
Equipment Access 306
Equipment Identification 304.12
Evaporative Cooling 928
- Direct 202, 928
- Indirect 202, 928

Evaporator 202
Exhaust, Domestic Cooking 505
Exhaust, Downdraft 507.2
Exhaust, Required Systems 502
- Clothes dryer 504
- Discharge 501.3
- Ducts 501.4
- Independence 501.2
- Kitchen 506, 507
- Machinery room 1105, 1106
- Mechanical 403, Chapter 5
- Outlets 501.3, 501.3.1
- System, hazardous 509
- Ventilation openings 401.4, 401.5

Exhauster, Mechanical Flue 804
Explosion Venting 310
Extra-Heavy-Duty Cooking Appliance 507

Factory Built
- Barbecue appliance 906
- Chimneys 805
- Commercial exhaust hoods 507.1

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

Ducts (kitchen exhaust) 506.3.1, 506.3.2, 506.3.2.5, 506.3.6, 506.3.11.3
Fireplaces 903
Fans, Exhaust 503, 506.5.1
Fans, High-Volume Large Diameter 930
Filters, Air 605
Fire Dampers 607
Fire Suppression
Hazardous exhaust 509.5
Kitchen exhaust 509
Fireplace Stove 905
Fireplaces
Accessories 902.2
Factory built 903
Masonry 902.1
Flexible Air Connector 202
Flexible Connectors (Duct) 603.6, 607.7
Flexible Connectors, Hydronic 1202.7
Floor Furnace 202
Fuel, Conversion 301.12
Fuel Cells 924
Fuel Oil
Piping Chapter 13
Piping installation 1305
Piping material 1302
Furnace, Forced-Air 918
Furnace Room 304.8
Fusible Plug 202

Gauges, Boilers 1010
Grease 506, 507
Grease Duct 202
Grease Filters 507.2.8, 507.2.8.2
Grease Reservoirs 506.3.7.1
Grilles 603.18
Ground Source Heat Pump Loop System 1210
Guards 304.9, 304.11, 306.5.1
Gypsum Board 202
Gypsum Wallboard 202

Hangers, Duct 603.10
Hangers, Pipe 305
Hazardous Exhaust System 509
Hazardous Location, Equipment 304.3, 901.3
Hazardous Location, Installation 304.3
Hearth Extensions 905.3
Heat Exchanger 202
Heat Pump 918.3
Heavy-Duty Cooking Appliance 507
High-Volume, Large-Diameter Fan 930
Hood Design (Kitchen) 507
Hot Water Boilers Chapter 10
Hot Water Piping Chapter 12
Hydrogen Generating Appliance 202
Hydrogen Generation and Refueling 304.5, 926
Hydronic Heaters 905.1
Hydronic Piping Chapter 12

Ignition Source 202, 304.3
Incinerators 907
Indirect Evaporative Cooling 202
Indirect Refrigeration System 202
Indirect Solar System 202
Infrared Heaters 912
Inspection 111
Insulation
Duct 604
Pipe 1204
Intake Openings 401.4

Joints
Connectors 803.10.1
Duct 506.3.2, 509.6.1, 603.9
Piping 1003.2, 1107.6, 1107.7, 1203, 1303

Kerosene Stove 922
Kilns 923
Kitchen Exhaust Equipment Chapter 5

Labeled 202
Labeling
Criteria for 301.4, 301.5, 301.6
Light-Duty Cooking Appliance 202
Liner, Flue 801.16
Lining, Duct 604.3
Listed 202
Listing 301.7
Load Calculations, Heating and Cooling 312
Location, Equipment and Appliance 303
Low-Water Cutoff, Boiler 1007

Machinery Room 202
Machinery Room Egress 1105.9
Machinery Rooms 1104.2, 1105, 1106
Maintenance 102.3
Makeup Air, Exhaust 508
Makeup Water 908.5, 1005.2, 1206.3, 1207.2, 1401.2
Masonry Chimneys Chapter 8
Masonry Fireplace 902
Masonry Heaters 925
Mechanical Draft System 202
Mechanical Exhaust System 202
Mechanical Exhaust/Draft 804
Mechanical Refrigeration Chapter 11
Mechanical Ventilation 304.5.2, 403
Medium-Duty Cooking Appliance 507
Motors, Fan 503, 506.5.1.1
Moved Structure 102.7

Natural Draft System 202
Natural Ventilation 402

Oil, Fuel Piping Chapter 13
Openings
Outside 401.4, 401.5, 501.3.2
Transfer 607
Outdoor Air, Minimum 403
Outdoor Appliance Installation 303.6

Peer Review 202
Pellet Fuel-Burning Appliances 904
Penetrations 302.2, 607
Permits 105
Pipe
Insulation 1107.3, 1204
Support 305
Piping
Fuel oil Chapter 13
Material, fuel oil 1302
Material, hydronic 1202
Refrigerant 1107
Support 305
Plenums 602
Plumbing Connections 301.8
Pollution-Control Units 506.5.2
Pool/spa Heater 916
Portable Fuel Cell Appliance 202
Power Exhauster 804
Press-Connect Joint 202
Pressure Gauge 1010
Pressure Relief Device 202
Pressure Relief Valve 202
Pressure Vessel 1003

Quick-Opening Valve 202

Radiant Heater 912
Radiant Heating Systems 927
Range Hoods Chapter 5
Recirculated Air 202, 403.3.1.1.2.3.1, 509.7.1, Table 509.8.2, 509.9, 513.4
Reclaimed Refrigerants 202, 1102.2.2, 1102.2.2.3
Recovered Refrigerants 202, 1102.2.2.2
Recycled Refrigerants 202
Reduced, Clearance 308
Refrigerant Chapter 11
Locking access caps 1101.8
Piping 1107
Quantity 1104
Refrigerant Designation 202
Refrigerant Group Classifications 202
Refrigerant Piping 1107
Refrigerating System 202
Refrigeration Machinery Room 202
Registered Design Professional 202, 403.2, 502.14, 601.5, 1110.7
Registers 603.18
Relief Valves, Fuel Oil 1307
Relief Valves, Pressure Vessels 1006
Relief Valves, Solar 1402.3
Repairs 102.4
Return Air 202
Return Air System 202
Room Heaters, Solid Fuel 904, 905, 921

Safety Valve 1006
Sauna Heater 914
Scope of Code 101.2
Seismic 301.15
Sight Glass 1010
Smoke and Heat Vents 311
Smoke Control 512
Smoke Dampers 607
Smoke Detectors 606
Smoker Ovens 507.1
Solar Thermal Chapter 14
Solar Thermal System 202
Solid Fuel (Cooking Applications) 507
Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances Chapter 9
Standards, Referenced 102.8, Chapter 15
Steam
Blowoff 1008
Boilers Chapter 10
Gauge 1010
Piping Chapters 10, 12
Steam Bath Equipment 202
Subslab Soil Exhaust System 511

Supply Air 202
Supply Air System 202
Supports, Duct 603.10
Supports, Piping 305
Suppression
Hazardous exhaust 509.5
Kitchen exhaust 509

Tanks, Expansion 1009, 1402.8.7
Tanks, Flammable and Combustible Liquids Chapter 13
Temperature Control 309.1
Temperature Gauge 1010
Temperature Relief, Solar 1402.4
Tests
Boiler/pressure vessel 1011
Ducts 603.8.2
Fuel oil piping 1308
Hydronic piping 1208, 1209.2
Refrigeration 1108, 1111
Thermal Storage, Solar 1404.2
Third-Party Certification 301.4, 301.5
Third-Party Certification Agency 202
Third-Party Certified 202
Third-Party Tested 202
Toilet Room Ventilation 402.1, Table 403.3.1.1
Toxicity Classification (Refrigerant) 202
Transfer Fluid
Hydronic piping 1207
Solar 1403

Underground Storage Tanks
Chapter 13
Unit Heater 920
Unvented Alcohol Fuel-Burning Decorative Appliances 202, 929.1
Unvented Gas Log Heaters 903.3

Valves
Boilers 1005, 1008
Fuel oil 1307
Hydronic 1205
Safety and relief 1006
Stop 1107.7
Vapor Retarder 604.11
Ventilation
Air Chapter 4
Balanced 202
Demand controlled 403.3.1.3
Enclosed parking garages 404
Energy recovery systems 513
Machinery room 1105, 1106
Mechanical 304.5.2, 403
Natural 402
Openings 401.4, 401.5
Rate 403.3
Recirculation 403.2.1
Transfer 403.2.2
Uninhabited spaces 406
Ventilation Air 202
Venting System 202
Vents
Connectors 803
Direct 804
Explosion 310
General 802, Chapter 8
Height 802.6
Smoke and Heat 311
Termination 802
Vibration Control Devices 301.13
Violations 114

Wall Furnace 909
Water Heaters 916, 1002
Water Piping Chapter 12
Wind Resistance 301.15
Wood-Burning Appliances Chapter 9

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®